

**Omon Muminov, Ilham Tuhtasinov,
Anorkhon Akhmedova**

**COUNTRY STUDY
(UK and USA)**

Узбекистон давлат жахон тиллари университетининг Илмий кенгаши
томонидан чоп этишга рухсат этилган

TASHKENT- 2015

Масъул мухаррир: ф.ф.н, доцент А.Қўлдошев

Такризчилар: п.ф.д., профессор Т.Қ.Сатторов

ф.ф.н., профессор М.Т.Ирискулов

Ушбу китобда ўқувчи Буюк Британия ва АҚШнинг тарихи, маданияти, географик тузилиши, давлат тизими, таълим тизими ва бошқа маълумотларга эга бўлади. Қўлланмада берилган машқларни бажариш орқали ўз билимларини синаб кўришлари мумкин.

В настоящем учебном пособии читатель может ознакомиться с историей, культурой, географическим расположением, государственным строем, системой образования. В выполнении упражнений, можно проверить свои знания по темам, представленных в данной книге.

A reader of the book is acquainted with the History, Geography, Culture, State System, Educational System and other information. In order to check up knowledge about the texts a reader may do exercises given in this book.

Introduction

The President's Resolution "On Measures on Further Improvement of Teaching of Foreign Languages" on the 10th of December, 2012 is of great importance in training highly qualified specialists. Creation of new text-books in accordance with the Standards of CEFR which was based on teaching foreign languages in more than 40 countries is one of the topical problems today's educational system .

At present the man is becoming involved in world culture. The educational system has the task to train the students to cultural, professional and individual communication with the representatives with other social structure, social traditions and language culture. Therefore one of the main tasks of the educational program of teaching of foreign languages is introducing the students to foreign culture.

Language can be learned as means of communication only when the learners become aware of the world of the language. Background knowledge of the new culture often helps learners understand better what is heard or read in the foreign language. In order to teach foreign language it is necessary to know the history, customs, traditions, culture, way of life of the people who speak the language. Taking account of it the appearance of the present book is a turning point in the treatment of learner strategies in foreign language learning.

The present book has been created on the basis of the programs of State Education Standard, module educational, working educational programs and intended for the students of faculties of translation and English philology. According to the Standards of CEFR the activation of 4 competences have been used in this book. They are Reading, Listening, Writing and Speaking. If the technical equipment is not available for Listening exercises, let the teacher read the text and the students do exercises.

The text book includes the history, geography, state system, educational system, customs, traditions, holidays of the United Kingdom and United States of America. These themes are very useful for mastering the English language. In this text book one can find a lot of information about history, geography, state system, educational system, customs, traditions, holidays of Uzbekistan too, because we can't make good experienced personnel without having the knowledge about native country.

The book consists of 10 units, each of the unit contains references to the new active vocabulary, exercises on different themes. The active vocabulary is translated both into Uzbek and Russian. The appendix has valuable material for the students. The readers can find questions and their answers about United States of America and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. The appendix gives the texts of the anthems of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the United States of America and Uzbekistan. It includes the information about the kings of the United Kingdom and presidents of the United States of America too.

The authors are sure the teachers of foreign languages and students will find many useful materials here as well. It will be especially useful for teachers seeking ways to help students become more active, self-directed and effective learners. The material is distributed on Units according to principle "from simple – to complex". At the seminars the students are supposed to do exercises given in the book. In this guide the modern pedagogical achievements on learning foreign languages are used. The material is taken from journals, newspapers, conferences written in English, Uzbek , Russian and Internet materials.

Of course, the authors do not pretend to full explanation of all the information of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the United States of America. It is impossible to do it in one book. We hope the critical views and shortcomings which will be sent to the authors will help to work out further investigation on it.

Authors

UNIT 1

The Geography of the UK

READING

Ex. 1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

United Kingdom is situated in northwestern Europe, and its official name is the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. Great Britain is consists of England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland occupy the territory of the British Isles and is composed of 5,500 islands, large and small. The two main islands are: Great Britain (in which are England, Wales and Scotland) to the east and Ireland (in which are Northern Ireland and the independent Republic of Ireland) to the west. They are separated by the Irish Sea.



Its territory is 244,100 square kilometers.

Geographically the island of Great Britain is subdivided into 2 main regions: Lowland Britain and Highland Britain. Lowland Britain comprises southern and eastern England. Highland Britain consists of Scotland, most of Wales, the Pennines (or the Pen nine Chain) and the Lake District. The highland zone is an area of high hills and mountains in the north and west. The lowland zone in the south and east consists mostly of plains. The lowland zone has a milder climate and better soils for farming. Historically, most people in Britain have lived in the lowland zone rather than in the highland zone.

The Highland zone contains what is often called rough country, consisting of large mountains, and are broken by valleys and plains. The Lowland zone is a great plain surface and extensive area.

The Thames and the Severn are the longest rivers in Britain. The longest river the Severn (354 kilometers), flows along the border between England and Wales. In Scotland the important rivers are the Clyde and the Forth, which are joined by a canal. The River Clyde flows northwest, past Glasgow, and empties into the Atlantic at the Firth of Clyde. (Firth is the Scottish name for an arm of the sea that serves as the broad estuary of a river.) The River Forth flows eastward into the Firth of Forth, where Edinburgh rises on its south bank. The most important rivers in Northern Ireland are the Lagan, the Bann, and the Foyle.

There are many lakes in Great Britain. In the northwest side of the Penine systems lies the Lake District, containing the beautiful lakes. South of the Midlands, a series of hills and valleys crosses the land to the valley of the River Thames. South of the Thames, low chalk hills and valleys cross the land. Where the hills reach the sea, they form great white cliffs. The most famous cliffs are near Dover. On clear days, people in Calais, France, can look across the Strait of Dover and see the white cliffs of Dover gleaming in the sun.

The largest cities of Great Britain are London, Birmingham, Glasgow, Liverpool, Bristol, Leeds, and Cardiff, Manchester, Sheffield, and Edinburgh. The most important ports are: London, Liverpool, Southampton, Belfast, Glasgow and Cardiff.

The capitals are: London in England, Edinburgh in Scotland, Cardiff in Wales and Belfast in Northern Ireland. England is the largest, most populous, and wealthiest division of the United Kingdom. It makes up 130,410 sq km.

The most common species of trees indigenous to Scotland are oak and conifers—chiefly fir, pine, and larch. Large forested areas, however, are rare, and the only important woodlands are in the southern and eastern Highlands. Except in these wooded areas, vegetation in the elevated regions consists largely of heather,

ferns, mosses, and grasses. Most plant and animal life is similar to that of England. Wales has abundant ferns and mosses in low-lying, wet areas.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

The United Kingdom is composed of 5,500 islands
consisted of small mountains
situated in southwestern Europe
the third largest country in the world

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The United is situated inEurope.
2. Its territory is square kilometers.
3. Geographically the island of Great Britain is subdivided into main regions.
4. The longest river is in the UK.

3. Find wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. There are some lakes in Great Britain.
2. The highland zone is an area of high hills and mountains in the east and west.
3. In Scotland the important rivers are the Clyde and the Forth, which are joined by a lake.
4. The most famous seas are near Dover.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The Lowland zone is a great plain surface and extensive area.
a) very large b) small c) big
2. The most famous cliffs are near Dover.
a) deep b) high land of the mountains c) wide
3. The most common species of trees indigenous to Scotland are oak and conifers—chiefly fir, pine, and larch.
a) tree b) animal c) bird
4. Lowland Britain comprises southern and eastern England.
a) consists b) separate c) include

Answers:

- 1) The United Kingdom is composed of 5,500 islands.
- 2) 1.northwestern, 2. 244,100, 3. 2, 4. Severn,
- 3) 1. some/many, 2. east/north, 3. lake/canals, 4. seas/cliffs
- 4) 1. a 2. b 3. a 4. c

Ex. 2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Population of the UK.

According to the 2011 census, the total population of the United Kingdom is around 63,100,000—the third-largest in the European Union (behind Germany and metropolitan France) and the 22nd-largest in the world. Its overall population density is one of the highest in the world at 660 people per square mile.

Major ethnic groups: White 92.1% (of which English 83.6%, Scottish 8.6%, Welsh 4.9%, Northern Irish 2.9%), black 2%, Indian 1.8%, Pakistani 1.3%, mixed 1.2%, other 1.6%.

About 90 percent of the population of the United Kingdom lives in urban areas. A number of important cities grew rapidly in the 1700's and early 1800's during the Industrial Revolution. But today, many of those cities—including London, Birmingham, Liverpool Manchester, and Leeds—are in decline. They are faced with such problems as falling employment, rising crime, and poor housing. They are losing population as people move from the inner cities into the suburbs and beyond. The industries that supported the growth of the large cities have declined or disappeared.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

is at 670 people per square mile

The population of the United Kingdom lives in urban areas about 90%

is the third-largest in the European Union

is the 22nd-largest in the world

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. According to the 2011 census, the total population of the United Kingdom is around 63,100,000—.... in the European Union.

2. Its overall population is one of the highest in the world at 660 people per square mile.

3. About of the population of the United Kingdom lives in urban areas.

4. They are losing as people move from the inner cities into the suburbs and beyond.

3. Find wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. A number of important cities grew rapidly in the 1700's and early 1800's during the World War I.

2. They are faced with such problems as falling employment, rising price, and poor housing.

3. The total population of the United Kingdom is the 25nd-largest in the world.

4. The economy that supported the growth of the large cities have declined or disappeared.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. Its overall population density is one of the highest in the world at 660 people per square mile.

- a) general b) special c) amount

2. The industries that supported the growth of the large cities have declined or disappeared.

- a) to increase, b) to join, c) to decrease

3. They are losing population as people move from the inner cities into the suburbs and beyond

- a) near the city b) far from the city c) center of the city

4. A number of important cities grew rapidly in the 1700's and early 1800's during the Industrial Revolution.

- a) quietly b) quickly c) shortly

Answers:

1)1.The population of the United Kingdom lives in urban areas about 90%

is the third-largest in the European Union

2) 1. the third-largest, 2. density, 3. 90 percent, 4. Population

3) 1. World War I/ Industrial Revolution, 2. price/crime, 3. 25/22nd,
4. economy/ industries

4) 1. a, 2. c, 3.a, 4.b

Ex 3. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The Economy of the UK

The United Kingdom has the seventh-largest economy in the world, has the second-largest economy in the European Union, and is a major international trading power. A highly developed, diversified, market-based economy with extensive social welfare services provides most residents with a high standard of living.

The UK has one of the world's most globalized economies. London is the world's largest financial centre alongside New York and the largest cities in Europe. The aerospace industry of the UK is the second- or third-largest national aerospace industry, depending upon the method of measurement. The pharmaceutical industry plays an important role in the UK economy (after the United States and Japan). The British economy is boosted by North Sea oil and gas reserves, valued at an estimated £250 billion in 2007.

Export goods: Manufactured goods, fuels, chemicals, food stuffs, beverages, tobacco, clothes, cars, military equipment, steel, computer software, finance, banking, electrical goods, electronics, machinery, pharmaceutical products.

Britain also produces heavy machinery for industry, farming, and mining. The country is one of the world's largest producers of tractors.

An increasing percentage of Britain's manufactured goods consist of sophisticated electronic equipment. Much of this equipment is exported.

Coal is the most valuable mineral resource of Wales; deposits are located mainly in the south.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

is not developed country

The economy of the UK is the seventh-largest economy in the world

smallest financial centre

produces only heavy machinery for industry

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The United Kingdom has the largest economy in the world.
2. It is the largest economy in the European Union.
3. is the most valuable mineral resources of Wales.
4. The country is one of the world's largest producers of... .

3. Find wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. London is the world's largest financial centre alongside Wales.
2. Much of this equipment is imported.
3. Coal is the most valuable mineral resource of Scotland.
4. A highly developed, diversified, market-based economy with extensive social welfare services provides most residents with the high standard of living.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The British economy is boosted by North Sea oil and gas reserves, valued at an estimated £250 billion in 2007.
a) to help something to increase b) to develop c) to define
2. Coal is the most valuable mineral resource of Wales; deposits are located mainly in the south.
a) the first payment b) distance c) organizations
3. An increasing percentage of Britain's manufactured goods consist of sophisticated electronic equipment.
a) supported b) implicated c) complicated
4. The aerospace industry of the UK is the second- or third-largest national aerospace industry, depending upon the method of measurement.
a) size b) speed c) process

Answers:

- 1) The economy of the UK is the seventh-largest economy in the world
- 2) 1. seventh, 2. second, 3. Coal, 4. tractors
- 3) 1. Wales/New York, 2. imported/exported, 3. Scotland/Wales, 4. the/a
- 4) 1.a, 2.a, 3.c, 4.c

LISTENING

Ex.1. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Industry of the UK

British industry is a combination of public and private companies. Major segments of British industry include energy, mining, manufacturing, and construction.

Important industries in Britain today include gas and oil production from the North Sea, engineering, pharmaceuticals, textile manufacture, food processing, electronics, tourism and insurance. Along the coasts fishing is an important source of income. Coal mining is now much less widespread than before, much of the coal produced is used in power stations to generate electricity. The main centers of the steel industry are in South Wales, Northern England and the Midlands.

Factories are often located together on an industrial estate on the edge of a town. Many service industries are still in or near London, but modern telecommunications have allowed companies to move to places where rents are cheaper and there are people needing jobs.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) In Britain the government includes railways, ship building, and some steel companies.
- b) Today only tourism is important industry in Britain.
- c) Many service industries are still based in or near Bristol.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Major segments of British industry include energy, mining ... and construction.
2. Along the coasts fishing is an important ... of income.
3. The main centers of the ... are in south Wales, northern England and the Midlands.
4. Factories are often located together on an industrial ... on the edge of a town.

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

In the 18th century the UK was the first country in the world to industrialize, and during the 19th century possessed a dominant role in the global economy. From the late-19th century the Second Industrial Revolution in the United States and Germany presented an increasing economic challenge to Britain. Despite victory, the costs of fighting both the First World War and Second World War further weakened the UK's relative economic position, and by 1945 it had been superseded by the United States as the world's dominant economic power. However, it still maintains a significant role in the world economy. The United Kingdom's economy continues to recover from turmoil in the financial markets

Economic communication of the UK with other countries

- a) Economic position of the UK
- b) Major trading partners of the UK

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

The United Kingdom is an important manufacturing and trading nation. In fact, Britain can survive only by manufacturing and trading. The country's farms produce only about two-thirds of the food needed by the people.

Interpretation.....

Except for coal, natural gas, and oil, Britain has few natural resources. The country must import about a third of its food and many of the raw materials it needs for manufacturing.

Interpretation.....

Service industries account for about two-thirds of the United Kingdom's gross domestic product (GDP). The GDP is the total value of goods and services produced within the country annually. More than 70 percent of British workers are employed in service industries. The country's service industries are concentrated in and near its largest cities, especially London.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

1) In Britain the government includes railways, ship building, and some steel companies.

2) 1. manufacturing, 2. source, 3. steel industry, 4. Estate

3) b) Economic position of the UK

Ex. 2. Listen to the following text through headphones and do the tests below.

One of the strongest components of the British economy is the energy sector. The United Kingdom is a net exporter of energy. In addition to oil, the kingdom has reserves of natural gas, coal, and atomic power. Most of the kingdom's energy resources are concentrated in the North Sea. Currently there are more than 100 active oil and natural gas fields. In addition to the British companies operating in the area, there are a number of international firms, including Texaco, Philips Petroleum, and Chevron. The natural gas industry has been marked by increasing liberalization following the 1986 privatization of the state- monopoly British Gas.

The United Kingdom has substantial production of minerals used for construction. These include clay, kaolin, and gypsum. Britain is a major cement producer. About 75 percent of the market is controlled by 2 companies, Blue Circle Cement and Castle Cement. Blue Circle also controls about 25 percent of the Canadian market. British Steel is Europe's largest steel producer with revenues of US\$12 billion. In the United Kingdom, British Steel produces about 13 million metric tons of steel per year. However, competition from foreign companies has led to plans by the manufacturer for significant reductions in the number of workers over the next 5 years.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

a) The main energy resource is oil.

b) The natural gas industry has been marked by decreasing liberalization following the 1986 privatization of the state- monopoly British Gas.

c) Britain is a major clay producer.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. The United Kingdom is a net of energy.
2. Continued international demand for oil will lead companies to maintain these high levels of
3. One distinguishing characteristic of the British energy industry has been
4. The United Kingdom has ... production of minerals used for construction.

Ex. 3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

Scotland

Scotland has a very irregular coastline. The western coast in particular is deeply penetrated by numerous arms of the sea. Scotland has many rivers such as the Firth, the Lorne, the Clyde, and the Tay and others.

Scotland, like the rest of the island of Great Britain, has significant reserves of coal. It also possesses large deposits of zinc, chiefly in the south. The soil is generally rocky and infertile, except for that of the Central Lowlands. Northern Scotland has great hydroelectric power potential and contains Great Britain's largest hydroelectric generating stations. The oil deposits in the North Sea became an important part of the Scottish economy.

- a) The geography of Scotland
- b) Hydroelectric generating stations of Scotland
- c) Oil deposits of Scotland

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Edinburgh has been the capital since the 15th century, when its fortified castle was the centre of Scotland's resistance to its enemies. Edinburgh is the cultural centre of Scotland.

Interpretation.....

It is associated with the names of George Gordon Byron and Walter Scott, Robert Louis Stevenson, Robert Burns and Arthur Conan Doyle, creator of Sherlock Holmes.

Interpretation.....

It is also associated with the world-famous Edinburgh Festival of Music and Drama. The Festival was first held in 1947 and has been held annually ever since.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) a) The main energy resource is oil.
- 2) 1. exporter, 2. output, 3. consolidation, 4. Substantial
- 3) a) The geography of Scotland

Ex. 4. Listen to the retelling of the text of one student and analyze the outcome critically with the group students

Finance, insurance, and real estate are the most important service industry in Britain. This industry accounts for a larger portion of the United Kingdom's industry. Most of the country's financial companies operate in London, one of the world's leading financial cities. Major financial institutions in London include the Bank of England, the United Kingdom's national bank; the London Stock Exchange; and Lloyd's of London insurance society.

WRITING

Ex. 1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue

Agriculture of the UK

In recent decades, historians cited four key changes in agricultural practices, enclosure, mechanization, four-field crop rotation, and selective breeding, and gave credit to a relatively few individuals.

Britain imports about a third of its food supply- The imports include avocados,

bananas, oranges, peppers, pineapples, and other items that cannot be easily grown in Britain's climate.

The United Kingdom has about 240,000 farms. They average about 175 acres (71 hectares) in size. About two-thirds of Britain's farmers own the farms on which they live. The rest rent their farms. About half the people who operate or work on farms do so on a part-time basis.

Many British farmers practice mixed farming—that is, they raise a variety of crops and animals. Methods of mixed farming vary from farm to farm. In the rough highlands of Scotland, Wales, and western England, grass grows much better than farm crops. There, farmers use most of their land for grazing. The land in southern and eastern England is drier and flatter, and it is more easily worked. Farmers in eastern England use most of their land for raising crops.

Britain's most important crops are barley, potatoes, rapeseed, sugar beets, and wheat. Farmers in southern and eastern England grow almost all the country's rape-seed, sugar beets, and wheat and most of its barley. Potatoes are grown throughout the United Kingdom. Farmers in southern England grow most of Britain's fruits and garden vegetables. One of the most productive regions is the county of Kent in southeastern England. It is called the Garden of England and is famous for the beautiful blossoms of its apple and cherry orchards in springtime. Farmers in Kent also grow hops, which are used in making beer.

Sheep are Britain's chief livestock. Farmers in almost every part of the country raise sheep for meat and wool. British farmers also raise beef cattle, dairy cattle, and hoys. Chickens are raised mainly in special mass-production plants.

Wales has an irregular coastline with many bays, the largest of which is Cardigan Bay. Except for narrow, low-lying coastal regions, mainly in the south and west, Wales is almost entirely mountainous. The principal range is the Cambrian Mountains, which extend north and south through central Wales. The Dee River, which rises in Bale Lake, the largest natural lake in Wales, and flows through northern Wales and England, is the principal river. In the south numerous rivers flow through steep valleys.

Ex. 2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text

Climate of the United Kingdom

Britain has a moist climate with much rainfall, rivers and lakes. While England is in the northern hemisphere, the influence of the Gulf Stream, bringing warm ocean water from the equator, has a marked effect on the climate which is generally mild and temperate. But the weather in England is as changeable as the landscape itself. As in other temperate maritime zones the average temperatures are moderate, ranging in the Thames Valley from about 35° F (2° C) in January to 72° F (22° C) in July. But the extremes in England range from around 0° F (-18° C) to 90° F (32° C).

As a result of the relative warmth of the nearby seas, England has a moderate climate, rarely marked by extremes of heat or cold. July is the hottest month of the year, and 4.4° C (40° F) and January is the coldest month. The average January and July temperatures for the city of London are 4.5° C (40° F) and 18° C (64° F), respectively. Fogs, mists, and overcast skies are frequent, particularly in the Pennine and inland regions. The climate of Wales, like that of England, is mild and moist. The average daily temperature in July is 15.6° C (60° F), and in January it is 5.6° C (42° F). Annual rainfall varies with elevation, ranging from about 762 mm (about 30 in) in certain coastal regions to more than 2540 mm (more than 100 in).

Ex. 3. Match the content of the text with the translation below. Find the topical sentences in each paragraph of the text.

The Geographical Position of Great Britain

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland covers an area of some 244 thousand square miles. It is situated on the British Isles. The British Isles are separated from Europe by the Strait of Dover and the English Channel. The British Isles are washed by the North Sea in the east and the Atlantic Ocean in the west.

The population of Great Britain is about 60 million. The largest cities of the country are London, Birmingham, Liverpool, Manchester, Glasgow and Edinburgh.

The territory of Great Britain is divided into four parts: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

England is in the southern and central part of Great Britain. Scotland is in the north of the island. Wales is in the west. Northern Ireland is situated in the north-eastern part of Ireland.

England is the richest, the most fertile and most populated part in the country. There are mountains in the north and in the west of England, but all the rest of the territory is a vast plain. In the northwestern part of England there are many beautiful lakes. This part of the country is called Lake District.

Scotland is a land of mountains. The Highlands of Scotland are among the oldest mountains in the world. The highest mountain of Great Britain is in Scotland too. The chain of mountains in Scotland is called the Grampians. Its highest peak is Ben Nevis. It is the highest peak not only in Scotland but in the whole Great Britain as well. In England there is the Pennine Chain. In Wales there are the Cumbrian Mountains.

There are no great forests on the British Isles today. Historically, the most famous forest is Sherwood Forest in the east of England, to the north of London. It was the home of Robin Hood, the famous hero of a number of legends.

The British Isles have many rivers but they are not very long. The longest of the English rivers is the Severn. It flows into the Irish Sea. The most important river of Scotland is the Clyde. Glasgow stands on it. Many of the English and Scottish rivers are joined by canals, so that it is possible to travel by water from one end of Great Britain to the other.

The Thames is over 200 miles long. It flows through the rich agricultural and industrial districts of the country. London, the capital of Great Britain, stands on it. The Thames has a wide mouth, that's why the big ocean liners can go up to the London port.

Geographical position of Great Britain is rather good as the country lies on the crossways of the sea routes from Europe to other parts of the world. The sea connects Britain with most European countries such as Belgium, Holland, Denmark, Norway and some other countries. The main sea route from Europe to

America also passes through the English Channel.

Географическое положение Великобритании

Объединенное Королевство Великобритании и Северной Ирландии занимает территорию около 244 тысяч квадратных миль. Оно расположено на Британских островах. Британские острова отделены от Европы проливами Па-де-кале и Ла-Манш. Британские острова омываются Северным морем на востоке и Атлантическим океаном на западе.

Население Великобритании около 60 миллионов. Самые большие города страны — это Лондон, Бирмингем, Ливерпуль, Манчестер, Глазго и Эдинбург.

Территория Великобритании разделена на четыре части: Англию, Шотландию, Уэльс и Северную Ирландию.

Англия находится в южной и центральной части Великобритании. Шотландия — на севере острова. Уэльс находится на западе. Северная Ирландия расположена в северо-восточной части Ирландии.

Англия — самая богатая, плодородная и наиболее населенная часть страны. На севере и на западе Англии есть горы, но вся остальная часть территории — большая равнина. В северо-западной части Англии много красивых озер. Эта часть страны так и называется — Район озер.

Шотландия — земля гор. Плато Шотландии — одно из самых древних в мире. Самая высокая гора Великобритании также находится в Шотландии. Цепь гор в Шотландии называется Грампианскими горами. Самая высокая их вершина — Бен Невис. Это самый высокий пик не только в Шотландии, но и в Великобритании. В Англии есть Пеннины. В Уэльсе — Кобринские горы.

Сегодня на Британских островах нет больших лесов. Самый знаменитый лес — Шервудский, он расположен на востоке Англии, к северу от Лондона. По преданию, это — пристанище Робина Гуда, знаменитого героя легенд.

На Британских островах много рек, но они не очень длинные. Самая длинная река в Англии — Северн. Она впадает в Ирландское море. Самая

главная река Шотландии — Клайд. На ней стоит Глазго. Многие английские и шотландские реки соединены между собой каналами так, чтобы по воде можно было добраться из одного конца Великобритании в другой.

Длина Темзы — более 200 миль. Она течет через богатые сельскохозяйственные и индустриальные районы страны. Лондон, столица Великобритании, стоит на ней. Темза имеет широкое устье, именно поэтому большие океанские лайнеры могут заходить в Лондонский порт.

Географическое положение Великобритании довольно удачно, так как страна лежит на пересечении морских путей из Европы в другие части света. Море соединяет Британию с такими европейскими странами, как Бельгия, Нидерланды, Дания, Норвегия и некоторыми другими странами. Главный морской путь из Европы в Америку также проходит через пролив Ла-Манш.

SPEAKING

Ex. 1. Retell the following text in your own words.

Fishing in the UK

The United Kingdom is an important fishing nation. The British fishing industry supplies about 685,000 short tons (621,000 metric tons) of fish yearly. British fishing crews also fish as far away as the Grand Banks of Newfoundland. The principal catches include cod, haddock, herring, mackerel, plaice, Pollock, sand lance, sole, and whiting. Large catches of shellfish are also brought in. The United Kingdom's main fishing ports are on the east coast and in the southwestern part of the island of Great Britain.

Fishing is an important industry in the United Kingdom, which is one of Europe's most productive fishing nations. This fishing boat empties a catch of shellfish at a Scottish port.

Ex. 2. Retell the following text in your own words.

National Flags of Great Britain

The flag of the UK is known as the Union Jack. It has its history. It all began

in 1603 when Scotland was joined to England and Wales.



The flag is made up of 3 crosses.

The upright cross is the Cross of St. George the patron saint of England. **The white diagonal cross** is the cross of St. Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland. **The red diagonal cross** is the cross of St. Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland. All of them are on the blue background.

(Jack is a sailing term for a flag.) It has been used as the British flag since 1603, when Scotland and England were united. The red diagonal cross of Ireland was added in 1801, when Ireland became part of the United Kingdom. Wales is not represented on the Union Jack because it is a principality of England. The Union Jack is most often seen flying from public buildings or at sports events. Children may wave small Union Jacks when a member of the royal family visits their town during national celebrations strings of small flags are hung across the street as bunting.

The Union Jack is less important to British people than the Stars and Stripes is to Americans. Many people feel a stronger loyalty to the national flags of England, Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland. The flag of the European Union, a circle of gold stars on a blue background, is sometimes also seen in Britain, e.g. on car number plates.

Ex. 3. Retell the following text in your own words.

Transportation in the UK

Roads and railways carry most passenger and freight traffic within the United Kingdom. An excellent system of high-speed motorways links major cities and towns. Bus systems provide local and intercity transportation. Lorries (trucks) carry about 80 percent of the inland freight.

An extensive rail network crisscrosses the United Kingdom. The railroads are owned by the government and provide excellent high-speed passenger service, as well as freight hauling.

Britain has a large merchant fleet. The ships in the fleet carry British-made goods to ports throughout the world and bring back needed imports. British ships also carry freight for other countries. There are about 80 ports of commercial significance throughout the United Kingdom.

The country's inland waterways are used to carry freight, as well as for recreational boating. The Thames, which flows through London, is Britain's busiest river and one of the busiest in the world.

Ex. 4. Use Role play. One reads, another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

Northern Ireland

Northern Ireland has an extreme northern to southern extension of about 135 km (about 85 mi) and an extreme eastern to western extension of about 175 km (about 110 mi). The shoreline is characterized by numerous irregularities and is about 530 km (about 330 mi) long. The major indentations are Lough Foyle in the north and Belfast, Stamford, and Carlingford loughs in the east. A striking feature of the northern coast is the Giant's Causeway, a rock formation consisting of thousands of closely placed, polygonal pillars of black basalt.

Ex. 5. Retell the joke

Climate

An Englishman and an American were discussing climate. The Englishman said that it was quite usual in England to go out in a sports jacket in the morning and be glad to have a warm coat in the evening.

“That’s nothing,” said the boastful American. “Two of my friends argued on the road once when the snow was 15 centimeters deep. One of them made a snowball and threw it at the other. It had only three meters to travel, but the weather changed

so quickly and it became so hot that instead of being hit by a snowball, the man was scalded by hot weather

References:

Poppy — ko'knor, (мак (считается символом мира в Великобритании))

Red rose — qizil atirgul (алая роза (эмблема династии Ланкастеров, эмблема Англии))

Daffodil — nargiz(gul), (желтый нарцисс {вторая эмблема Уэльса})

Leek — ko'k piyoz, (лук-порей {национальная эмблема Уэльса})

Shamrock — uchbarg (masalan beda), (трилистник (эмблема Ирландии))

Clover — beda (yo'ng'ichqa), (клевер)

Beech — qoraqayin, (бук)

Moor — qir-adir, (вересковая пустошь, заросли вереска)

Heather — вереск {вечнозеленый кустарник с напоминающими колокольчик цветками; распространен в Шотландии}

Welfare – 1) faronlik, tinchlik, 2) muhtojlarga yordam berish, xayriya, (благосостояние, социальное обеспечение)

Turmoil – bezovtalik, noqulaylik, tartibsizlik, (беспорядок, смятение)

Outlook – nuqtai nazar, dunyoqarash, (вид, перспектива)

Recession – iqtisodiy turg'unlik, narxlarning tushishi, (уход, отступление)

Emission – qimmatli qog'ozlar chiqarish, tarqatish, (выпуск, эмиссия)

Beverage – ichimlik (напиток)

Software – kompyuter programmalari(dastur), (программное обеспечение)

Steel – po'lat, (сталь)

Appliance – jihoz, vosita, (применение, прибор)

Loch – ko'l(shotl), (озеро(в Шотландии))

Hydroelectric – gidroelektrik(suvdan olinadigan elektr toki),
(гидроэлектрический)

Self-Work

Ex.1. Choose the correct answers.

1) What's the capital of the Republic of Ireland?

- a)Cardiff
- b)Dublin
- c)London
- d)Belfast

2) Where in Britain can you find Loch Ness?

- a)England
- b)Wales
- c)Scotland
- d)Northern Ireland

3) What is the capital of Scotland?

- a)Glasgow
- b)Aberdeen
- c)Edinburgh
- d)Inverness

4) What is the highest mountain in Britain?

- a)Snowdon
- b)Ben Nevis
- c)Ben Macdhui
- d)Scafell Pike

5) In which part of Britain can you find the Snowdonia National Park?

- a)England
- b)Wales
- c)Scotland
- d)Northern Ireland

6) Which island lies between England and Ireland?

- a)The Isle of Man

b)The Isle of Skye

c)Sheltand Islands

d)Jersey

7) Which part of Britain is not in the flag of the UK?

a)England

b)Wales

c)Scotland

d)Northern Ireland

8) What is the flag of the UK called?

a)Tricolore

b)Union Jack

c)Stars and Stripes

d)United Kingdom

9) In which part of the UK is Dartmoor?

a)England

b)Wales

c)Scotland

d)Northern Ireland

10) In which part of the UK is the Lake District?

a)England

b)Wales

c)Scotland

d)Northern Ireland

Ex.2. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

Glasgow was a grim city because of the grayness of the houses many of which were not suitable for living and needed repairs or rebuilding. But now this city is rapidly changing, turning into an important cultural centre. Glasgow is sometimes called “the friendly city”. Scotland had been an independent state and was joined into the UK in 1707, after a long struggle for its independence. One of the things that people associate with Scotland is the kilt. The kilt is a relic of the

time when the clan system existed in the Highlands. Everybody in the clan had the same family name, like MacDonald or Macgregor (Mac. means “son of”). The clan had its own territory and was ruled by a chieftain. Each clan had its own tartan. The national dress for Scotsmen includes a piper kilt in the tartan cloth of his clan and the sporran, a pouch worn in front of the kilt.

Ex.3. Make up sentences with the following words, phrases and translate them into your mother tongue:

glorious revolutionary traditions, black basalt, globalized economies, limestone, as cable television equipment, data processing equipment, fiber-optic communications systems, radar devices, undersea telephone cable.

Ex.4. Find the equivalents of the following words and phrases in your mother tongue:

Machine tools, electric power equipment, automation equipment, railroad equipment, shipbuilding, aircraft, motor vehicles and parts, electronics and communications equipment, metals, chemicals, coal, petroleum, paper and paper products, food processing, textiles, clothing, and other consumer goods. Labour force: 29.7 million.

Industries: machine tools, electric power equipment, automation equipment, railroad equipment, shipbuilding, aircraft, motor vehicles and parts, electronics and communications equipment, metals, chemicals, coal, petroleum, paper and paper products, food processing, textiles, clothing, other consumer goods.

machine tools, electric power equipment, automation equipment, railroad equipment, shipbuilding, aircraft, motor vehicles and parts, electronics and communications equipment, metals, chemicals, coal, petroleum, paper and paper products, food processing, textiles, clothing.

Ex.5. Translate the following texts into your mother-tongue

Energy sources. Fuel-burning plants provide about 80 percent of Britain's electric power. Nuclear energy provides most of the remaining electricity. In 1956, Britain opened the world's first large-scale nuclear power station at Calder Hall,

Cambria, in northwestern England. Natural gas fields under the North Sea provide most of the country's natural gas needs. Petroleum deposits off the coast of Scotland supply enough oil to meet the United Kingdom's needs.

International trade. The United Kingdom ranks as a leading trading nation. Britain once imported chiefly raw materials and exported mostly manufactured products. However, manufactured goods now account for about three-fourths of British imports and also about three-fourths of its exports. Britain exports aerospace equipment, chemicals and pharmaceuticals, machinery, motor vehicles, petroleum, and scientific and medical equipment. Its imports include chemicals, clothing, foods (especially fish, fruit, vegetables, meat, coffee, and tea), machinery, metals, motor vehicles, paper and newsprint, petroleum products, and textiles.

Most of the United Kingdom's trade is with other developed countries. France, Germany, and the United States are Britain's leading customers and suppliers. A growing proportion of the country's trade is with members of the European Community, which the United Kingdom joined in 1973. Other trade partners include Canada, Ireland, Japan, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Sweden, and Switzerland.

The value of Britain's imports of goods usually exceeds the value of its exports. British banks and insurance companies make up part of the difference by selling their services to people and firms in other lands. Another important source of income is the spending by the more than 15 million tourists who visit the United Kingdom each year. The British merchant fleet also brings in money by carrying cargoes for other countries. The income from all these invisible exports exceeds \$200 billion a year.

UNIT 2. History of the UK

READING

Ex.1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The Iberians

About 3 hundred years B.C. Many parts of Britain were inhabited by the people who were called Iberians. The Iberians were a set of peoples that Greek and Roman sources identified with that name in the eastern and southern coasts of the Iberian Peninsula at least from the 6th century BC.

The term Iberian, as used by the ancient authors, had two meanings. One, more general, referred to the whole of the population of the Iberian Peninsula. The other, more restricted, with an ethnic sense, to the people living in the eastern and southern coasts of the Iberian,

The Iberians were not a clearly defined culture, ethnic group or political entity. The name is instead a blanket term for a number of peoples belonging to a pre-Roman Iron Age culture inhabiting the eastern and southeastern Iberian Peninsula and who have been historically identified as "Iberian". Although these peoples shared certain common features, they diverged widely in some respects.

The Roman and Greek sources often diverge about the precise location of each Iberian people and also about the list of Iberian peoples.

The Iberians lived in isolated communities based on a tribal organization. They also had knowledge of metalworking, including bronze and agricultural techniques..

Greek colonists made the first historical reference to the Iberians in the 6th century BC. The Greeks also dubbed as "Iberians" another people, currently known as Caucasian Iberians. It is not known if there had been any type of connection between the two peoples.

The styles of Iberian sculpture are divided geographically into Levantine, Central, Southern, and Western groups, of which the Levantine group displays the most Greek influence.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

were tribal organization.

The Iberians didn't have their own culture.

didn't communicate each other.

first colony appeared on the Iberian Peninsula in 1100 BC.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The Iberians were not a clearly defined ... , ethnic group or political entity.
2. Among the most important goods traded by the Iberians were ... metals, tin and copper.
3. Greek colonists made the first reference to the Iberians in the 6th century BC.
4. The Greeks also dubbed as "Iberians" another people, currently known as ... Iberians.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. The Iberians settled in the eastern and western coasts of the Iberian Peninsula at least from the 6th century BC.
2. The name is instead a right term for a number of peoples belonging to a pre-Roman Iron Age culture.
3. It is not known if there had been any type of connection with the two peoples.
4. This process was especially aided by trading contacts with the Phoenicians, Greeks, and Carthaginians.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. One, more general, referred to the whole of the population of the Iberian Peninsula.
a) to describe b) to identify c) to clarify
2. Although these peoples shared certain common features, they diverged widely in some respects.
a) united b) to go in separate direction c) connected
- b) Among the most important goods traded by the Iberians were precious metals, tin and copper.
a) common b) exact c) natural
3. They had absorbed cultural influences from Phoenicians and Greeks.
a) completely interested b) established c) regarded
4. The Greeks also dubbed as "Iberians" another people, currently known as Caucasian Iberians.
a) separated b) informed c) to give name

Answers:

1) 1. The Iberians were tribal organization.

first colony appeared on the Iberian Peninsula in 1100 BC.

2) 1. culture, 2. precious, 3. historical, 4. Caucasian

3) 1. western/southern, 2. right/blanket, 3. with/between, 4. especially/probably

4) 1. a, 2.b, 3.a, 4.c

Ex.2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The Celts

The Iberians were unable to fight back to attacks of the Celts. The Celts had swords, daggers, axes. Iberians were driven into the mountains and mixed with the Celts. We know much about the history of Britain from the Greek books Julius Caesar the famous Roman general, statesman and writer in his book Julius Caesar describes the island and the Celts against whom he fought. The Celts had no towns they lived in villages. The tribes of Celts believed in many gods. Celts produced tools of metal.

The Welsh who lived in Wales are of Celtic origin the people lived in small villages along the rivers. The Britons caught fish, grew wheat and had many pigs, cows and sheep in the meadows near the rivers and on the side of mountains. Later they learned to make things of wool and metal and sold them to the people who came across the sea.

The "Celts" as we traditionally regard them exist largely in the magnificence of their art and the words of the Romans who fought them. The trouble with the reports of the Romans is that they were a mix of reportage and political propaganda. The Celts were a group of peoples loosely tied by similar language, religion, and cultural expression. They were not centrally governed, and quite as happy to fight each other as any non-Celt.

They were warriors, living for the glories of battle and plunder. They were also the people who brought iron working to the British Isles. The use of iron had amazing repercussions. First, it changed trade and fostered local independence.

Trade was essential during the Bronze Age, for not every area was naturally endowed with the necessary ores to make bronze. Iron, on the other hand, was relatively cheap and available almost everywhere. The time of the "Celtic conversion" of Britain saw a huge growth in the number of hill forts throughout the region. These were often small ditch and bank combinations encircling defensible hilltops. Some are small enough that they were of no practical use for more than an individual family, though over time many larger forts were built. The curious thing is that the English people don't know if the hill forts were built by the native Britons to defend themselves from the encroaching Celts or by the Celts as they moved their way into hostile territory. Usually these forts contained no source of water, so their use as long term settlements is doubtful, though they may have been useful indeed for withstanding a short term siege. Many of the hill forts were built on top of earlier causewayed camps.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

were modern and somewhat romantic reinterpretation of history.

The Celts were warriors, living for the glories of battle and plunder.

were also the people who brought copper working to the British Isles.

live near the sea.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Iberians were... into the mountains and mixed with the Celts.
2. The use of ... had amazing repercussions.
3. Many of the hill forts were built on top of earlier ... camps.
4. The time of the "Celtic conversion" of Britain saw a ... growth in the number of hill forts throughout the region.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. These were often small cliff and bank combinations encircling defensible hilltops.
2. The "Celts" as we traditionally regard them exist deeply in the magnificence of their art and the words of the Romans who fought them.
3. The Iron Age is the age of the "Celt" in Scotland.

4. Some are small enough that they were of no practical use for more than an individual family, though over time many larger castles were built.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The "Celts" as we traditionally regard them exist largely in the magnificence of their art and the words of the Romans who fought them.
a) very impressive b) sensible c) excitable
2. The trouble with the reports of the Romans is that they were a mix of reportage and political propaganda.
a) rule b) organization c) leader
3. What we do know is that the people we call Celts gradually infiltrated Britain over the course of the centuries between about 500 and 100 B.C.
a) to join b) reject c) divide
4. They were warriors, living for the glories of battle and plunder.
a) robber b) soldier c) organizer

Answers:

- 1) were modern and somewhat romantic reinterpretation of history.
The Celts were warriors, living for the glories of battle and plunder.
- 2) 1.driven, 2. iron, 3. causewayed, 4. huge
- 3) 1. cliff/ditch, 2. deeply/largely, 3. Scotland/Britain, 4. castles/forts
- 4) 1. a, 2. b, 3. a, 4. a

Ex.3. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Roman Invasion in Britain

In the first century B.C two thousand years ago the Romans were the most powerful people while the Celts were still living in tribes and primitive society, Romans had a slave society. The slave owners possessed the land, tools buildings and slaves. In the 1st century B.C and first century A.D slavery spread widely in the Roman Empire.

In 55 BC Britain was invaded by Julius Caesar, a Roman general and governor of Gaul (France), soon to be, in all but name, the first Roman emperor.

At that time the city of Rome was about 700 years old, but the Roman Empire was much younger. As late as 211 BC Rome had narrowly escaped destruction by the Carthaginian general, Hannibal. But Hannibal's defeat left Rome without a serious rival, and by Caesar's time it controlled an empire that stretched from Spain to the Near East.

Romans conquered the South East. Other parts of the country were taken from time to time during the next 40 years. Romans made several roads, bridges, walls as a result of the conquest. Roman civilize spread over Britain. They built towns, splendid villas, and public baths New York, London, Lincoln, Manchester about fifty smaller towns. The towns grew up as markets; plenty of shops merchants sold their goods. The houses were built of stone supplied with pure water. The Roman towns were surrounded by walls for defense the Romans remained in Britain for about four centuries and later in the 3-4th centuries the power of the Roman Empire gradually weekend. Slavers became an obstacle to technical progress.



We can see the Roman walls in Britain even now. The Romans left the country only in the second half of the fifth century. The Roman armies were called back to Italy to defend the country from enemies.

The spread of Christianity gave possibility for learning. Such words by Greek origin as arithmetic, mathematics, theatre and geography, school paper, candle and others appeared in English as a result of Greek influence.

Two places more different than imperial Rome and Celtic Britain could hardly have existed. Roman society was urban, with grand public buildings built of marble. Britain was a country of mud huts, with no settlement large enough to be

called a town. An upper-class Roman lived in greater comfort than any British before the 15th century. His house even had central heating.

The Romans, as heirs of the civilization of Ancient Greece, were interested in art, philosophy and history (Caesar himself wrote good military history in simple prose). The British could neither read nor write. They were not savages, and in some ways Celtic art was superior to Roman, or so it seems to us, but the Romans naturally thought of them as hopelessly primitive barbarians. To the Romans - and to many non-Romans too - there was but one worthwhile form of society, and that was their own. The only useful function of other peoples was to contribute to the glory of Rome.

Britain was a mysterious isle to the Romans. But Caesar knew it contained valuable minerals, and he knew also that the British were helping their cousins in Gaul against Rome.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

Britain was invaded by Julius Caesar.

In 55 BC Britain was independent.

was stretched from Spain to the Near East.

The British could read and write.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. At that time the city of Rome was about 700 years old, but the Roman Empire was much... .
2. Two places more different than imperial Rome and Celtic Britain could ... have existed.
3. The Romans, as heirs of the ... of Ancient Greece, were interested in art, philosophy and history.
4. The British could neither read ... write.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. In 55 BC Britain was invaded by Julius Caesar, a Roman general and governor of Gaul (France), soon to be, in all but name, the second Roman emperor.
2. Two places more different than independent Rome and Celtic Britain could hardly have existed.
3. Britain was a mysterious nation to the Romans.
4. The only useful function of other peoples was to action to the glory of Rome.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. But Hannibal's defeat left Rome without a serious rival.
a) failure b) success c) luck
2. Roman society was urban, with grand public buildings built of marble.
a) smooth stone b) soft stone c) small stone
3. They were not savages.
a) wild b) kind c) intelligent
4. In some ways Celtic art was superior to Roman, or so it seems to us, but the Romans naturally thought of them as hopelessly primitive barbarians.
a) better b) greater c) more

Answers:

- 1) In 55 BC Britain was invaded by Julius Caesar.
- 2) 1. younger 2. hardly 3. civilization 4. Nor
- 3) 1. second/first 2. independent/imperial 3. nation/isle 4. action/contribute
- 4) 1.a, 2a, 3a, 4a

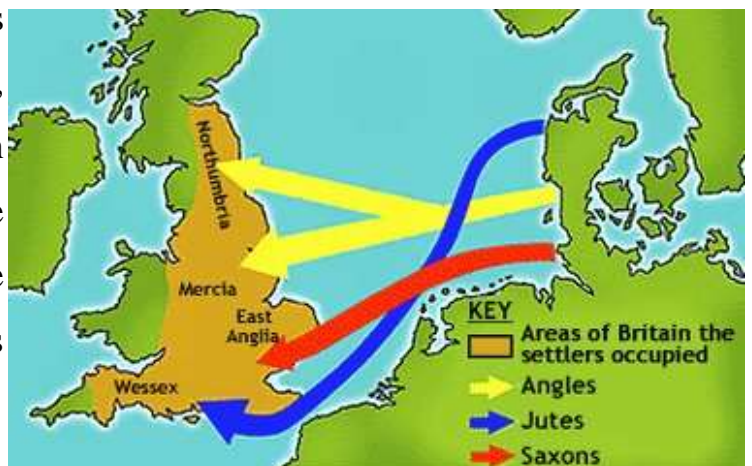
LISTENING

Ex.1. Listen to the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

The Anglo-Saxon Invasion in Britain

The Germanic invaders of Britain, who were to become the English, came from north-west Europe, between the mouth of the Rhine and the Baltic Sea.

At first the Anglo-Saxons arrived in small groups. Then, liking the country, they came in larger bands, and began to move inland, finding their way to the heart of England up the Thames and other rivers.



In the early 5th century a

number of the Germanic tribes from northwestern Europe invaded to England and settled in large numbers. The Angles, Saxons and Jutes attacked the coasts of Britain. After long wars with the Britons they settled on the British Isles. The Britons fought bravely against the enemies and defended their land. But the enemies were stronger. They took houses, fields and cattle from the Britons.

Two of these tribes the Angles and the Saxons had the southeast of the country in their grasp. In the west of the country their advance was temporarily held by an army of (Celtic) Britons under the command of the legendary King Arthur. Nevertheless, by the end of the sixth century, they and their way of life predominated in nearly all of England and in parts of southern Scotland. The Celtic Britons were either Saxonized or driven westwards, where the language survived in southwest Scotland Cornwall.

The Angles got most of the land and became the strongest tribe. The Britons went to the mountains in the west of the Isles and settled there. This part of Britain is called Wales now. Later the 2 people the Angles and the Saxons grew into one and were called Anglo-Saxons. They called their speech English and their country England, that is the Land of the English, The Anglo-Saxons formed seven Kingdoms like Kent, Essex, Wessex, East Anglia, Sussex, North Umbria, Mercia. They are countries of Great Britain now. These kingdoms were at war with each other. The stronger kings took the land from the weaker kingdoms.

In the 7th and 9th centuries gradual changes were taking place among the members of the community. The arable land became the private properties of separate families. Thus in the 7th - 9th centuries feudal relations developed. With the developing of feudal relations great changes took place in the government too. Rich landowners were given great power over the peasants.

Among the 7 kingdoms Wessex was the strongest kingdom. Then the kingdoms were later united. Egbert was the king of England. Later Egbert's grandson Alfred the great was the king. Alfred(871-900) the great wanted his people to study, to learn the Latin language. He opened schools. Books were translated into English from Latin.

At this time Latin words spade, mill mortar, marble, chinks were adopted from Latin. Alfred ordered the learned men to write the history of England. In the reign of Alfred, the kingdom of England became stronger.

The Anglo-Saxons had little use for towns and cities. But they had a great effect on the countryside where they introduced new farming methods and founded villages which formed the basis of English society for the next thousand or so years.

Christianity spread throughout Britain from two different directions during the sixth and seventh centuries, it came directly from Rome when St. Augustine arrived in 597 and established his headquarters at Canterbury in the south-east of England, and it had already been introduced into Scotland and northern England from Ireland, which had become Christian more than 150 years earlier. Although Roman Christianity eventually took over the whole of the British Isles, the Celtic model persisted in Scotland and Ireland for several hundred years. It was less centrally organized, and had less need for a strong monarchy to support it. This partly explains why both secular and religious power in these two countries continued to be both more locally based and less secure than it was elsewhere in Britain throughout the medieval period.

At the end of the 10th century the Anglo-Saxon kingdom became weak. At the beginning of the 11th century England was conquered by the Scandinavians.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) Legendary King Arthur ruled the country.
- b) In the early 5th century a number of the Germanic tribes from northwestern Europe invaded to England.
- c) Roman Christianity couldn't take over the whole of the British Isles.

2. Complete the sentence.

- 1. The Angles, Saxons and Jutes attacked the ... of Britain.
- 2. The Britons fought bravely against the ... and defeated their land.
- 3. The Celtic Britons were either Saxonized or driven westwards, where the language survived in southwest ... Cornwall.
- 4. It was less centrally organized, and had less need for a strong ... to support it.

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The Tudor dynasty (1485 – 1603) established a system of government departments, staffed by professionals who depended for their position on the monarch. As a result, the feudal barons were no longer needed for implementing government policy. Parliament was traditionally split into two ‘Houses’. The House of Lords consisted of the feudal aristocracy and the leaders of the Church; the House of Commons consisted of representatives from the towns and the less important landowners in rural areas. It was now more important for monarchs to get the agreement of the Commons for policy-making because that was where the newly powerful merchants and landowners (the people with the money) were represented.

- a) About the Tudor dynasty.
- b) The State System.
- c) About monarchs.

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Victoria became queen in 1837 at age 18, after a difficult childhood under the control of her mother. Her long reign saw Britain reach the zenith of its economic and political power.

Interpretation

Exciting new technologies such as steam ships, railroads, photography, and telegraphs appeared, making the world much faster-paced. Britain again remained mostly inactive in Continental politics, and it was not affected by the wave of revolutions in 1848.

Interpretation

She reigned for 63 years, until 1901—the longest reign in British history. This period is called the Victorian Age. During this period, the British Empire reached its height.

Interpretation.....

It included about a quarter of the world's land and about a quarter of the world's people. Wealth poured into Britain from its colonies. British industry continued to expand, and the country was called the workshop of the world.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) b) In the early 5th century a number of the Germanic tribes from northwestern Europe invaded to England.
- 2) 1. coasts 2.enemies 3. Scotland 4. monarchy
- 3) b) About the State System.

Ex.2. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

The Scandinavian invasion

In the 10th century the Anglo-Saxon monarchy won several victories over the adopted their language and assimilated gradually with them.

In the 11th century the Scandinavian conquered again. The Scandinavian king Canute became the king of Denmark, Norway and England. He made England (the town of York) the centre of his power. Canute ruled England till he died. After his death Scandinavian kings, came to the end. Scandinavian tribes languages were very close to English many Scandinavian words penetrated into the English language.

- a) Scandinavian Invasion in Britain.
- b) Scandinavians ran away from Britain.
- c) In 893 Vikings destroyed the monastery of Lindisfarne.

1. Complete the sentence.

1. The Vikings were a ... people.
2. They crossed the Atlantic, founding a colony in Newfoundland 500 years before Columbus ... America.
3. Norsemen sailed around Scotland and down the west coast of Britain ... the Mersey.
4. These long-haired warriors wore coats of mail, carried hefty ... and long shields.

Ex.3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

Wales and Scotland were independent kingdoms that resisted English rule. The English conquest of Wales succeeded in 1282 under Edward I, and the Statute of

Huddling established English rule 2 years later. To appease the Welsh, Edward's son (later Edward II), who had been born in Wales, was made Prince of Wales in 1301. The tradition of bestowing this title on the eldest son of the British Monarch continues today. Between 1536 and 1542, during the reign of Henry VIII (1509-1547), England and Wales were brought together administratively and legally. Later, in 1707, Scotland joined the union.

- a) The English conquest of Wales succeeded in 1282 under Edward I.
- b) Wales and Scotland were independent kingdoms.
- c) The Union of England with Wales and Scotland.

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

After a rough start Britain under David Lloyd George successfully mobilized its manpower, womanpower, industry, finances, Empire and diplomacy, in league with the French and Americans, to defeat the Germans and Turks.

Interpretation.....

Most Britons eagerly supported the war, but the Irish were restless and plotted a rebellion in 1916.

Interpretation.....

The economy grew about 14% from 1914 to 1918 despite the absence of so many men in the services; by contrast the German economy shrank 27%. The War saw a decline of civilian consumption, with a major reallocation to munitions.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) a) Scandinavian Invasion in Britain.
- 2) 1. sea-going, 2. discovered, 3. as far as 4. battle-axes
- 3) c) The Union of England with Wales and Scotland.

Ex.4. Work in groups: one reads and others listen to him/her. One retells the text, translates the speech into mother-tongue orally.

The war forced Britain to use up its financial reserves and borrow large money from the U.S.

Britain entered the war on Aug. 4, 1914, after German troops invaded neutral Belgium on their way to attack France. The fighting lasted until 1918, when the Allies finally defeated Germany.

The war had a shattering effect on Britain. About 750,000 members of the British armed forces died. German submarines sank almost 8 million short tons (7 million metric tons) of British shipping. The war also created severe economic problems for Britain and shook its position as a world power.

WRITING

Ex.1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

Norman Invasion in Britain

Normans by origin were Germanic tribes they lived in the Northern Coasts of France. They lived among the French people and learned French later they became French people. The territory which is called Normandy was named after these Normans.

In 1066 William, the duke of Normandy began to gather his army to invade Britain. He was related to the king of England who died in 1066. The king who died in 1066 had no children and he was to be the king (Harold). William said that England belonged to him and began a war. There were many people who were ready to join William's army. King Harold's army was weak. They killed Harold and William became the king of England for 21 years (1066-1087).

William ordered to build castles in different parts of the country. So Norman conquerors became the owners of England lands.

Norman aristocracy spoke a Norman dialect of French. Anglo-Saxons spoke English. Thus there were two different languages spoken in the country. French became the official language of the state. It was a language of the ruling class. All official documents were written in French. Normans despised anyone who could not speak French. Only peasants spoke English. In a few generations the Normans learned to speak English. Then English became the language of the educated classes. At the time when the two languages were spoken side by side The Anglo-Saxons learned many French words. They borrowed many English words.

Thus, the vocabulary of the English language was enlarged. We could find such French words in English as: noble, baron, serve, command, obey, charter, council, accuse, court, crime, arms, troops, guard, navy, battle, victory etc. King William the Conqueror ordered to write the book about the history of England “Doomsday Book” in 1086.

Ex 2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

The History of British Parliament

The modern British Parliament is one of the oldest continuous representative assemblies in the world. The modern UK Parliament can trace its origins all the way back to two features of Anglo-Saxon government from the 8th to 11th centuries. These are the Witan and the moot.

The Witan was the occasion when the King would discuss matters affecting the country. Witan’s main duty was to advise the King but its assent was not necessary for the King to take action. However, Anglo-Saxon Kings realized that they support from these powerful men, and so began the delicate balancing act between the King’s power and the power of those he governed.

After the Norman conquest, Kings of England began to govern through a smaller but permanent inner council of advisers and officials, but occasionally the King would call on additional nobles (earls and barons) and churchmen (bishops and abbots) to gain their approval of his decisions, especially regarding taxation.

This larger group of noble advisors especially summoned was known as the Great Council (magnum concilium) and it formed the basis for the modern Upper House of Parliament – today the House of Lords.

Also under the Anglo-Saxons there had been regular meetings, for each country (or shire) where heard and local matters discussed. The “shire moot” was attendant by the local lords and bishops, the sheriff, and most importantly, four representatives of each village. After the conquest, this meeting became known as the country court and it introduced the idea of representative government at the local level.

These two gatherings remained separate for many centuries, but eventually the noble councilors of the Great Council and the local spokesmen of the country court would combine to make a parliament of two Houses, the aristocratic Lords and the locally representative Commons.

The first known official use of the term Parliament was in 1236. It described the consultative meetings of the English monarch with a large group of his nobles (the earls and barons), and prelates (the bishops and abbots). The word Parliament means an event arranged to talk and discuss things, from the French word “parler”.

Ex.3. Find sentences with the following words and phrases and translate them into your mother tongue:

Battles, wars, conquer, colony, empire, invasions, world wars, a profound effect, igneous rocks, qualities of stoicism, naval power, a depression swept, as the monoculture of cotton, inevitable

SPEAKING

Ex.1. Retell the following text in your own words.

About Oliver Cromwell

Oliver Cromwell was English soldier and statesman who helped make England a republic and then ruled as lord protector from 1653 to 1658.

Oliver Cromwell was born on 25 April 1599 in Huntingdon, Cambridge shire into a family of minor gentry and studied at Cambridge University. He became member of Parliament for Huntingdon in the Parliament of 1628-1629. In the 1630s Cromwell experienced a religious crisis and became convinced that he would be guided to carry out god’s purpose. He began to make his name as a radical puritan when, in 1640, he was elected to represent Cambridge, first in the short Parliament in 1642. Although Cromwell lacked military experience, he created and led a superb force of cavalry, the “Ironsides”, and rose from the rank of captain to that of lieutenant – general in three years. He convinced parliament to establish a professional army – the New Model Army – which won the decisive victory over the king’s alliance with the Scots and his subsequent defeat in the

Second Civil War convinced Cromwell that the king must be brought to justice. He was a prime mover in the trial and execution of Charles I in 1649 and subsequently sought to win conservative support for the new republic by suppressing radical elements in the army. Cromwell became army commander and lord lieutenant of Ireland, where he crushed resistance with the massacres of the Garrisons at Drogheda and Wexford (1649).

Ex.2. Retell the following text in your own words.

Great Britain: from AD 1707

The more widely acceptable name, also in common use, is Britain. Its prevalence is reflected in phrases such as the British Empire (something which even the English have never claimed as their own) and in the colloquial modern term 'Brits' for inhabitants of the island. Historically 'united kingdom' begins life in informal use during the 18th century to describe the newly combined nation of England and Scotland. It becomes official in 1800, in the Act of Union with Ireland, when the enlarged kingdom is called the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. The earlier Act of Union, of 1707, states merely that England and Scotland shall 'be united into one kingdom by the name of Great Britain'.

Given the centuries of hostility between Scotland and England, with warfare even in the 17th century under a shared Stuart king, the union of the two kingdoms seems to come with surprising suddenness. It has been under discussion for a considerable time, for James VI and I tries to achieve it after inheriting the English throne in 1603. But the idea meets with little favor (although imposed during the Commonwealth) until the early 18th century.

The Act of Union abolishes the Scottish parliament, giving the Scots instead a proportion of the seats at Westminster (forty-five in the commons, sixteen in the lords). Scotland's legal system, radically different from English common law, is specifically safeguarded. There is unrest and warfare in Scotland during much of the 18th century because a strong faction, particularly in the Highlands, supports the Jacobite cause (the claim to the throne of the exiled Stuarts). This discontent erupts twice, in the rebellions of 1715 and 1745. But the majority of Scots are

content with a new role in a kingdom united under the title Great Britain. A renewal of Scottish nationalism must await the 20th century.

The death of Queen Anne in August 1714 brings into effect the **Act of Settlement** of 1701. Anne's heir under that legislation, the electress Sophia of Hanover, has died just two months previously. So the new king is Sophia's son, the elector of Hanover, who arrives in England in September as George I. His accession to the throne is peaceful but nevertheless controversial. As in 1688, the inheritance is a political issue between **Whigs and Tories**. Some Tories still hanker for a return to the direct line of the Stuart kings. The infant whose birth sparked the **crisis in 1688** is now living in France as James Stuart, known in English history as the Old Pretender. His father, James II, has died in 1701. In terms of divine right, he is the undeniable heir.

Ex.3. Read and retell the following text and translate:

Great Depression

The Great Depression originated in the United States in late 1929 and quickly spread to the world. Britain had never experienced the boom that had characterized the U.S., Germany, Canada and Australia in the 1920s, so its bust appeared less severe. Britain's world trade fell in half (1929–33), the output of heavy industry fell by a third, employment profits plunged in nearly all sectors. At the depth in summer 1932, registered unemployed numbered 3.5 million, and many more had only part-time employment. Experts tried to remain optimistic. John Maynard Keynes, who had not predicted the slump, said, "There will be no serious direct consequences in London. We find the look ahead decidedly encouraging."

Particularly hardest hit by economic problems were the north of England, Scotland, Northern Ireland and Wales; unemployment reached 70% in some areas at the start of the 1930s (with more than 3 million out of work nationally) and many families depended entirely on payments from local government known as the dole.

In 1936, by which time unemployment was lower, 200 unemployed men made a highly publicized march from Jarrow to London in a bid to show the plight

of the industrial poor. Although much romanticized by the Left, the Jarrow Crusade marked a deep split in the Labour Party and resulted in no government action. Unemployment remained high until the war absorbed all the job seekers. George Orwell's book *The Road to Wigan Pier* gives a bleak overview of the hardships of the time.

Ex.4. Use Role play. One reads, another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

Ireland's invasion

Ireland's invasion by the Anglo-Normans in 1170 led to centuries of strife. Successive English kings sought to conquer Ireland. In the early 17th century, large-scale settlement of the north from Scotland and England began. After its defeat, Ireland was subjected, with varying degrees of success, to control and regulation by Britain.

While maintaining separate parliaments, England and Scotland were ruled under one crown beginning in 1603, when James VI of Scotland succeeded his cousin Elizabeth I as James I of England. In the ensuing 100 years, strong religious and political differences divided the kingdoms. Finally, in 1707, England and Scotland were unified as Great Britain, sharing a single Parliament at Westminster.

The legislative union of Great Britain and Ireland was completed on January 1, 1801, under the name of the United Kingdom. However, armed struggle for independence continued sporadically into the 20th century. The Anglo-Irish Treaty of 1921 established the Irish Free State, which subsequently left the Commonwealth and became a republic after World War II. Six northern Irish counties, predominantly Protestant, have remained part of the United Kingdom.

This chart covers the most important periods of British history. It shows the chief inhabitants or invaders of England until the Middle Ages, then the royal houses of England (until 1603) and of Britain (after 1603). Only monarchs or rulers mentioned in the text appear on the chart.

References:

remarkable – ajoyib, ashhur, misli ko'rilmagan, (удивительный, замечательный)

intermingle – aralashmoq, aloqada bo'lmoq, (смешивать)

onwards – oldinga, olg'a, ilgari, (вперёд)

subordinate – bo'sunuvchi, qo'l ostidagi, (подчинённый)

cosmopolitan – bewatan, (космополитический)

abrupt – tikka kesib tushgan jarlik, tik, qo'qqisdan birdan (отрывистый, резкий, внезапный)

endure – chidamoq, toqat qilmoq, (выносить, выдерживать)

navy – harbiy dengiz floti, (военно-морской флот)

shatter – chiparchin bo'lmoq, barbod bo'lmoq, (разбивать, вдребезги)

Self-Work

Ex.1. Answer the following questions

1) What did the Romans build to keep out the Scots and Picts?

2) What is the name of the land units which the Saxons had Britain divided into?

- 3) What was the "Bill of Rights" in 1689 designed for?
- 4) What invention led to rapid development during the Industrial Revolution (1730 - 1850)?
- 5) What did Britain export to Europe in the 1850s?
- 6) How many parts does the Parliament of the UK consist of?
- 7) What period is often regarded as the most glorious one in Britain's history?
- 8) Which status does the Isle of Man have?
- 9) What are the three parties in Great Britain?
- 10) What is the name of the Secret Service in the UK?
- 11) When did the Roman people conquer Britain?
- 12) What do you know about the Celts?
- 13) When did Normans conquer Britain?
- 14) Can you tell any information about The Union of England with Wales and Scotland?
- 15) How old was Victoria become queen?
- 16) Why World War II began?

Ex.2. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

Long ago, the British Isles were not isles at all. Britain was part of the European continent: the English Channel did not exist and East Anglia merged into the Netherlands. Then, about 10,000 years ago - when the last Ice Age had ended, when the bones of the last mammoth had sunk into the mud of the Thames valley, when the climate grew warmer - new rivers and seas were formed and Europe was slowly formed into its present shape.

The people of Britain, like their cousins on the continent, were simple hunters who lived on the flesh of wild animals, which they shot with flint-tipped arrows or caught in traps. They killed fish in the estuaries and shallow rivers with spears made from the antlers of deer. They gathered wild fruit, nuts and honey, and

probably ate snails, caterpillars and other grubs. They did not build permanent houses, but moved from place to place, sheltering in caves in cold weather.

The people of Britain lagged behind the people of certain warmer lands in their development. While they were still living in caves and scratching about for insects to eat, the Egyptians were building pyramids and writing literature.

Of all the stages between the cave and the skyscraper, perhaps man's greatest leap forward was taken when he became a farmer. The Stone Age farmer of about 5,000 years ago had to clear patches in the forests which covered most of Britain that was not barren heath or swamp. He cut down trees with stone axes, burned off the scrub, and tilled the ground with a stone-headed hoe. He kept half-wild cattle and pigs in the forest, where they could find their own food, and in treeless parts, like northern Scotland, he kept sheep. The people who grew grain in southern England had flint sickles to reap the harvest.

Ex.3. Read and retell the following text and translate:

The Union of England with Wales and Scotland

Successive English kings sought to conquer Ireland. In the early 17th century, large-scale settlement of the north from Scotland and England began. After its defeat, Ireland was subjected, with varying degrees of success, to control and regulation by Britain.

Both Wales and Scotland were independent kingdoms that resisted English rule. The English conquest of Wales succeeded in 1282 under Edward I, and the Statute of Huddling established English rule 2 years later. To appease the Welsh, Edward's son (later Edward II), who had been born in Wales, was made Prince of Wales in 1301. The tradition of bestowing this title on the eldest son of the British Monarch continues today. Between 1536 and 1542, during the reign of Henry VIII (1509-1547), England and Wales were brought together administratively and legally. Later, in 1707, Scotland joined the union.

While maintaining separate parliaments, England and Scotland were ruled under one crown beginning in 1603, when James VI of Scotland succeeded his cousin Elizabeth I as James I of England. In the ensuing 100 years, strong religious and political differences divided the kingdoms. Finally, in 1707, England and Scotland were unified as Great Britain, sharing a single Parliament at Westminster.

Ex.4. Read the following text and translate words and phrases in dark type into English using a dictionary:

Elections in 1979 returned the Conservatives to power. Conservative Party leader Margaret Thatcher replaced Callaghan as prime minister. She became the first woman ever to hold the office. She served as prime minister for the next 11 years, longer than any other person in the 1900s.

As prime minister, Thatcher worked to reduce government involvement in Britain's economy. For example, the government sold its interests in many industries to private citizens and businesses. The government also sold thousands of public-housing units to their tenants, promoting home ownership. Direct taxes were reduced.

In 1982, Thatcher won praise for her decisive handling of a conflict with Argentina. Since 1833, Britain has ruled the Falkland Islands, which lie about 320 miles (515 kilometers) east of the southern coast of Argentina. But Argentina has long claimed ownership of the islands. In April 1982, Argentine troops invaded and occupied the Falklands. Britain then sent troops, ships, and planes to the islands. British and Argentine forces fought air, sea, and land battles for control of the Falkland Islands. The Argentine forces surrendered to Britain in June 1982.

In 1985, Thatcher and Prime Minister Garret Fitzgerald of Ireland signed the Anglo-Irish Agreement, an agreement that established an advisory conference for Northern Ireland. The conference, consisting of officials of Britain and Ireland, gave Ireland an advisory role in Northern Ireland's government.

By the mid-1980s, Britain's productivity had improved, but unemployment, inflation, and other economic problems continued. During the late 1980s, unemployment declined, but inflation began to rise. Britain was importing more than it exported. Roads, hospitals, and schools were declining through lack of public investment. The number of homeless people was increasing. In 1990, the economy entered a recession. Unemployment rose.

UNIT 3. State System of the UK

READING

Ex.1. Read the following text and do the tests below.

The United Kingdom is a constitutional monarchy. This means that it has a monarch (a king or a queen) as its Head of State. The monarch reigns with the support of Parliament. The powers of the monarch are not defined precisely. Everything today is done in the Queen's name. It is her government, her armed forces, her law courts and so on. She appoints all the Ministers, including the Prime Minister. Everything is done however on the advice of the elected Government, and the monarch takes no part in the decision-making process. There

is no longer an empire because in 1947 the colonies of Britain got their independence (ex. India, Pakistan and others). But Britain tried not to lose the influence over the former colonies and the commonwealth was founded in 1949. It includes many countries such as New Zealand, Australia, the Sudan, Canada, Burma, Ireland, India, Pakistan and others. The queen opens the parliament.

Parliament elections are held every five years, but in practice general elections are usually held before the end of this term. Parliament works by the order of the Queen and the Prime Minister. The life of a Parliament is divided into sessions. Each usually lasts for one year – normally beginning and ending in October or November. The average number of "sitting" days in a session is about 168 in the House of Commons and about 150 in the House of Lords. At the start of each session the Queen's speech to Parliament outlines the Government's policies and proposed legislative program.

Parliament consists of the House of Lords, and the House of Commons.

Parliament consists of two chambers known as the House of Commons and the House of Lords. Parliament and the monarch have different roles in the government of the country, and they only meet together on symbolic occasions such as the coronation of a new monarch or the opening of Parliament. In reality, the House of Commons is the only which has true power. It is here that new bills are introduced and debated. If the majority of the members are in favour of a bill it goes to the House of Lords to be debated and finally to the monarch to be signed. Only then it becomes law. Although a bill must be supported by all three bodies, the House of Lords only has limited powers, and the monarch has not refused to sign one since the modern political system began over 200 years ago.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

is a presidential republic.

The United Kingdom is led by deputies.

is a constitutional monarchy.

has its own constitution.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The powers of the monarch are not defined
2. The life of a Parliament is divided into
3. In reality, the House of ... is the only one of the three which has true power.
4. It is here that new ... are introduced and debated.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. It is her government, her armed forces, her rule courts and so on.
2. Parliament organizes by the order of the Queen and the Prime Minister.
3. Parliament consists of two parts.
4. Each occasionally lasts for one year – normally beginning and ending in October or November.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The monarch reigns with the support of Parliament.
 - a) the period of time when a king or queen rules a country
 - b) a collection of official records
 - c) the process of becoming active
2. The powers of the monarch are not defined precisely.
 - a) exactly b) usually c) previously
3. They only meet together on symbolic occasions such as the coronation of a new monarch or the opening of Parliament.
 - a) to join new organization
 - b) a wedding party which can attend only royal family
 - c) a ceremony at which someone officially becomes king or queen
4. She appoints all the Ministers, including the Prime Minister.
 - a) to accept or reject rules
 - b) to give opinion
 - c) to choose someone to do a particular job

Answers:

- 1) The United Kingdom is a constitutional monarchy.
- 2) 1. precisely, 2. sessions, 3. Commons, 4. bills
- 3) 1. rule/law, 2. organizes/works, 3. two/three, 4. occasionally/usually

4) 1a, 2a, 3c, 4c

Ex.2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

House of Commons

The House of Commons makes the bills. Members of the Parliament sit on two sides of the hall, one side for the governing party and the other for the opposition. The first two rows of seats are occupied by the leading members of both parties they are called front-benchers. Others are called back-benchers. Each session of the House of Commons lasts for 160-175 days. A session is divided into 5 periods: from November – Christmas, from January – Easter, from Easter – Whitsun, from Whitsun – the end of July and 10 days in October. The House of Commons plays the major role in law-making. It consists of Members of Parliament (called MPs for short), each of whom represents an area in England, Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland. MPs are elected either at a general election, or at a by election following the death or retirement of an MP.

Parliamentary elections must be held every five years, but the Prime Minister can decide on the exact date within those five years. The minimum voting age is 18, and the voting is taken by secret ballot.

The election campaign lasts about three weeks.. The British parliamentary system depends on political parties. The political parties choose candidates in elections. The party which wins the majority of seats forms the Government and its leader usually becomes Prime Minister. The Prime Minister chooses about 20 MPs from his or her party to become the Cabinet of Ministers. Each minister is responsible for a particular area of the government. The second largest party becomes the official opposition with its own leader and Shadow cabinet. Leader of the Opposition is a recognized post in the House of Commons.

The House of Commons is made up of 650 elected members, known as Members of Parliament (MPs). Parliament has intervals during its work. MPs are paid for their parliamentary work and have to attend the sittings. MPs have to catch the Speaker's eye when they want to speak, then they rise from where they have

been sitting to address the House and must do so without either reading a prepared speech or consulting notes. The division of the parliament into two Houses goes back over some 700 years.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

plays the minor role in law-making.

The House of Commons is made up of 650 elected members.

is presided over by the Speaker.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Parliamentary elections must be held every ... years.
2. The election is decided on a simple majority the ... with most votes wins.
3. The British parliamentary ... depends on political parties.
4. MPs are paid for their ... work and have to attend the sittings.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. The Prime Minister can decide on the exact month within those five years.
2. The election members last about three weeks.
3. The political parties choose candidates in discussions.
4. The governor chooses about 20 MPs from his or her party to become the Cabinet of Ministers.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. MPs are elected either at a general election, or at a by election following the death or retirement of an MP.
 - a) to ask someone a lot of question
 - b) a close personal relationship
 - c) the act of permanently stopping work
2. The minimum voting age is 18, and the voting is taken by secret ballot.
 - a) a secret vote
 - b) the state of having a difficult life
 - c) secret opinion
3. The House of Commons is presided over by the Speaker, a member acceptable to the whole House.
 - a) to start
 - b) to be in charge of an official meeting
 - c) to be continue
4. Parliament has intervals during its work.

- a) a period of time between two events
- b) chances
- c) critics

Answer:

1) The House of Commons is made up of 650 elected members.

is presided over by the Speaker.

2) 1. five, 2. candidate, 3. system, 4. parliamentary

3) 1. month/date, 2. members/campaign,

3. discussions/elections, 4. governor/Prime Minister

4) 1.c, 2.a, 3.b, 4a

Ex.3. Read the following text and do the tests below.

The House of Lords

The other House of Parliament is the House of Lords. The House of Lords has more than 1,000 members, although only about 250 take an active part in the work of the House. This House consists of those lords who sit by right of inheritance and those men and women who have been given life peerages which end with the life of their possessors. Members of this Upper House are not elected. They sit there because of their rank. The chairman of the House of Lords is the Lord Chancellor and he sits on a special seat called Woolsack.

The members of the House of Lords debate a bill after it has been passed by the House of Commons. Changes may be recommended, and agreement between the two Houses is reached by negotiations. The Lords' main power consists of being able to delay non-financial bills for a period of a year, but they can also introduce certain types of bill. The House of Lords is the only non-elected second chamber in parliaments of the world, and some people in Britain would like to abolish it.

The House of Lords is the older of the two Houses of Parliament and were originally nobles who advised, the King. These members are not elected, but have

inherited their seats from their fathers or been given them by the Government. Members of the Royal Family, bishops of the Church and important law judges can also sit in the House of Lords.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

consists of only men.

The House of Lords is the younger of the two Houses of Parliament.

has more than 1,000 members.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Although only about ... take an active part in the work of the House.
2. Members of this Upper House are not
3. The members of the House of Lords debate a bill after it has been ... by the House of Commons.
4. These members are not elected, but have inherited their seats from their fathers or been given them by the....

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. This House consists of those commons who sit by right of inheritance and those men and women.
2. They can also introduce certain types of law.
3. The House of Lords is the only non-elected second party in parliaments of the world.
4. The leader of the House of Lords is the Lord Chancellor.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. They have been given life peerages which end with the life of their possessors.
 - a) poor
 - b) leader
 - c) noble
2. They sit there because of their rank.
 - a) someone's position in society
 - b) level of knowledge
 - c) relationship
3. Some people in Britain would like to abolish it.
 - a) to be active in politics
 - b) to give opinion
 - c) to officially get rid of a law or system

4. Members of the Royal Family, bishops of the Church and important law judges can also sit in the House of Lords.
 - a) a senior Christian priest
 - b) organizer
 - c) rich men

Answers:

- 1) 1. The House of Lords has more than 1,000 members.
- 2) 1. 250, 2. elected, 3. passed, 4. Government
- 3) 1. commons/lords 2. law/bill 3. party/chamber 4. leader/chairman
- 4) 1.c, 2.a, 3.c, 4.a

LISTENING

Ex.1. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

The Queen and her Role in the Country

Queen Elizabeth the Second was born in London. Her birthday is officially celebrated in Britain on the 3rd Saturday of June each year. Queen Elizabeth the Second is a constitutional monarch. This means that although she is officially the head of the state, the country is actually run by the government, led by the Prime Minister. The Queen lives at Buckingham Palace. Her Majesty the Queen's title in the United Kingdom is 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland'.

Queen Elizabeth the Second ascended the throne on February 6, 1952 upon the death of her father, King George VI. Her Coronation, at Westminster Abbey, followed on June 2, 1953. (A new king or Queen begins to rule as soon as their succession to the throne has been announced. But the coronation - when the crown is placed on the monarch's head - may not happen until months later.) The queen celebrated her Golden jubilee (50 years since her accession) in 2002.

Queen Elizabeth the Second is the United Kingdom's Head of State. The Queen was married to Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh, the son of Prince and Princess Andrew of Greece and Denmark. They married on 20 November 1947. The Duke is Queen Elizabeth's third cousin; they share Queen Victoria as a great -

great-grandmother.

The Queen is not only head of State, but also an important symbol of national unity. In law she is: head of the executive; an integral part of the legislature; head of the judiciary; commander-in-chief of all the armed forces of the Crown; and the Supreme Governor of the established Church of England.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

is head of the judiciary.

The Queen leads the government only herself.

is head of the executive.

couldn't give opinion.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Her birthday is officially celebrated in Britain on the 3rd ... of June each year.
2. The Queen lives at
3. Her ... , at Westminster Abbey, followed on June 2, 1953.
4. Queen Elizabeth the Second is the United Kingdom's Head of

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

Queen Elizabeth the Second

When the Queen Elizabeth the Second was born on 21 April 1926, her grandfather, King George V, was on the throne and her uncle was his heir. The death of her grandfather and the abdication of her uncle (King Edward VIII) brought her father to the throne in 1936 as King George VI. Elizabeth the Second came to the throne on 6 February 1952 and was crowned on 2 June 1953. Since then she made many trips to different countries and to the UK also. The Queen is very rich, as are other members of the royal family. In addition, the government pays for her expenses as Head of the State, for a royal yacht, train and aircraft as well as for the upkeep of several palaces. The Queen's image appears on stamps, notes and coins.

- a) Queen Elizabeth the Second
- b) The actions of the queen
- c) Queen Elizabeth the Second and foreign countries

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Queen's 80th Birthday. Various events are being planned to mark The Queen's 80th birthday in 2006.

Interpretation.....

In addition to marking her official birthday with the Trooping the Color on 17 June, the Queen will attend a St. Paul's Cathedral service on 15 June.

Interpretation.....

The Queen will spend her actual birthday on 21 April at WindsorCastle where Prince Charles will host a family dinner. Members of the Royal Family will attend a service of thanksgiving at St. George's Chapel, Windsor, and on 23 April.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

1) is head of the judiciary.

The Queen is head of the executive.

2) 1. Saturday, 2. Buckingham Palace, 3. Coronation, 4. State

3) a) Queen Elizabeth

Ex.2. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Local Government

For administrative purposes Britain is divided into small geographical areas. The oldest and largest divisions in England and Wales are called *counties*. In Scotland, the largest divisions are regions. Counties and regions are further divided into districts. Parishes, originally villages with a church, are the smallest units of local government in England. These are called communities in Scotland and Wales. Northern Ireland is sometimes known as the Six Counties, but local government there is based on districts. Boroughs were originally towns large enough to be given their own local government. Now, only boroughs in London have political power, which they took over in 1985 when the Greater London Council was abolished.

Counties and districts are run by *councils* which have powers given to them by central government. Councils consist of elected representatives, called *councilors*. They are elected by the local people for a period of four years (in Scotland for three years). Counties, districts and parishes are divided into areas, often called *wards*, each ward electing one councilor or in some cases more. Most councilors belong to a political party and, especially at country level, people vote for them as representatives of a party, not as individuals. Country councils meet in a council chamber at the local town hall or country hall. Councilors elect a chairperson from amongst themselves. In cities, he or she is called the *Lord Mayor*. Members of the public are allowed to attend council meetings.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

inherited their seats from their fathers.

Councilors are elected by local people.

are elected by The House of Lords.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. In ... , the largest divisions are *regions*.
2. Boroughs were ... towns large enough to be given their own local government.
3. Counties and districts are run by ... which have powers given to them by central government.
4. Members of the public are allowed to attend council

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The word 'Tory' means an Irish highwayman and was applied to the conservatives by their opponents but later they adopted the name to describe themselves. The Tories opposed the ideas of the French Revolution, Parliamentary Reform and the development of Trade Unionism. They represent colonial policy. In home policy they opposed the tendencies of the Labour Party to nationalize gas, electricity, coal and the railways. Today the Conservative Party can broadly be described as the party of the middle and upper classes.

- a) The Tories
- b) Parliamentary Reform

c) Labour Party

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

The Conservative Party and the Liberal Party are more than three hundred years old. The Tories called the Liberals 'Whigs'.

Interpretation.....

A 'Whig' was a Scottish preacher who could go on for 4 or 5 hours at a time preaching moralizing sermons. In the middle of the 19th century the Liberal Party represented the trading and manufacturing classes.

Interpretation.....

Its slogan at that time was 'Civil and Religious Liberty'. William Gladstone headed the first administration (1868—74) and for long periods the Liberals had a Parliamentary majority.

Interpretation.....

During the second half of the 19th century many working people looked at the Liberal Party as an alternative to the Conservatives and their policy.

Answers:

- 1) Councilors are elected by local people.
- 2) 1. Scotland, 2. originally, 3. councils, 4. Meetings
- 3) a) The Tories

Ex.3. Listen and exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering them.

Victoria became queen in 1837 at age 18, after a difficult childhood under the control of her mother. Her long reign developed Britain's economic and political power. Exciting new technologies such as steam ships, railroads, photography, and telegraphs appeared, making the world much faster-paced. Britain again remained mostly inactive in Continental politics, and it was not affected by the wave of revolutions in 1848.

She reigned for 63 years, until 1901—the longest reign in British history. This period is called the Victorian Age. During this period, the British Empire reached its height. It included about a quarter of the world's land and about a quarter of the world's people. Wealth poured into Britain from its colonies. British industry continued to expand, and the country was called the workshop of the world. Railways and canals covered Britain, and telephone and telegraph lines linked the big cities. Literature and science flourished.

WRITING

Ex.1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

General Elections

By law, a general election must take place every five years. The government decides when to hold election, and the Prime Minister may decide to go to the country earlier than is illegally necessary if seems to be a good chance of winning.

General elections are always held on Thursdays. The local offices major parties pay the deposit for their own candidates. If a candidate wins more than 5% of the votes she gets the deposit back. Otherwise candidates lose their deposit. This is intended to stop people who do not seriously want to be MPs from taking part in the election. Sometimes people, who feel very sorry about an issue, e.g. protecting the lives of unborn babies, become candidates.

Political parties first emerged in Britain at the end of the 17th century. The Conservative and Liberal parties are the oldest and until the end of the 19th century they were the only parties elected to the House of Commons. The main British political groupings are the Conservative and Labour Parties and the Party of Liberal Democrats. The Conservative Party is the present ruling party, the Labour Party-the opposition to the Conservative-and the party of Liberal Democrats is called 'conservatively oriented. The Social Democratic Party was formed in 1981 and made an alliance with the Liberal Party in 1988. There are also some other parties: the Scottish National and Welsh Nationalist Parties, Because of the electoral method in use, only two major parties obtain seats in the House of

Commons. People belonging to smaller political parties join one of the larger parties and work from within to make their influence felt. The exception to this are members of the Scottish National and Welsh Nationalist Parties, who, because their votes are concentrated in specific geographical areas, can manage to win seats although their total support is relatively small.

Ex.2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

Parties in the UK

The Conservative Party, often called the Tory Party, is one of those which can trace its roots³ back to this early period. Today the Tory Party is that of big business, industry, commerce and landowners. Most of the money needed to run the party comes from large firms and companies. The party represents those who believe in private enterprise⁴ as opposed to state-owned undertakings. There is some division within the party itself: the more aristocratic wing and the lower-middle-class group. The Tories are a mixture of the rich and privileged—the monopolists and landowners. The Conservative Party is the most powerful and is often called a party of business directors.

Ex.3. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

At the end of the 19th century and in the first two decades of this," the Liberals lost the support of working-class voters. In 1988 the Liberal Party made an alliance with Social Democrats and the Party of Liberal Democrats was formed.

The Labour Party, formed in 1900, was the one which drew away working people's support. It was founded by the Trades Unions. When the Labour Government was first elected in 1945 it showed a considerable change in policy from the Tories.

Since 1924 the Labour Party has been in and out of power four times with the Conservatives forming the government for the rest of the time. The social system has remained unchanged. As a result of divisions within the Labour Party its right-wing members broke away in 1981 to form a new organization, the Social

Democratic Party. The later fought the 1983 election in in alliance with the Liberals, but only a small number of their MPs were elected. They would like to change the electoral system because they think the present system unfair.

SPEAKING

Ex.1. Retell the following text in your own words.

The Monarch

Her Most Excellent Majesty Elizabeth the Second is the queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of the Head of the Commonwealth and, for many people, a symbol of the unity of the nation. For a thousand years England (and later the whole of the United Kingdom) has been united under one sovereign. The hereditary principle still operates and the Crown is passed on to the sovereign's eldest son (or daughter if there are no sons). The Queen has a certain role in state affairs, not only through her ceremonial functions, such as opening Parliament, but also because she meets the Prime Minister every week and receives copies of all Cabinet papers. Functions of the Sovereign are as follows: —opening and closing Parliament; — approving of the appointment of the Prime Minister; — giving her Royal Assent to bills; — giving honours such as peerages, knight hoods and medals; Head of the Commonwealth; Head of the Church of England;

The powers of the monarch are not defined precisely, however. Theoretically every act of government is done in the Queen's name — every letter sent out by a government department is marked “On Her Majesty's Service”— and she appoints all the Ministers, including the Prime Minister. In reality, everything is done on the advice of the elected Government, and the Monarch takes no part in the decision-making process.

Many members of the Royal Family undertake official duties in Britain and abroad. Their various responsibilities reflect tradition, their own personal interests and Britain's former imperial status. For example, among her many titles the Princess Royal (Princess Anne) is Chancellor of the University of London,

Colonel-in-Chief of eleven Army regiments, and President of the Save the Children Fund.

Ex.2. Retell the following text in your own words.

British Prime Minister

The Prime Minister is also, by tradition, First Lord of the Treasury and Minister for the Civil Service. The Prime Minister's unique position of authority derives from majority support in the House of Commons and from the power to appoint and dismiss ministers. By modern convention, the Prime Minister always sits in the House of Commons.

The Prime Minister presides over the Cabinet is responsible for the allocation of functions among ministers and informs the Queen at regular meetings of the general business of the Government.

Ministers in charge of government departments are usually in the Cabinet; they are known as 'Secretary of State' or 'Minister', or may have a special title, as in the case of the Chancellor of the Exchequer.

Ex.3. Retell the following text in your own words.

Lord Chancellor

The Lord Chancellor is currently head of the judiciary in England and Wales. He is also the Secretary of State for Constitutional Affairs, and heads a department responsible for justice, rights and democracy. This includes court procedure and, through the Court Service, the administration of the higher courts and many tribunals in England and Wales. The Court Service is being replaced by Her Majesty's Courts Service (HMCS), which will manage all courts in England and Wales beneath the House of Lords, from April 2005, including magistrates' courts. The Lord Chancellor appoints, or recommends for appointment, all members of the professional judiciary in England and Wales and in Northern Ireland, and he appoints lay magistrates (Justices of the Peace). The most senior appointments are made by the Queen on the recommendation of the Prime

Minister, who in turn seeks that advice of the Lord Chancellor. Judges are normally appointed from among practicing lawyers. They are not subject to ministerial direction or control.

References:

Act of Parliament — parlament qonuni (парламентский акт, закон)

The Speaker — notiq, спикер (старшее должностное лицо в палате общин; председательствует на заседаниях, следит за соблюдением правил парламентской процедуры и порядком дебатов)

'back-benchers' — oddiy parlament a'zolari (букв, «заднескамеечники») (рядовые члены политических партий, представленных в парламенте)

Royal assent — qirollik ruxsati, (королевская санкция)

Member of Parliament (MP) – parlament a'zolari, (член парламента)

General election – umumiy saylov, (всеобщие выборы)

Secret ballot – yashirin ovoz berish, (тайное голосование)

Peerage — asilzodalar, oqsuyaklar, (пэрство, звание пэра)

Negotiation — muzokara, muhokama, (переговоры)

Self-Work

Ex.1. Find answers to the following questions in the text:

1. What is Monarchy? Who is the monarch and what is his/her job?
2. Who is the prime minister?
3. Speak about the parliament? (What other countries are based on the parliamentary system?)

4. Compare the two houses of the parliament.
5. What can you say about the Judicial Branch of this country?
6. Compare the courts in the countries of the UK.
7. What do you know about Uzbekistan government?

Ex.2. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering them.

The United Kingdom is governed within the framework of a constitutional monarchy, in which the Monarch is the head of state and the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom is the head. Executive power is exercised by Her Majesty's Government, on behalf of and by the consent of the Monarch, as well as by the devolved Governments of Scotland and Wales, and the Northern Ireland Executive. Legislative power is vested in the two chambers of the Parliament of the United Kingdom, the House of Commons and the House of Lords, as well as in the Scottish parliament and Welsh and Northern Ireland assemblies. The judiciary is independent of the executive and the legislature. The highest national court is the Supreme Court of the United Kingdom.

Ex.3. Read the following text and translate words and phrases underlined type into English using a dictionary:

The UK political system is a multi-party system. Since the 1920s, the two largest political parties have been the Conservative Party and the Labour Party. Before the Labour Party rose in British politics the Liberal Party was the other major political party along with the Conservatives.

Though coalition and minority governments have been an occasional feature of parliamentary politics, the first-past-the-post electoral system used for elections tends to maintain the dominance of these two parties, though each has in the past century relied upon a third party to deliver a working majority in Parliament.

UNIT 4. Culture of the UK

READING

Ex.1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Cultural and artistic life in Britain is very rich. Art, culture, literature and translation developed in King Alfred the great's time and during the Elizabethan age, during the reign of Elizabeth the first (1558-1603). It was the period of English domination of the oceans.

During Queen Victoria's empire the culture was developed. It was the time of industrialization and the expansion of international trade. There are buildings of all styles and periods a great number of museums and galleries display precious and interesting finds from all parts of the world.

The British Council is an independent organization on the development of cultural relations with foreign countries. It was founded in 1934.

The great architects lived and worked in Britain. They are Inigo Jones who brought the Italian Renaissance style to Great Britain in the XVII century. His designs were the Banqueting house in Whitehall and the queen's House.

Christopher Wren was a famous architect XVIII century. He built churches in London St Paul's cathedral in London and Chelonian theatre in Oxford.

Westminster Abbey is a fine Gothic building which is opposite the House of Parliament. The building was built in 8th century. It was a monastery. Now it is a museum. Many great people were buried for example Samuel Johnson, Rudyard Kipling (Jungle), John Milton (wrote the book "Lost paradise")

The town of London was founded in the 11th century by William the Conqueror. It was a fortress then a palace and royal treasury. It is now a museum

of arms. There are many art, the National Gallery, the Tate Gallery. They have many pictures, sculptures.

They keep Turher's painting masterpieces, water-colours and drawings and pictures of Constable and other painters. It is necessary to know the famous composers of Britain. They are Henry Wood (1869-1944), Benjamin Britten XVII century, Andrew Zloyd Webber, Arthur Sullivan.

Burbage was the owner of the first theatre in England. Later other playhouses were built. In Burbage's theatre Shakespeare worked as an actor. In 1599 after the death of Burbage a new theatre was built. It was named "The Globe".

There are many street musicians in the street, underground, squares, at bus stops. Many of them are professional musicians. But all of them cannot get work. Young people in Britain spend too much time watching TV and not enough time taking physical exercises.

1. Find the right and wrong information given in the text.

1. The British Council. is an independent organization on the development of cultural relations with foreign countries.

2. Burbage was the actor of the first theatre in England.

3. The town of London was founded in the 14th century by William the Conquero Westminster Abbey is a fine Gothic building which is opposite the House of Parliament. r.

4. During Queen Victoria's empire the culture was not developed.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1) The great architects lived and worked in Britain.

2) They are Inigo Jones who brought the Italian Renaissance style to Great Britain in the XVII century.

3) His designs were ...in Whitehall and the queen's House.

4) Christopher Wren was a famous architect XVIII century. He built churches in London ...cathedral in London and Chelonian theatre in Oxford.

5) Westminster Abbey is a ...Gothic building which is opposite the House of Parliament. The building was built in ... century. It was a monastery. Now it is a museum. Many great peoplefor example Samuel Johnson, Rudyard Repling (Jungle), John Milton (wrote the book “Lost paradise”)

3. **Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.**

Cultural and artistic life in Britain is very poor. Art, culture, literature and translation developed in Victorian age the great’s time and during the Elizabethan age, during the reign of Elizabeth the Second(1558-1603). It was the period of English domination of the oceans.

There are many street poets in the street, underground, squares, at tram stops. Many of them are professional musicians. But all of them cannot get work. Young people in Britain spend too much time going to the park and not enough time taking physical exercises.

4. **Find the meaning of the words in the bold type .**

Cultural and artistic life in Britain is very rich. Art, culture, literature and translation developed in King Alfred the great’s time and during the **Elizabethan age**, during the **reign** of Elizabeth the first (1558-1603). It was the period of English **domination** of the oceans.

During Queen Victoria’s **empire** the culture was developed. It was the time of industrialization and the **expansion** of international trade. There are buildings of all styles and periods a great member of museums and galleries **display precious** and interesting **finds** from all parts of the world.

Ex.2. Read the following text and find the answers to the following topics given below

There are many great painters in England. In the 19th century Joseph Turner and John Constable were landscape painters. Some of the outstanding British scientists should be mentioned. They are Isaac Newton (1643-1727), William Herschel (1798-1822), an astronomer Humphrey Davy (1778-1829), a chemist and physicist Michael Faraday (1791-1867), a physicist and chemist, Charles Darwin (1809-1882), an outstanding naturalist Joseph Lister (1827-1912), Thomas Gainsborough (1727-1786), Richard Wilson (1714-1782). Lawrence (1769-1839) was the painter of kings and princes. Antiseptic surgery (the use of chemicals) to prevent surgical infections Ernest Rutherford (1871-1937) the great pioneer of nuclear physics, made fundamental discoveries concerning the nature of radioactivity.

The BBC television service broadcast a maximum of 50 hours of programs week the first regular independent TV service was in September 1953. It has stations in all parts of Great Britain.

The bagpipe is a national musical instrument. It was brought by Romans to England. Now it is the national musical instrument of Scotland.

Englishmen like to stay at home rather than go anywhere. They say “My home is my castle”, “East or West – home is best”. The heart of the English home is fireplace. Even if they have central heating they would keep the temperature pretty low, but the fireplace is there all the same – it’s a tradition.

English people is *conservative* they want to keep in their old customs to things old familiar and would be suspicious of all the new, strange, unfamiliar things

1. Behaviors of the people in the UK.
2. The BBC television service
3. A national musical instrument
4. Great painters in England
5. Physicists and chemists of the UK

Ex. 3 Read the text and find the answers to the following to the topics given below

Customs and traditions of the English people

English people are polite, friendly, patient with a stranger. You'd be given all the answers about their country but you'd hardly be asked a question about yourself it's of no importance.

Parents may announce the birth of the child in a newspaper the announcement may be as follows. Brown. On March 15th, 1991 at St Ione's Hospital, London, to Mary, wife of Mr. Brown, 15 Blank Terrance, S.W.3, a daughter (the name can be added in brackets)

The birth must be registered at the registrar's office within six weeks in England and Wales and three weeks in Scotland. A child is christened in the first six months of its life.

At the christening the godmother holds the baby during the ceremony and gives it to the clergyman. Traditionally, the godparents give a silver cup. It is an important date in any person's life when he or she officially comes of age *twenty one*. A twenty first birthday is generally celebrated in twenty-first birthday party the guests bump him 21 times giving presents, cards they think 21 age is the symbol of the young person's independence.

In funerals a notice is sent to a newspaper and published in the "Death" column. It may be follows: Smith, beloved wife of John D Smith and mother of Jane and Jeremy. Funeral private (or Funeral service at II a.m. on 7th January at St Mary's church. Fells Road. Preston). "No flowers, by request" may be added if desired. The people send message "With deepest sympathy from...", With all our love from; "With deepest affection from".

Great British has its national cooking is a typical meal includes roast beef, mutton, or pork with potatoes and one or more other vegetables. Since the 1960s, the British have increased their consumption of poultry, fresh fruit, and frozen

vegetables. Consumption of lamb, beef, veal, bread, potatoes, eggs, butter, and sugar has fallen. Pizza houses, Chinese restaurants, and hamburger places that offer take away and fast food have grown in popularity. They rival the shops offering fish and chips, a popular meal of fried fish and French fried potatoes. *Traffic* is left side while in all the rest of the countries it is right side

The traditional Sunday midday meal of roast beef and Yorkshire pudding, a battercake baked in meat fat, is still a family favorite, however, The British diet tends to be high in fat, salt, and sugar and low in fiber. These eating habits can contribute to a variety of health problems, including heart disease. The country has a high level of heart disease, especially in northern Britain.

There is evidence, however, that health considerations have begun to influence food consumption. People are drinking more low-fat milk instead of whole milk and eating more whole grain bread, which has more fiber than white bread. Tea with milk and sugar is the most popular hot beverage. Beer, including ale and lager, is the favorite alcoholic drink. A high proportion of beer drinking takes place in pubs (public houses), which provide a focus of social life for many people.

5. Find the right information given in the text.

like to go to abroad.

Englishman like to stay at home rather than go anywhere.

like fireplaces.

like to ask a question about yourself it's of no importance.

6. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Traffic is left side while in all the rest of the countries it is ... side.
2. English people are polite, friendly, patient with a
3. Traditionally, the godparents give a ... cup.
4. People are drinking more low-fat milk instead of ...

7. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. Parents may say the birth of the child in a newspaper the announcement may be as follows.

2. The birth must be registered at the registrar's church within six weeks in England and Wales and three weeks in Scotland.
3. A child is christened in the first five months of its life.
4. A twenty first birthday is generally celebrated in twenty-first birthday party the guests hit him 21 times

8. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. At the christening the godmother holds the baby during the ceremony and gives it to the clergyman.

- a) parents
- b) grandparents
- c) priest

2. In funerals a notice is sent to a newspaper and published in the "Death" column.

- a) a series of short lines of writing
- b) advertisement
- c) report

3. The people send message "With deepest sympathy from...",

- a) experience
- b) kindness
- c) regret

4. With all our love from; "With deepest affection from".

- a) care
- b) goodness
- c) badness

Answers:

- 1) Englishman like to stay at home rather than go anywhere.
like fireplaces.
- 2) 1.right 2. stranger 3. silver 4. whole milk
- 3) 1. say/announce, 2. church/office 3. five/six 4. hit/bump
- 4) 1.c, 2.a, 3.b, 4a

Ex.4. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

There are some good and bad luck customs:

The bridegroom shouldn't see the bride on the wedding day until he meets her at the altar. Pearls should not be given by bridegroom or worn on the wedding day.

The wedding ring should not be tried on before the ceremony. It is unlucky to meet a pig on your way to church. If there is a cat in the house, the bride must feed it personally on her wedding day. It is unlucky to hear a robin singing or see a flight of birds as you go to church. Birth and christening are also interesting traditions in Britain.

The English say "Life is short but there is always time for courtesy" [kə:tisi]. A *real gentleman* in England never forgets to rise when a lady comes up to him and speaks to him. The golden rule of every gentleman is "Ladies first". Entering or leaving a room with ladies a gentleman shouldn't rush before them except when he is showing the way. In this case he should apologize by saying "Excuse my going first I'll lead the way".

To whisper in company is bad manners. No matter where you are loud laughter and talking are signs of *bad manners*.

Gentleman, whatever their rank or age, should be introduced to ladies. Young man should be introduced to elderly men. The useful formula to use when introduced is "How do you do". If you know the person who is being introduced to you, say "We've met before".

Don't offer *to shake hands* with a lady. The initiative must always come from her. In England it is not customary to shake hands. Englishmen shake hands when they first meet somebody or when they part for a long time. The English is punctual, he annoyed if you were minutes late. When at work to look at the watch is a bad manner. It looks like as if you were impatient for the time to pass. Interrupting others is a bad habit.

When in company to open a book or a newspaper and reading to yourself are bad manners. Women never smoke in the street. Before lightning a cigarette one should ask everybody present for permission.

When Englishmen tread somebody's foot in the crowd they say "sorry". You can also say "sorry" when you interrupt a conversation. You can be sorry when you dial the wrong number on the telephone say "I've dialed a wrong number – sorry I troubled you".

In a situation where you don't hear what someone has said you use "Forgive me" for being stupid but would you mind repeating that.

When asking a stranger the way, the expression "Excuse me" is usually used. "Excuse me but could you tell me where the post office is."

When you take away a guest's cup and saucer before his cup is empty, it is polite I say "I do beg your pardon". I didn't realize you hadn't finished. The expression "I apologize is usually used only informal situation".

1. Find the right information given in the text.

bridegroom should give Pearls at the wedding party.

In England to meet a pig is unlucky on your way to church.

a real gentleman never forgets to rise when a lady comes up to him.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The wedding ring should not be ... before the ceremony.
2. It is unlucky to hear a ... singing or see a flight of birds as you go to church.
3. To whisper in ... is bad manners.
4. Don't offer *to* shake hands with

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. First man should be introduced to elderly men.
2. Englishmen shake hats when they first meet somebody or when they part for a long time.
3. The expression "I apologize is usually used only formal situation".
4. You can also say "sorry" when you continue a conversation.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The bridegroom shouldn't see the bride on the wedding day until he meets her at the altar.
 - a) a table where religious ceremonies are performed
 - b) a place where the holy book is put
 - c) a place where clergyman stands
2. The English say "Life is short but there is always time for courtesy"

- a) picnic
 - b) polite behavior
 - c) vocation
3. Entering or leaving a room with ladies a gentleman shouldn't rush before them except when he is showing the way.
- a) to hurry
 - b) to try
 - c) to go
4. The initiative must always come from her.
- a) invitation
 - b) the opportunity to take action before other people do
 - c) to ask question

Answers:

- 1) In England a real gentleman never forgets to rise when a lady comes up to him.
- 2) 1. tried on 2. robin 3. company 4. a lady
- 3) 1. First/Young 2. hats/hands 3. formal/informal 4. continue/interrupt
- 4) 1.a, 2.b, 3.a, 4.b

LISTENING

Ex.1. Listen to the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

In the weddings

In the weddings the groom and his friend wear a long tail jackets, dark trousers and top hat. The groom's closest friend acts as the best man and stands next to him during the ceremony. Other friends act as ushers and show guests where to sit. The guests usually wear smart clothes and the women wear hats.

After the ceremony the couples go into the vestry to sign the register with their parents, best man, bridesmaids and perhaps a close relation such as a grandmother. The bride throws back her veil or removes the front piece (if it is

removable), the vergers give a signal to the organist and the bride and groom walk down the aisle followed by their parents and those who have signed the register. The bride's mother walks down the aisle on the left arm of the bridegroom's father, and the bridegroom's mother walks down on the left arm of the bride's father (or whoever has given the bride away). Guests wait until the wedding procession has passed them before leaving to go on to the reception.

After it, as they leave the church, the guests throw small pieces of colored paper in lucky shapes such as horseshoes and bells over them. But in our weddings when the couple enter the wedding place the groom's relatives especially his mother, throws sweets over them. It's done for the couple's life to be sweet in the future. In Britain the happy couple and their guests then go to the bride's home or a hotel for the wedding party. This may be a formal meal or a party.

There the best man and the bride's father often give speech. One of the most interesting things in the wedding is cutting the wedding cake and it's done by the bride and the groom. After this party the couple leaves for their honeymoon. Before leaving the bride throws a bouquet of flowers backward over her head to a group of single women standing behind her, the one who'll catch the bouquet will be the next to marry. In our weddings the bride kicks one of her friends. It also means that the girl who is kicked will be the next to marry.

At some wedding in Britain, the groom throws his bride's garter to single men. Catching the garter also means an approaching marriage. Some guests take home a slice of cake in a little box. Some people believe that if a single woman sleeps with this piece of cake under her pillow she will see in her dream the man she is going to marry. But it used to be the custom in Scotland when the bride left her home to throw an old shoe after her to signify that her father no longer had a legal right over her. The English bride sometimes carries a horseshoe of silver paper. Horseshoes are considered to bring luck. So, after the wedding party the couple leaves for their honeymoon in the car which has been decorated with old tin cans or shoes tied to the back and with the word "just married" by their friends.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

the groom and his friend wear a short tail jeans.

At the wedding party guests wait until the wedding procession has passed them.

the groom's closest friend stands next to him.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Other friends act as ... and show guests where to sit.
2. The guests throw small pieces of colored paper in such as horseshoes and bells over them.
3. At some wedding in Britain, the groom throws his bride's ... to single men.
4. The English bride sometimes carries a horseshoe of ... paper.

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The Tower was founded in the 11th century by William the Conqueror. But each monarch left some kind of personal mark on it. For many centuries the Tower has been a fortress, a palace, a prison and royal treasury. It is now a museum of arms and armour, and as one of the strongest fortresses in Britain, it has the Crown Jewels.

Every night at 10 p.m. at the Tower of London the Ceremony of the Keys or locking up of the Tower for the night takes place. It goes back to the Middle Ages. Five minutes before the hour the Head warder comes out with a bunch of keys and an old lantern. He goes to the guardhouse and cries: "Escort for the keys". Then he closes the three gates and goes to the sentry, who calls: "Halt, who comes there?" The Headwarder replies: "The Keys". "Whose Keys?" demands the sentry? "Queen Elizabeth's Keys", comes the answer. "Advance Queen Elizabeth's Keys. All's well". The keys are finally carried to the "Queen's House" where they are safe for the night. After the ceremony everyone who approaches the gate must give the password or turn away.

- a) The Tower of London
- b) Queen's House
- c) Queen's Home

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

St. Paul's Cathedral is the work of the famous architect Sir Christopher Wren. It is said to be one of the finest pieces of architecture in Europe. Work on Wren's masterpiece began in 1675 after a Normal1 church, old St. Paul's, was destroyed in the Great Fire of 1666.

Interpretation.....

For 35 years the building of St. Paul's Cathedral wellt on, and Wren was an old man before it was finished. From far away you can see the huge dome with a golden ball and cross on the top.

Interpretation.....

The interior of the Cathedral is very beautiful. It is full of monuments. The most important, perhaps, is the one dedicated to the Duke of Wellington2. After looking

round you can climb 263 steps to the Whispering Gallery, which runs round the dome.

Interpretation.....

It is called so, because if someone whispers close to the wall on one side, a person with his hear close to the wall on the other side can hear what is said. But if you want to reach the foot of the ball, you have to climb 637 steps.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

1) At the wedding party guests wait until the wedding procession has passed them.

the groom's closest friend stands next to him.

2) 1. ushers 2. lucky shapes 3. garter 4. silver

3) a.

Ex.2. Listen to the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Holidays in Britain

In Britain, **Christmas Day** is normally spent at home, with the family, and it is regarded as a celebration of the family and its continuity. Preparations start well in advance, with the sending of Christmas cards and the decoration of a Christmas tree in a prominent place in the home. Although it is now a firmly established tradition, Queen Victoria's husband, Prince Albert, who introduced the custom from his native Germany in 1840, first popularized the Christmas tree.

Some houses are decorated with evergreens (plants which do not lose their leaves in winter); a wreath of holly on the front door and garlands of holly, ivy and fir indoors. Bunches of mistletoe are often hung above doorways - any couple passing underneath must exchange kisses! Traditional food is prepared: sweet mince pies, a rich Christmas cake and the Christmas pudding. Everyone has their own favorite recipe, but they're all packed full of spices, nuts, dried fruit and brandy.

Presents are bought and wrapped, and traditionally placed under the Christmas tree on Christmas Eve. Christmas is both a secular and a religious holiday, and many families like to attend a midnight service at church on Christmas Eve, or celebrate Christmas in church on Christmas morning.

Easter day is named after the Saxon goddess of spring, Eostre, whose feast took place at the spring equinox. Easter is now the spring feast of the Christian church, commemorating the resurrection of Jesus. It falls on a Sunday between 22 March and 25 April, according to the church calendar. Traditionally Easter eggs, dyed and decorated or made of chocolate, are given as presents symbolizing new life and the coming of spring.

Egg rolling competitions take place in northern UK on Easter Monday; hard-boiled eggs are rolled down a slope, with the winner being - according to local preference - the one which rolls the furthest, survives the most rolls, or is successfully aimed between two pegs! The best-publicized event takes place at Avenal Park in Preston, Lancashire. Easter parades are also part of the Easter tradition, with those taking part wearing Easter bonnets or hats, traditionally decorated with spring flowers and ribbons.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

on a Monday between 12 May and 10 June.

Easter celebrated on a Sunday between 22 March and 25 April.

on a Friday between 14 April and 12 May.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Bunches of mistletoe are often hung above ... - any couple passing underneath must exchange kisses!
2. Presents are bought and wrapped, and ... placed under the Christmas tree on Christmas Eve.
3. Easter is now the spring feast of the Christian church, ... the resurrection of Jesus.
4. The best-publicized event takes place at Avenal Park in ... , Lancashire.

Ex.3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The people living in the British Isles are very fond of music, and it is quite natural that concerts of the leading symphony orchestras, numerous folk groups and

pop music are very popular. The Promenade concerts are probably the most famous. They were first held in 1840 in the Queen's Hall, and later were directed by Sir Henry Wood. They still continue today in the Royal Albert Hall. They take place every night for about three months in the summer, and the programmes include new and contemporary works, as well as classics. Among them are symphonies and other pieces of music composed by Benjamin Britten, the famous English musician. Usually, there is a short winter season lasting for about a fortnight.

The audience may either listen to the music from a seat or from the “promenade”, where they can stand or stroll about, or, if there is room, sit down on the floor. Concerts are rarely given out-of-doors today except for concerts by brass bands and military bands that play in the parks and at seaside resorts during the summer. Folk music is still very much alive. There are many folk groups. Their harmony singing and good humor win them friends everywhere.

- a) Music in Great Britain
- b) English musicians
- c) Folk musics

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Rock and pop music are extremely popular, especially among younger people. The Beatles, with their style of singing new and exciting, their wonderful sense of humor became the most successful pop group the world has ever known.

Interpretation.....

Many of the famous songs written by John Lennon and Paul McCartney are still popular. Some of the more recent pop groups are Oasis, Dire Straits, Eurhythmics, and Spice Girls. British groups often set new trends in music. New stars and styles continue to appear. One of the most popular contemporary musicians and composers is Andrew Lloyd Webber.

Interpretation.....

The musicals and rock operas by A. L. Webber have been a great success both in Britain and overseas. The famous English composer of the 19th century was Arthur Sullivan. Together with William Gilbert, the writer of the texts, he created fourteen operettas of which eleven are regularly performed today.

Interpretation.....

In these operettas the English so successfully laugh at themselves and at what they now call the Establishment that W. S. Gilbert and A. Sullivan will always be remembered.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) Easter celebrated on a Sunday between 22 March and 25 April.
- 2) 1. doorways 2. traditionally 3. commemorating 4. Preston

3) a) Music in Great Britain

WRITING

Ex.1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

British bank holidays and Halloween

British bank holidays are New Year's Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, May Day, Spring Bank Holiday, Summer Bank Holiday, Christmas Day and Boxing Day. Only when the UK joined the E.E.C. did New Year's Day become a public holiday. The patron saints days are not celebrated with a holiday. They are St. David's Day (March 1st) in Wales, St. George's Day (April 23rd) in England and St. Andrew's Day (November 30th) in Scotland. Only Ireland, both North and South, has a holiday on St. Patrick's Day (March 17th).

Every nation and country has its own customs and traditions. In Britain traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in other countries. Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. It has been the law for about 300 years that all the theaters are closed on Sundays. No letters are delivered; only a few Sunday papers are published. Up to this day an English family prefers a house with a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating.

Halloween means 'holy evening', and takes place on 31st October. Although it is a much more important festival in the United States than Britain, it is celebrated by many people in the UK. It is particularly connected with witches and ghosts.

At parties people dress up in strange costumes and pretend they are witches. They cut horrible faces in potatoes and other vegetables and put a candle inside, which shines through the eyes. People may play difficult games such as trying to eat an apple from a bucket of water without using their hands.

Halloween (31 October) and its associations with witches and ghosts derives from the Celtic Old Year's Night - the night of all witches, when spirits were said to walk the earth. Witches and supernatural beings are still remembered all over Britain, when bands of children roam the streets in ghoulish costumes, carrying Halloween lanterns - pumpkins hollowed out with a ghostly face cut into one side, which glows when a candle is placed inside. In recent years the custom of 'trick or treating' has gained in popularity. Although we commonly associate this practice with America, the custom is originated in England as 'Mischief Night' when children declared one 'lawless night' of unpunished pranks (usually May Day eve or Halloween). Halloween parties (usually for children) include games such as apple bobbing, where apples are either floated in water or hung by a string. The

object of the game is for the players to put their hands behind their back and try to seize an apple with their teeth alone.

In recent years children dressed in white sheets knock on doors at Halloween and ask if you would like a 'trick' or a 'treat'². If you give them something nice, a 'treat', they go away. However, if you don't, they play a 'trick' on you, such as making a lot of noise or spilling flour on your front doorstep!

Ex.2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

Artistic and cultural life in Britain is rather rich. It passed several main stages in its development.

The Saxon King Alfred¹ encouraged the arts and culture. The chief debt owed to him by English literature is for his translations of and commentaries on Latin works.

Art, culture and literature flowered during the Elizabethan² age, during the reign of Elizabeth I; it was the period of English domination of the oceans.

It was at this time that William Shakespeare lived.

Monuments and traces of past greatness are everywhere. There are buildings of all styles and periods. A great number of museums and galleries display precious and interesting finds from all parts of the world and from all stages in the development of nature, man and art.

Art Galleries. If you go to Trafalgar Square you will see Nelson's Column, you will see a wide horizontal front in a classical style. It is the National Gallery. It has been in this building since 1838 which was built as the National Gallery to house the collection of Old Masters Paintings (38 paintings) offered to the nation by an English private collector, Sir George Beaumont.

In 1897 the Tate Gallery was opened to house the more modern British paintings. Most of the National Gallery collection of British paintings were transferred to the Tate, and only a small collection of a few masterpieces is now exhibited at Trafalgar Square. Thus, the Tate Gallery exhibits a number of interesting collections of British and foreign modern painting and also modern sculpture.

A great number of museums and galleries display precious and interesting finds from all parts of the world and from all stages in the development of nature, man and art. London is one of the leading world centers for music, drama, opera and dance. Festivals held in towns and cities throughout the country attract much interest. Many British playwrights, composers, sculptors, painters, writers, actors, singers and dancers are known all over the world.

The British Council promotes knowledge of British culture and literature

overseas. It organizes British participation in international exhibitions and encourages professional interchange in all cultural fields between Britain and other countries. The countries that make up the United Kingdom have all long been sources of much prose and verse.

The English playwright and poet William Shakespeare is arguably the most famous writer in the English language; other world-famous writers who lived and wrote in the United Kingdom include Daniel Defoe, Sir Walter Scott, Jane Austen, Charles Dickens, the Brontë sisters, Thomas Hardy, Joseph Conrad, Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, H. G. Wells, Virginia Woolf, D. H. Lawrence, J. R. R. Tolkien, George Orwell, Graham Greene and Dylan Thomas. Contemporary British writers include Salman Rushdie and J. K. Rowling. Important playwrights include Christopher Marlowe, Ben Jonson and, more recently Alan Ayckbourn, Harold Pinter and Tom Stoppard. Important poets include Geoffrey Chaucer, John Milton, William Blake, Robert Burns, William Wordsworth, Lord Byron, John Keats, Lord Tennyson, T. S. Eliot, R. S. Thomas, Wilfred Owen, John Betjeman, W. H. Auden and Ted Hughes.

One of the most popular contemporary musicians and composers is Andrew Lloyd Webber. The musicals and rock operas by A. L. Webber have been a great success both in Britain and overseas.

The famous English composer of the 19th century was Arthur Sullivan. Together with William Gilbert, the writer of the texts, he created fourteen operettas of which eleven are regularly performed today. In these operettas the English so successfully laugh at themselves and at what they now call the Establishment that W. S. Gilbert and A. Sullivan will always be remembered.

Ex.3. Find the key words and write the main content in your own words

St. George's Day is celebrated on 23 April. St. George is the patron saint of England. A story that first appeared in the 6th century tells that St. George rescued a hapless maid by slaying a fearsome fire-breathing dragon! The saint's name was shouted as a battle cry by English knights who fought beneath the red-cross banner of St. George during the Hundred Years War (1338-1453). Today the red cross of St. George still flies above every English parish church to mark the saint's day.

St. Andrew's Day is celebrated on 30 November, which has now largely been overshadowed by Burns' Night. St. Andrew, one of Christ's twelve apostles, is the patron saint of Scotland. Some of his bones are said to have been brought to what is now St. Andrews in Fife during the 4th century. Since medieval times the X-shaped saltire cross upon which St. Andrew was supposedly crucified has been the Scottish national symbol.

Exercise 4. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

Britain is one of the world's foremost exporters of TV productions which continue to win large numbers of international awards, especially for documentaries,

nature programmers and drama serials.

The channels:

BBC1 has been broadcasting since 1936. It specialized in general interest programmes, Light entertainment, sports and children's programmes.

BBC2 covers minority and specialist interests as well as music, serious drama, travel programme and foreign films in the original languages.

BBC3 Broadcasting is approximately 33% informative and 66% entertainment, sport and films.

BBC4 Began in 1982. It shows 25% educational programmas and encourages innovation and experiments.

The BBC is the UK's publicly-funded radio and television broadcasting corporation, and is the oldest broadcaster in the world. Funded by the compulsory television license, the BBC operates several television channels and radio stations both in the UK and abroad. The BBC World Service radio channel is broadcast in 33 languages around the world. BBC News is also broadcast around the world. The main, free-to-air television channels in the UK are BBC1, BBC2, ITV1 (STV in Scotland), Channel 4 and Five. The main satellite broadcaster is British Sky Broadcasting, the vast majority of digital cable services are provided by NTL:Telewest (created by the merger of NTL and Telewest in March 2006), and free-to-air digital terrestrial television by Free view.

Radio in the UK is dominated by BBC Radio, which operates 10 national and 40 regional radio stations. The most popular radio station, by number of listeners, is BBC Radio 2 which specialises in popular music aimed at the 'middle aged' age bracket; it is closely followed by BBC Radio 1, aimed at the 15-24 aged bracket and the previous market leader. Commercial radio tends to be regionalized, although Virgin Radio, Classic FM and talk SPORT are broadcast nationally. Popular regional stations include Capital Radio in London; Heart in London and Midlands; Galaxy in Birmingham and the north of England; Magic in London and the north of England; and Radio Clyde in Glasgow.

SPEAKING

Ex.1. Retell the following text in your own words.

Theatres in Britain

Burbage built the first theatre in England. Later other playhouses were built. In Burbage's theatre Shakespeare worked as an actor. After the death of Burbage. In 1599 a new theatre was built which was named "The Globe".

From the fall of the Roman Empire until the 10th century, acting hardly existed as an art in Western Europe; only the wandering minstrels gave entertainment in castles and at fairs. In England, the first real actors were amateurs who performed Miracle and Morality plays, which were religious in character. In the Elizabethan age, the first professional theatres were opened. At the time of

Shakespeare there were at least six companies of actors. Shakespeare himself joined the Earl of Leicester's company, which under James I became known as the 'King's Men'. There were also companies of boy actors.

All the women's parts were played by boys. It was very difficult for most actors to earn a living on the stage, even in a London company, and many of them fell into debt. When Shakespeare arrived in London in 1586, the acting was very crude and conventional. There was almost no scenery, and the actors were dressed in the costumes of their day. But when 'The Globe' was opened to the public in 1599, it started the golden age of the theatre in England.

In the first half of the 17th century the influence of the Puritans was bad for the popular theatre, and it was not before the restoration of the monarchy in 1660 that theatre going again became a popular habit. The most popular plays were comedies. The first part played by an actress was that of Desdemona. Nell Gwynn was the first English actress.

By the beginning of the 18th century the most popular type of play was the sentimental comedy. The acting was artificial probably due to the influence of French actors.

But, later, under the influence of David Garrick and some other actors, acting became much more naturalistic. David Garrick was one of the greatest actors known. But even at his time acting was not very popular. An actor whose acting had offended the audience had to ask pardon on his knees before a full house before he could continue in his profession. During the 19th century acting became more and more naturalistic. Like in Shakespeare's time, the best actors understood the importance of the teamwork of the company. One of the most famous actors of that time was Henry Irving. He was the first actor to be knighted. By the 1920s naturalistic acting reached a peak in the performance of Sir Gerald Du Maurier. He hardly appeared to be acting at all.

At present most acting still continues to be naturalistic. Designers make the settings as realistic as possible. Modern producers and directors Peter Hall, Peter Brook and others are trying out new styles of acting. Some go back to Greek methods, with a revival of the chorus; others are making use of the audience in helping to interpret the play.

Drama is so popular with people of all ages that there are several thousand amateur dramatic societies. Now Britain has about 300 professional theatres. Some of them are privately owned. The tickets are not hard to get, but they are very expensive. Regular seasons of opera and ballet are given at the Royal Opera House, Covent Garden in London.

The National Theatre stages modern and classical plays, the Royal Shakespeare Company produces plays mainly by Shakespeare and his contemporaries when it performs in Stratford-on-Avon, and modern plays in its two auditoria in the City's Barbican Centre. Shakespeare's Globe Playhouse, about which you have probably read, was reconstructed on its original site. Many other

cities and large towns have at least one theatre.

There are many theatres and theatre companies for young people: the National Youth Theatre and the Young Vic Company in London, the Scottish Youth Theatre in Edinburgh. The National Youth Theatre, which stages classical play mainly by Shakespeare and modern plays about youth, was on tour in Russia in 1989. The theatregoers warmly received the production of Thomas Stearns Eliot's play 'Murder in the Cathedral'. Many famous English actors started their careers in the National Youth Theatre.

Ex.2. Retell the following text in your own words.

The British press

The British press consists of several different kinds of newspapers. The national papers are the ones sold all over the country. They are "The Sun", "The Daily Star" there are two main types of national paper – the popular papers and the quality papers. The popular papers are smaller in size with lots of pictures, big headlines and short articles. They are easy to read and often contain little real information. Sometimes they give more space to opinions than to news. They usually have human interest, stories about ordinary people, events. For example "The Daily", "The Sun", "The Daily Mirror" quality papers give information about politics and foreign affairs. They are "The Daily Telegraph", "The Times", and "The Guardian". They are bigger in size with longer articles and wider coverage of events. They have different pages for home news, foreign affairs, and feature articles, fashion, business, and sport and so on.

People in Britain buy more papers on Sunday than on weekdays. The Sunday papers have a higher circulation than the dailies. They have full of advertisements. There are also the evening papers such as London's Evening Standard and Evening News.

Ex.3. Chain drill. The whole group takes part in the discussion: in turn one student asks question, another one answers

Remembrance Day (Poppy Day) is observed throughout Britain in commemoration of the million or more British soldiers and airmen who lost their lives during the two World Wars. On that day, the second Sunday in November, special services are held in the churches and wreaths are laid at war memorials throughout the country and at London's Cenotaph, where a great number of people gather to observe the two – minute silence and to perform the annual Remembrance Day ceremony.

The silence begins at the first stroke of Big Ben 11 o'clock, and is broken only by the crash of distant artillery and perhaps by the murmur of a passing jet. Members of the Royal Family or their representatives and political leaders come

forward to lay wreaths at the foot of the Cenotaph. Then the march comes past the memorial of ex-servicemen and women, followed by an endless line of ordinary citizens who have come here with their personal wreaths and their sad memories.

On that day artificial poppies, a symbol of mourning, are traditionally sold in the streets everywhere, and people wear them in their buttonholes. The money collected in this way is later used to help the men who had been crippled during the war and their dependents. In the past the day was known as Armistice Day and was marked on the 11 of November, as that was the day when armistice (agreement to stop military actions) sought by German from Allies, came into force in 1918. Armistice Day was kept since 1919 – 1938.

Two minutes silence was observed throughout the British Commonwealth starting at 11 a. m. the ceremony lapsed during the Second World War, but was resumed in 1945. The following year it was decided to observe a Remembrance Day for both World Wars. It was to be held annually on Remembrance Sunday (the second Sunday in November). The most magnificent ceremony is held at the Cenotaph in London, a memorial to those who died during the two world wars. On Remembrance Day the ceremony is attended by the Queen and royal family, statesmen and politicians, representatives of the armed forces and Commonwealth.

1. What is a Remembrance Day?
2. What is the silence which begins at the first stroke of Big Ben 11 o'clock?
3. What are the two minutes silence which was observed on that day?
4. Where is the most magnificent ceremony held?

References:

first footer — birinchi kelgan yangi yil mehmoni, (первый новогодний гость (переступивший порог после 12 часов ночи))

trick or treat— hiyla yoki ziyofat, (проказа или угощение)

Easter — Pasxa(diniy bayram) Пасха

pagan — majusiy, dinsiz kishi, (языческий)

a fertility symbol — hosildorlik ranzi, (символ плодородия)

bunny — quyuncham(erkalash ma'nosida), (ласк, кролик, тж. Rabbit)

Guy Fawkes' Night— Favke yigitlari kechasi, (ночь Гая Фокса (вечер 5 ноября, когда по традиции отмечают раскрытие «порохового заговора» сожжением пугала (guy) и фейерверком)

Top Thirty — 30 ta eng mashhur qo'shiqlar, (Лучшая тридцатка, 30 самых популярных песен)

sculptor – haykaltarosh, (скульптор)

sword – qilich, shamshir, (шпага)

lantern – fonar, chiroq, (фонарь)

flannel – flannel (ipdan yoki jundan to'qilgan yurqa mato), (фланель)

crisp – qarsillaydigan, g'ichirlaydigan, (жареная картофельная)

willow – majnuntol, (ива)

Self-Work

Ex.1. Find answers to the following questions in the texts you have read before:

1. What is a "bank holiday"?
2. What is the most popular holiday in Britain and when is it celebrated?
3. What is a carol?
4. What do the British do on Boxing Day?
5. When is Guy Fawkes Night celebrated? What do you know about Guy Fawkes?
6. What do you know about Covent Garden, the famous Royal Opera House?
7. Why can Covent Garden be called the home of international opera and ballet?
8. What is the most modern concert hall in London and when was it built?
9. What masterpieces of architecture in Great Britain do you know?
10. Who is the 'architect of London'? Which is his best known creation?
11. Which styles in architecture prevail in British cities and towns?
12. What is the historic value of the Tower of London?
13. What museum does it house at present?
14. What is the tradition associated with the Tower of London? Why are the ravens taken care of?
15. Why are the British people so proud of W. Shakespeare? Why do they call him the 'Swan of Avon'?
16. What prominent English actors do you know?
17. What do you know about the National Youth Theatre?

Ex. 2. Read and translate into your mother-tongue.

Pancake Day or 'Shrove Tuesday' (the Tuesday which falls 41 days before Easter) is the eve of the Lenten fast. On this day in earlier times all Christians made their compulsory confessions or 'shrifts' from which the name 'Shrove Tuesday' derives, and took their last opportunity to eat up all the rich foods prohibited during Lent. Thus all eggs, butter and fat remaining in the house were made into pancakes, hence the festival's usual nickname of Pancake Day. Though the strict observance of Lent is now rare, everyone enjoys eating the customary

pancakes and some regions celebrate the day with pancake races. The oldest and most famous is held at Olney in Buckinghamshire. The race is run over 415 yards (about 380 metres) by women over sixteen, wearing a cap and apron. They must 'toss' their pancake (flip it over in the frying pan) at least three times during the race. The winner receives a kiss from the Pancake Bell Ringer (church bells were traditionally rung to remind parishioners to come to confession) and a prayer book from the vicar!

Ex.3. Skim through the text and write the main content of it.

In 1605 **Guy Fawkes**, a Roman Catholic, and his fellow conspirators attempted to blow up King James I and the Houses of Parliament, as they disagreed with the King's Protestant policies. They succeeded in storing some 30 barrels of gunpowder in a cellar under the Houses of Parliament, but before Parliament opened on November 5th, the 'gunpowder plot', as it has come to be known, was discovered. Guy Fawkes and his colleagues were executed for treason.

Since then, the 5th of November has been celebrated in England by the burning of stuffed figures of Guy Fawkes on bonfires, usually accompanied by firework displays. These may be large organized events open to members of the public, or smaller, private gatherings of family and friends held in people's gardens. 'Guy Fawkes Night' is also known as 'Bonfire Night' or 'Firework Night'. In the days leading up to the 5th of November children traditionally take their homemade Guys out onto the streets of their town or village and ask passers-by for 'a penny for the Guy'. This money is supposedly used as a contribution towards their fireworks.

Ex.4. Make up questions on the content of the text and answer them

The beautiful springtime festival of **May Day** is observed in every nation, each according to its own customs and traditions. In most countries on May 1st a new life begins for both nature and man.

May Day is more important in Northern Europe than in warmer countries farther south. People grow tired of snow and ice and short winter days to which May Day signifies an end. The people of Belgium welcome spring with parades and fairs. Holland celebrates with tulip festivals and in Switzerland people offer up special May Day prayers. In France people buy flowers at sidewalk stands. They wear them and give them to their friends for luck.

As summer comes, Britain likes to celebrate the end of winter. Much of these celebrations is connected with dancing, which is performed to encourage life and growth and drive away harmful spirits. Children may be seen dancing round the Maypole on village greens, weaving their brightly-coloured scarves into a beautiful

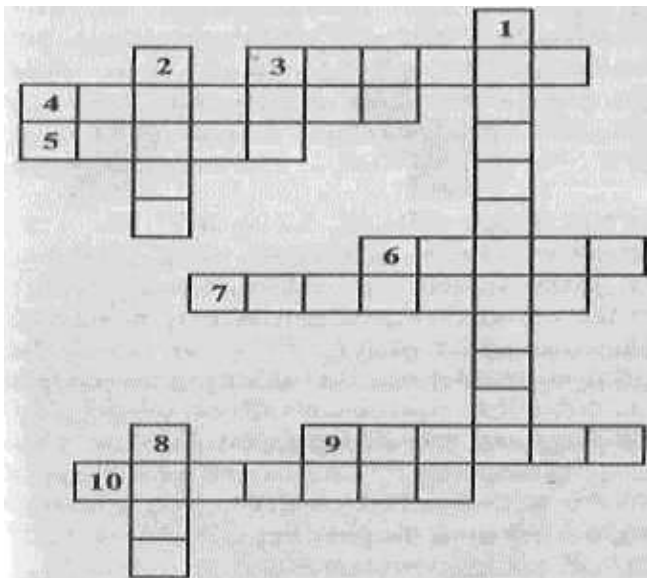
pattern. Morris men dance all day long on May 1st waving their white handkerchiefs to drive away the evil spirits and welcome in the new ones.

Ex.5. Fun Spot 1. Alphabet Crossword Puzzle

The answers to this crossword puzzle begin with the letter G.

Down;

1. is the famous British artist who created 'Mrs. Siddons'.



2. The Beatles were a of wonderful musicians.

8. She is very talented. She has a for art.

Across:

3. The Russian has seven strings.

4. Under the influence of acting became much more naturalistic.

5. was opened to the public in 1599.

6. By creating St. Paul's Cathedral Ch. Wren covered himself with .

7. Works of art are displayed in a .

9. Churches were more often built in the Style.

10. Together with A. Sullivan created fourteen wonderful operettas.

2. Word Games

a. Look for art everywhere.

Find the correct words for:

1) a building for the performance of plays;

2) a dramatic composition with music in which the words are sung;

3) a man who acts on the stage or for cinema films;

4) a well-known modern composer, the author of rock operas;

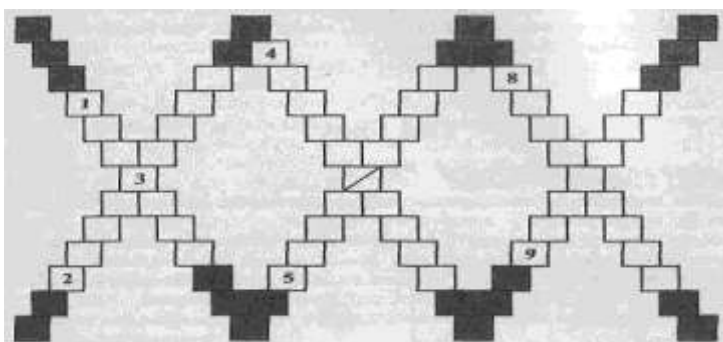
5) a group of persons trained to sing together;

6) belonging to the family of a king or queen;

7) the main character of one of Shakespeare's plays;

8) an English artist who devoted himself to landscape painting;

9) a person who paints pictures, performs music for the love of it, not for money.



Ex. 6. Read the text and write the main content of it in your own words.

Clans and Tartans.

The Gaelic word “clan” means “family” or “descendants” and the great clans of the 16th and 17th centuries were indeed very similar to enormous families, ruled by powerful chiefs. Sometimes there were fierce battles between different clans but nowadays the McDonalds and the McKenzie’s, the Campbell’s and the Lindsay’s all live in peace with each other. It is possible to find people with these surnames in many English-speaking countries, and they all feel they share the same background. The wearing of tartans or coloured checks was common in the Highlands before the defeat by the English in 1745. Originally, the tartan was worn as a single piece of cloth, drawn in at the waist and thrown over the shoulder. The kilt did not become popular until the beginning of the 18th century. Each clan has its own tartan and, since the first international gathering of the clans in 1972, many people have become interested in traditional forms of Scottish, dress. Tartans are now part of international fashion. Many people in Scotland have the name McDonald or McKenzie. “Mac” means “son of” and people with this name usually feel they belong to the same family or clan. Campbell or Cameron is other common surnames. Common boys names are; Angus, Donald or Duncan, and girls names are; Morag, Fiona or Jean. The names Jimmy and Jock are so common that many English people call a man from Scotland “a Jimmy” or “a Jock”

One of the most famous national costumes in the world is that worn in Scotland, the kilt; however some people say that the kilt is not as traditional as some would have it. Be that as it may it is certainly what people associate with Scotland, along with whisky and haggis that is. Some people consider it very bad luck to wear a kilt in a tartan that does not belong to your family. Just to remind you should you visit Scotland any time - the men do not wear skirts - they wear kilts – and don't you forget it!

Exercise 7. Translate the text into your mother-tongue

Inigo Jones was the first man to bring the Italian Renaissance style to Great Britain. He had studied in Italy for some years, and in 1615 became Surveyor-General of the works. The style he built in was pure Italian with as few modifications as possible. His buildings were very un-English in character, with regularly spaced columns along the front. His two most revolutionary designs were the Banqueting House in Whitehall and the Queen's House at Greenwich.

The plan of the latter, completely symmetrical, with its strict classical details and the principal rooms on the first floor, influenced architecture in Britain. But not during the life time of Inigo Jones. All those who followed him had to adapt this new foreign building technique to English ways and English climate, English building materials and English craftsmen. Christopher Wren was the man who did it. He was a mathematician, an astronomer and, above all, an inventor. He invented

new ways of using traditional English building materials, brick and ordinary roofing tiles, to keep within the limits of classical design. He, like Inigo Jones, was appointed Surveyor-General to the Crown when he was about thirty years old, and almost immediately he started rebuilding the churches of London, burnt down in the Great Fire of 1666.

Wren's churches are chiefly known by their beautiful spires which show in their structure the greatest engineering cunning. But Ch. Wren also influenced the design of houses, both in town and in the country. The best-known buildings designed by Ch. Wren are St. Paul's Cathedral in London and the Sheldonian Theatre in Oxford. The period of the Industrial Revolution had no natural style of its own. Businessmen wanted art for their money. The architect was to provide a facade in the Gothic style, or he was to turn the building into something like a Norman castle, or a Renaissance palace, or even an Oriental masque. For theatre and opera houses the theatrical Baroque style was often most suitable. Churches were more often than not built in the Gothic style. The twentieth century has seen great changes in Britain's architecture.

Exercise 8. Analyze the content of the text given in the previous text and practice picking out the main points.

Exercise 9. Find sentences with the following words and phrases in the text and translate them into your mother tongue:

tiny circulation, authoritative newspaper, bracket, broadcasting corporation, flanking towers, bagpipe, acclaimed, white plumes, free-to-air television channels, a polygonal shell, tremendous size, bailey,

References:

batsman— to'pni urib qaytaruvchi, (игрок с битой, отбивающий мяч)

wicket — kriket darvozasi, (ворота в крикете)

tennis bat — tennis raketkasi, (теннисная ракетка)

the Highland Games — состязания шотландских горцев 1

the Sword Dance — shamshir o'yuni, (танец с саблями)

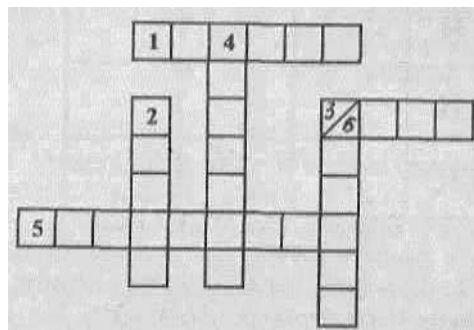
the Reel — рил (шотландский народный I хороводный танец)

flick — yengil zarba, (слегка подтолкнуть)

Exercise 10. Find sentences with the following words and phrases in the text and translate them into your mother tongue:

Stuck, as a national disaster, aggressive ball, wrestling, snooker, darts, dog-racing, lamb, bride and groom, imitation, settlement, paid speaking engagements

Exercise 11. Fun Spot 1. Crossword Puzzle



Across:

1) a kind of football played in the UK, Russia and European countries

3) a group of players in a game

5) the centre of lawn tennis

Down:

2) a kind of football originated at a public school and named after this school

4) the most popular English summer game

6) a game which can be played on a lawn or on a table

UNIT 5. Education in the UK

READING

Ex.1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Primary and secondary schools

All children in Britain up to the age of 16 must by law receive full time education. Schools in England are supported from public funds paid to the local education authorities. These local education authorities are responsible for organizing the schools in their areas. There are wide variations between a part of the country and another. For most educational purposes England and Wales are treated as a unit, though the system in Wales is a little different from that of England. In Scotland and Northern Ireland have their own educational systems.

Secondly, education in Britain are the mirrors of the country's social system: it is class-divided and selective.

A primary school may be divided into two parts: infants and juniors at the age of 7 children go on from infants' school to junior school. The pupils are streamed A.B.C.D streams. D is the gifted group. Formally towards the end of their fourth year the pupils write then 11+ examination then they go to comprehensive schools.

The majority of schools in Britain are supported by public funds and the education is free. They are maintained schools, but there is also a considerable number of public schools. The fees are high. As a matter of fact, only very rich family can send their children to public schools. In some parts of Britain they still keep the old system of grammar schools, which are selective.

But most secondary schools in Britain which are called comprehensive schools are not selective - you don't have to pass an exam to go there. Another important feature of schooling in Britain is the variety of opportunities offered to schoolchildren. The English school syllabus is divided into Arts (or Humanities) and Sciences, which determine the division of the secondary school pupils into study groups: a Science pupil will study Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics (Maths), Economics, Technical Drawing, Biology, Geography; an Art pupil will do English Language and Literature, History, foreign languages, Music, Art, Drama. Besides these subjects they must do some general education subjects like Physical Education (PE), Home Economics for girls, and Technical subjects for boys, General Science. Computers play an important part in education. The system of options exists in all kinds of secondary schools. The National Education Act of 1944 provided three stages of education: primary, secondary and further education.

The structure of the curriculum and the organization of teaching are different from school Headmasters and Headmistresses of school are given freedom in deciding what is taught. The pupils here free access to internet and e-mail facilities (academic purposes only)

1. Find the right information given in the text.

are supported by public funds.
The majority of schools in Britain the education provided is free.
are supported by private funds.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. These education authorities are responsible for organizing the schools in their areas.
2. The fees are
3. Schools in England are ... from public funds paid to the local education authorities.
4. They must do some general education

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. There are wide variations each one part of the country and another.
2. They are some schools, but there is also a considerable number of public schools.
3. Another important feature of schooling in Britain is the variety of opportunities invited to schoolchildren.
4. The National Education Act of 1944 provided three branches/stages of education.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. It is class-divided and selective.
a) choose b) follow c) control
2. The majority of schools in Britain are supported by public funds and the education provided is free.
a) most b) some c) each
3. But most secondary schools in Britain which are called comprehensive schools are not selective.
a) including everything b) extended c) divided
4. The English school syllabus is divided into Arts (or Humanities) and Sciences.
a) a list of main subjects b) additional subjects c) schedule

Answers:

- 1) are supported by public funds.
The majority of schools in Britain the education provided is free.

2) 1. local, 2. high, 3. supported, 4. Subjects

3) 1. each/between 2. some/maintained 3. invited/offered 4. branches/stages

4) 1.a 2a 3a 4a

Ex.2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Compulsory schooling in England and Wales lasts 11 years, from the age of 5 to 16. British schools usually have prayers and religious instruction. The National Curriculum which was introduced in 1988 sets out in detail the subjects that children should study and the levels of achievement they should reach by the ages of 7, 11, 14, and 16, when they are tested.

Until that year headmasters and headmistresses of schools were given a great deal of freedom in deciding what subjects to teach and how to do it in their schools. The National Curriculum does not apply in Scotland, where each school decides what subjects it will teach. After the age of 16 a growing number of school students are staying on at school, some until 18 or 19, the age of entry into higher education in universities, Polytechnics or colleges. Schools in Britain provide careers guidance. A specially trained person called careers advisor, or careers officer helps school students to decide what job they want to do and how they can achieve it. British university courses are rather short, generally lasting for 3 years. The cost of education depends on the college or university and specialty which one chooses.

There is usually written timetable. Much time is spent in modeling from clay or drawing, reading or singing. By the time children are ready for the junior school they will be able to read and write, do simple addition and subtraction of numbers. At seven children go on from the infant's school to the junior school. This marks the transition from play to "real work". The children have set periods of arithmetic, reading and composition which are all Eleven Plus subjects.

History, Geography, Nature Study, Art and Music, Physical Education, Swimming are also on the timetable. Pupils are streamed, according to their ability to learn, into A, B, C and D streams. The least gifted are in the D stream. Formerly towards the end of their fourth year the pupils wrote their Eleven Plus Examination. The hated 11 + examination was a selective procedure on which not

only the pupils future schooling but their future careers depended. The abolition of selection at Eleven - Plus Examination brought to life comprehensive schools where pupils can get secondary education.

After the age of 11, most children go to comprehensive schools of which the majorities are for both boys and girls. About 90 per cent of all state-financed secondary schools are of this type. Most other children receive secondary education in grammar and secondary modern schools. Comprehensive schools were introduced in 1965. The idea of comprehensive education, supported by the Labour Party, was to give all children of whatever background the same opportunity in education. At 16 students in England and Wales take GCSE examinations. In 1988 these examinations replaced the GCP and 0-levels which were usually passed by about 20 per cent of school students. GCSE examinations are taken by students of all levels of ability in any of a range of subjects, and may involve a final examination, and assessment of work done by the student during the two-year course, or both of these things.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

schooling in England and Wales lasts 8 years.

Compulsory schooling in England and Wales lasts 11 years.

schooling in England and Wales lasts 10 years.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Until that year headmasters and headmistresses of schools were given a great deal of ... in deciding.
2. The National Curriculum does not ... in Scotland.
3. After the age of 16 a growing number of school students are ... at school.
4. After the age of 11, most children go to ... schools.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. A specially trained person called leader advisor, or careers officer.
2. They helps school students to suggest what job they want to do.
3. Comprehensive schools were introduced in 1966.
4. The idea of comprehensive education, supported by the Democratic Party

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. Compulsory schooling in England and Wales lasts 11 years, from the age of 5 to 16.
a) obligatory b) necessary c) unnecessary

2. The National Curriculum which was introduced in 1988 sets out in detail the subjects.
 - a) the subjects that students study at a particular school or college
 - b) law
 - c) the rules of all schools
3. Schools in Britain provide careers guidance.
 - a) advice b) suggestion c) application
4. The hated 11 + examination was a selective procedure on which not only the pupils future schooling but their future careers depended.
 - a) a way of doing something b) vote c) subjects

Answers:

- 1) Compulsory schooling in England and Wales lasts 11 years.
- 2) 1. freedom 2. apply 3. staying on 4. comprehensive
- 3) 1. leader/careers 2. suggest/decide 3. 1966/1965 4. Democratic/Labour
- 4) 1.a 2.a 3.a 4.a

LISTENING

Ex.1. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

School education

Some comprehensive schools, however, do not have enough academic courses for sixth-formers. Pupils can transfer either to a grammar school or to a sixth-form College to get the courses they want. At 18 some students take A-level GCE (General Certificate of Education) examinations usually in two or three subjects but some pupils want to stay on at school after taking their GCSE, to prepare for a vocational course or for work rather than for A-level examinations. Pupils at secondary schools have 2 main exams GCE. Then they have to take the CPVE examination which means the Certificate of Pre-Vocational Education. In Scotland students take the SCE examinations. A year later, they can take examinations called Higher after which they can go straight to a university. Secondary education in Northern Ireland is organized along selective lines according to children's abilities.

One can hardly say that high quality secondary education is provided for all in Britain. There is a high loss of pupils from working-class families at entry into the sixth form. If you are a working-class child at school today, the chance of your reaching the second year of a sixth-form course is probably less than that for the child of a professional parent. Besides, government cuts on school spending caused many difficulties.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

can transfer either to a grammar school or to a sixth-form College.

Students have to take the CPVE examination.

take A-level GCE examinations usually in one subjects.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Of Some ... schools, however, do not have enough academic courses for sixth-formers.
2. A year later, they can take examinations called Higher after which they can go straight to a
3. One can hardly say that high quality secondary education is ... for all in Britain.
4. Besides, ... cuts on school spending caused many difficulties.

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

Colleges and Universities of the UK

The oldest college is Porterhouse, which was founded in 1284, and the most recent is Robinson College, which was opened in 1977. The most famous is probably King's College because of its magnificent chapel, the largest and the most beautiful building in Cambridge and the most perfect example left of English fifteenth-century architecture. Its choir of boys and undergraduates is also very well known. The University was only until 1871, when the first women's college was opened. In the 1970s, most colleges opened their doors to both men and women. Almost All College's are now mixed. Many great men studied at Cambridge, among them Desiderius Erasmus, the great Dutch scholar, Roger Bacon, the philosopher, Milton, the poet, Oliver Cromwel, the soldier, Newton, the

scientist, and Kapitza, the famous Russian physicist. The universities have over a hundred societies and clubs, enough for every interest one could imagine.

- a) Colleges and Universities of the UK
- b) Education of the UK
- c) Study system of the UK

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Each college is governed by a Master. The larger ones have more than 400 members; the smallest colleges have less than 30. Each college offers teaching in a wide range of subjects.

Interpretation.....

Within the college one will normally find a chapel, a dining hall, a library, rooms for undergraduates, fellows and the Master, and also rooms for teaching purposes. Oxford is one of the oldest universities in Europe. It is the second largest in Britain after London.

Interpretation.....

University started during the 13th century and grew until today. Now there are more than thirty colleges. On the banks of the Cam willow trees drown their branches into the water. The colleges line the right bank. There are beautiful college gardens with green lawns and lines of tall trees.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) can transfer either to a grammar school or to a sixth-form College.
Students have to take the CPVE examination.
- 2) 1. comprehensive 2. university 3. provided 4. Government
- 3) a) Colleges and Universities of the UK

Ex.2. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

In Scotland students take the SCE examinations. Later, they can take examinations called Highers after which they can go straight to a university.

Secondary education in Northern Ireland is organized along selective lines according to children's abilities. One can hardly say that high quality secondary education is provided for all in Britain. There is a high loss of pupils from working-class families at entry into the sixth form you are a working-class child at school today, the chance of your reaching the second year of a sixth-form course is probably less than that for the child of a professional parent. Besides, government cuts on school spending caused many difficulties.

The school year is divided into terms, three months each, named after seasons: autumn term, winter term and spring term.

The autumn term starts on the first Tuesday morning in September. In July schools break up for eight weeks.

Life at school is more or less similar everywhere. Each group of 30 pupils is the responsibility of a form tutor. Each school day is divided into periods of 40—50 minutes, time for various lessons with 10—20 minutes' breaks between them. It might be interesting for you to see the 'Bell Times' at Lawns wood school in Leeds.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) The school year is divided into terms, three months each, named after seasons.
- b) Each school day is divided into periods of 15—25 minutes, time for various lessons with 10—20 minutes' breaks between them.
- c) It might be interesting for you to see the 'Bell Times' at Lawns wood school in the streets.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. In Scotland students take the ... examinations.
2. One can hardly say that high quality secondary education is ... for all in Britain.
3. There is a high ... of pupils from working-class families at entry into the sixth form you are a working-class child at school today.
4. Besides, government cuts on school ... caused many difficulties.

Ex.3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

On important occasions such as end of term or national holiday, called in English schools speech-days pupils are gathered in the assembly area or hall. Most of the pupils' time is spent in a classroom equipped with desks and a blackboard,

nowadays often called chalkboard because normally it is brown or green. The desks are arranged in rows, the space between the rows is called an aisle. In addition to classrooms there are laboratories for Physics, Chemistry and Biology. Technical rooms are for Woodwork, Metalwork, and Technical Drawing. There are rooms for computer studies. Many young people use them for school exercise. They are able to write their own games as well.

- a) Life of the UK students
- b) At school
- c) Life of the UK pupils

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

The Physical Education lessons are conducted at the gymnasium, games-hall or at the playground in front of the school building.

Interpretation.....

There are also language laboratories and housecraft rooms. Every school has a library and a school canteen.

Interpretation.....

In student common room boys and girls can relax during the breaks and lunchtime. The Staff common room is for teachers.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) a) The school year is divided into terms, three months each, named after seasons.
- 2) 1. SCE 2. provided 3. loss 4. spending
- 3) c) Life of the UK pupils

WRITING

Ex.1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

School uniform and punishment

Pupils at many secondary schools in Britain have to wear a school uniform. This usually means a white blouse for girls (perhaps with a tie), with a dark-coloured skirt and pullover. Boys wear a shirt and tie, dark trousers and dark-coloured pullovers. Pupils also wear blazers-a kind of jacket-with the school badge on the pocket. They often have to wear some kind of hat on the way to and from school-caps for boys, and berets or some other kind of hat for girls.

Young people in Britain often don't like their school uniform, especially the hats and shoes. Sometimes they do not wear the right clothes. Schools will often give them a warning the first time that this happens but then will punish them if they continue not to wear the correct uniform. Senior student don't have to wear their school uniform. It sounds logical to say that the school's function is to train a pupil's mind and his character should be formed at home.

Teachers would be pleased if the problem could be solved so easily. But children don't leave their characters at home when their minds go to school. Many of them have personality problems of one kind or another. The pupils who violate various school regulations may be punished in the following ways: for lateness, truancy they may be reported to the Headmaster or named in school assembly.

Corporal punishment has recently been banned in state schools. But in most public schools it is still allowed. Caning is the usual punishment for serious misbehavior in class, damage and vandalism. Many teachers remark that standards of discipline have fallen since corporal punishment was banned by the government. You may want to know whether there are any rewards and prizes for the best pupils. Of course, there are. Each school has its system of rewards, medals and prizes.

Ex.2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

Public Schools

About five per cent of children are educated privately in what is rather confusingly called public schools. These are the schools for the privileged. There are about 500 public schools in England and Wales, most of them single-sex. About half of them are for girls.

The schools, such as Eton, Harrow, Rugby and Winchester, are famous for their ability to lay the foundation of a successful future by giving their pupils self-confidence, the right accent, a good academic background and, perhaps most important of all, the right friends and contacts. People who went to one of the public schools never call themselves school-leavers. They talk about “the old school tie” and “the old boy network”.

They are just old boys or old girls. The fees are high and only very rich family’s can afford to pay so much. Public schools educate the ruling class of England. Public schools are free from state control. They are independent. Most of them are boarding schools.

The education is of a high quality; the discipline is very strict. The system of education- is the same: the most is able to go ahead. These schools accept pupils from preparatory schools at about 11 or 13 years of age usually on the basis of an examination, known as Common Entrance. There are three sittings of Common Entrance every year in February, June and November. Scholarships are rarely awarded on the results of Common Entrance. The fundamental requirements are very high. At 18 most public school leavers gain entry to universities.

Ex.3. Translate the text into your mother tongue.

The oldest college is Porterhouse, which was founded in 1284, and the most recent is Robinson College, which was opened in 1977. The most famous is probably King’s College because of its magnificent chapel, the largest and the most beautiful building in Cambridge and the most perfect example left of English fifteenth-century architecture. Its choir of boys and undergraduates is also very well known. The University was only for men until 1871, when the first women's college was opened. In the 1970s, most colleges opened their doors to both men and women. Almost all colleges are now mixed. Many great men studied at Cambridge, among them Desiderius Erasmus, the great Dutch scholar, Roger Bacon, the philosopher, Milton, the poet, Oliver Cromwell, the soldier, Newton, the scientist, and Kapitza, the famous Russian physicist. The universities have over a hundred societies and clubs, enough for every interest one could imagine. Sport is part of student’s life at Oxbridge. The most popular sports are rowing and punting.

SPEAKING

Ex.1. Retell the following text in your own words.

Universities of the UK

The academic year in Britain's universities, Polytechnics, Colleges of Education is divided into three terms, which usually run from the beginning of October to the middle of December, from the middle of January to the end of March, and from the middle of April to the end of June or the beginning of July.

There are about one hundred universities in Britain. The oldest and best-known universities are located in Oxford, Cambridge, London, Leeds, Manchester, Liverpool, Edinburgh, Southampton, Cardiff, Bristol, and Birmingham. Good A-Level results in at least two subjects are necessary to get a place at A University. However, good exam passes alone are not enough. Universities choose their students after interviews. For all British citizens a place at a university brings with it a grant from their local education authority. English universities greatly differ from each other. They differ in date of foundation, size, history, tradition, general organization, methods of instruction, and way of student life. After three years of study a university graduate will leave with the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, Science, Engineering, Medicine, etc. Later he may continue to take a Master's Degree and then a Doctor's Degree. Research is an important feature of university work.

The Scottish universities of St. Andrews, Glasgow, Aberdeen and Edinburgh date from the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. In the nineteenth and the early part of the twentieth century's the so-called Redbrick universities were founded. These include London, Manchester, Leeds, Liverpool, Sheffield and Birmingham. During the late sixties and early seventies some 20 'new' universities were set up. Sometimes they are called "concrete and glass" universities. Among them are the universities of Sussex, York, East Anglia and some others. During these years the Government set up thirty Polytechnics. The Polytechnics, like the universities, offer first and higher degrees. Some of them offer full-time and sandwich courses. Colleges of Education provide two-year courses in teacher education or sometimes three years if the graduate specializes in some particular subject.

Some of those who decide to leave school at the age of 16 may go to a further education college where they can follow a course in typing, engineering, town planning, cooking, or hairdressing, full-time or part-time. Further education colleges have strong ties with commerce and industry. There is an interesting form of studies which is called the Open University. It is intended for people who study in their own free time and who attend lectures by watching television and listening to the radio. They keep in touch by phone and letter with their tutors and attend summer schools. The Open University students have no formal qualifications and would be unable to enter ordinary universities. Some 80,000 overseas students study at British universities or further education colleges or train in nursing, law, banking or in industry.

Ex.2. Retell the following text in your own words

Oxford, Cambridge Universities

There are 46 universities in Britain. The oldest and best-known universities are Oxford, Cambridge, London, Bristol, Cardiff, Edinburgh, Liverpool, Manchester, Leeds etc. There are 1,7 million home and overseas students at universities and other higher education institutions. Good A-level results are necessary to get a place at a university. However good exam results alone are not enough, universities choose their students after interviews.

There are two oldest universities in Great Britain. They are Oxford and Cambridge. They are often called collectively Oxbridge. Both universities are independent. The tutorial is the basic mode of instruction or teaching at Oxford and Cambridge. The students study three years then they take the degree of Bachelor of Arts. Some courses such as languages and medicine may be one or two years longer. Only the education elite go to Oxford or Cambridge.

Cambridge University started during 13th century and grew until today. Now there are more than thirty colleges. Many great men studied at Cambridge University. They are Newton, Oliver Cromwell, Milton (poet), Roger Bacon (translator), Kapitsa (the Russian physicist). Most of their students are former public schools leavers. The normal length of the degree course is three years, after

which the students take the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (B.A.). The students may work for other degree as well. The degrees are awarded at public degree ceremonies. Oxford and Cambridge cling to their traditions such as the use of Latin at degree ceremonies. Full academic dress is worn at examinations. Oxford and Cambridge universities consist of a number of colleges. Each college is different, but in many ways they are alike. Each college has its name, its coat of arms.

The students must submit all the relevant assignment on time and deadlines will not be extended. The students must attend classes and sit for all the examinations. Full academic dress is worn at examinations.

Ex.3. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

There is an interesting form of studies which is called the Open University. It is intended for people who study in their own free time and who 'attend' lectures by watching television and listening to the radio. They keep in touch by phone and letter with their tutors and attend summer schools. The Open University students have no formal qualifications and would be unable to enter ordinary universities.

Some 80,000 overseas students study at British universities or further education colleges or train in nursing, law, banking or in industry.

There are two oldest universities in Great Britain. They are Oxford and Cambridge. They are the most prestigious universities in Great Britain. They are often called collectively Oxbridge. Both universities are independent. Only the education elite go to Oxford or Cambridge. Most of their student's are former public schools leavers. The normal length of the degree course is three years, after which the students take the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (B.A.). Some courses, such as the dreaming spires of Oxford languages or medicine, may be one or two years longer. The students may work for other degree as well. The degrees are awarded at public degree ceremonies. Oxford and Cambridge cling to their traditions such as the use of Latin at degree ceremonies. Full academic dress is worn at examinations. Oxford and Cambridge universities consist of a number of colleges. Each college is different, but in many ways they are alike. Each college has its name, its coat of arms.

Each college is governed by a Master. The larger ones have more than 400 members; the smallest colleges have less than 30. Each college offers teaching in a wide range of subjects. Within the college one will normally find a chapel, a dining hall, a library, rooms for undergraduates, fellows and the Master, and also rooms for teaching purposes. Oxford is one of the oldest universities in Europe. It is the second largest in Britain after London. University started during the 13th century and grew until today. Now there are more than thirty colleges. On the banks of the Cam willow trees droop their branches into the water. The colleges line the right bank. There are beautiful college gardens with green lawns and lines of tall trees.

References:

old school tie — галстук старой школы выпускников привилегированных частных средних школ (символ принадлежности к правящему классу; перен. приятель (ср. русск. «однокашник»))

boarding school — maktab internat, (школа-интернат, пансион)

school premises — maktab hududi, (здание школы с прилегающей территорией)

careers interviews — консультации по профессиональной ориентации

School Council — maktab uyushmasi, (школьный совет учащихся)

Redbrick universities — Redbrik universiteti, («Краснокирпичные» университеты (разговорное название университетов, появившихся в XIX — начале XX вв.))

College of Education — pedagogika kolleji, (педагогический колледж (трехгодичный педагогический институт; в 1965 г. такие колледжи получили статус университета)

Open University — ochiq universitet, (Открытый университет, университет для всех (функционирует с 1971 г.))

grant — stipendiya, (стипендия (обыкн. выплачивается студентам из средств государственного бюджета или местных органов власти))

Bachelor of Arts — бакалавр искусств (обладатель степени бакалавра по одной из гуманитарных или математических наук в университетах)

Master's Degree — magistrlik darajasi, (ученая степень магистра (присуждается университетом лицам, успешно завершившим по крайней мере год учебы и исследовательской работы после окончания университета))

Doctor's Degree — fan doktori darajasi, (ученая степень доктора)

Self-Work

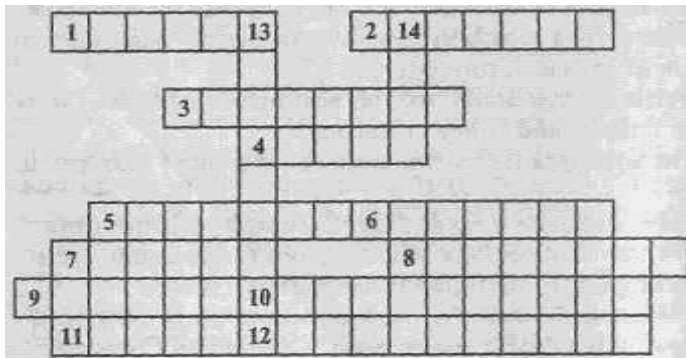
Ex.1. Find answers to the following questions in the text:

1. What are the basic features of education in Great Britain?
2. What are the main stages of education in Britain?
3. What pre-school institutions do children under 5 go to?
4. What types of secondary schools in Britain do you know?
5. When does selection usually take place? What do you think about selection procedures?
6. What are the advantages of school uniform in Britain and other countries?
7. Do you think that computers could replace teachers at school?
8. How do public schools differ from comprehensive ones?
9. Do you think British schoolchildren have equal opportunities in getting high quality education? Why?
10. What institutions of higher education in Britain do you know? What did you learn about Oxford and Cambridge?
11. What voluntary youth organizations, political and non-political, do you know?

Ex.2. Fun spot

Across:

- 1) a fee-paying school
- 2) a school for higher or professional education
- 3) an electronic device which plays an important part in education
- 4) a famous English poet
- 5) a famous English playwright
- 6) a school for children under 5
- 7) the oldest university in Britain
- 8) a mode of instruction in Oxford and Cambridge universities
- 9) one of the popular sports exercises
- 10) a boys' public school in Scotland



- 11) an academic title awarded by universities and other institutions of learning
- 12) one of the courses that students can follow at Polytechnics or colleges

Down:

- 13) the University that was founded in the 13th century
- 14) a form of studies for people who study in their own free time

Ex.3. Write the translation of this text

The Scottish education system has always remained distinct from education in the rest of United Kingdom, with a characteristic emphasis on a broad education. Scotland was the first country since Sparta in classical Greece to implement a system of general public education. Schooling was made compulsory for the first time in Scotland with the Education Act of 1496, then, in 1561, the Church of Scotland set out a national programme for spiritual reform, including a school in every parish. Education continued to be a matter for the church rather than the state until the Education Act (1872).

The "Curriculum for Excellence" provides the curricular framework for children and young people from age 3 to 18. All 3- and 4-year-old children in Scotland are entitled to a free nursery place. Formal primary education begins at approximately 5 years old and lasts for 7 years (P1–P7); Today, children in Scotland sit Standard Grade, or more recently Intermediate exams at approximately 15 or 16. The school leaving age is 16, after which students may choose to remain at school and study for Access, Intermediate or Higher Grade and Advanced Higher exams. A small number of students at certain private, independent schools may follow the English system and study towards GCSEs and A and AS-Levels instead.

Ex.4. Find the key words and write the main content in your own words

There are 14 Scottish universities, some of which are amongst the oldest in the world. These include the University of St Andrews, the University of Glasgow, the University of Edinburgh, the University of Aberdeen and the University of Dundee - many of which are ranked amongst the best in the UK. The country produces 1% of the world's published research with less than 0.1% of the world's population, and higher education institutions account for nine per cent of Scotland's service sector exports.

UNIT 1. Geography of the USA



READING

Ex. 1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The **United States of America** (also called the **United States**, the **States**, the **U.S.**, the **USA**, and **America**) is a federal constitutional republic. The USA is made up of 50 states and the District of Columbia, a special federal area where the capital of the country, Washington, is situated.



The country is situated mostly in central North America. It is washed by the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. It borders on Canada to the north and Mexico to the south. The state of Alaska is in the northwest of the continent. The state of Hawaii is an archipelago in the mid-Pacific. The country also possesses several territories in the Pacific and Caribbean.

The United States of America is the fourth largest country in the world (after Russia, Canada and China). The total area of the country is about nine and a half million square kilometers. The USA borders on Canada in the North and Mexico in the South. It also has a sea boarder with Russia.

The sparsely settled far-northern state of Alaska is the largest of America's 50 states. Rhode Island is the smallest state.

Mount Everest, 29,002 feet high, is situated on the border of Tibet and Nepal. Since the end of the nineteenth century climbers have been ambitious to conquer Everest and stand on the highest point of land in the world. On Friday, 29 May 1953, two members of the British Everest Expedition succeeded in reaching the top. They were the first men known to have done so. America is rich in mineral resources: petroleum, natural gas, iron, cement, oil, coal, gas, copper, zinc and others.

Before the successful climb of 1953 there had been ten other expeditions. The first attempts were made from north, after permission had been obtained from the ruler of Tibet. The first expeditions were organized by the Alpine Club and the Royal Geographical Society. The aim of the 1921 expedition was to examine the mountain and the surrounding area, and find a route by which a later expedition might hope to reach the top.

The climbers were successful in mapping possible routes up the mountain from the north, the north-east, and the north-west. One of them, George Mallory, reached a height of over 24,000 feet, and was able to see an immense valley on the south-west side of the mountain. It was from this valley that the climb was made in 1953.

The expedition of 1924 again approached the mountain from the north. Two of the climbers, Mallory and Irvine, set up a camp at 26,800 feet. From this camp they sent back a message saying that the weather was good and that they hoped to reach the top and get back to their tent the next day. They were seen the next afternoon through a break in the clouds at a height of about 28,230 feet. They did not return to their tent, and the weather made it impossible for other climbers to go to their help. Mallory's ice-axe was found nine years later by members of another expedition.

In 1951 a British expedition, led by Eric Shipton, found a way into the immense valley to the south-west of the mountain. The exploration and map-making were of the greatest value to the men who won success in 1953.

1) Find the answer to the question.

1. When did the first successful climb take place?
a) 1921 b) 1924 c) 1953
2. How many had there been climbs before the successful climb?
a) 3 b) 5 c) 10

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The United States of America is a ... republic.
2. The country is situated mostly in
3. The United States of America is ... largest country in the world.
4. Mount Everest, ... feet high, is situated on the boarder of Tibet and Nepal.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. It borders on Alaska to the north and Mexico to the south.
2. The state of Canada is an archipelago in the mid-Pacific.

3. It also has a sea boarder with Brasilia.
4. On Friday, 12 May 1953, two members of the British Everest Expedition succeeded in reaching the top.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The sparsely settled far-northern state of Alaska, is the largest of America's 50 states.
a) existing a very small amount b) a lot of c) the most
2. Since the end of the nineteenth century climbers have been ambitious to conquer Everest.
a) determined to become rich b) to become beautiful c) to become poor
3. One of them, George Mallory, reached a height of over 24,000 feet, and was able to see an immense valley on the south-west side of the mountain.
a) extremely small b) extremely large c) very tall
4. The climbers were successful in mapping possible routes up the mountain from the north, the north-east, and the north-west.
a) very small hills b) the roads that you use c) narrow roads

Answers:

- 1) 1. c 2. c
- 2) 1. federal constitutional 2. central North America 3. the fourth 4. 29,002
- 3) 1. Alaska/Canada 2. Canada/Hawaii 3. Brasilia/Russia 4. 12/29 May
- 4) 1.a 2.a 3.b 4.b

Ex.2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The Rivers and Lakes in the USA

The USA has many rivers. USA rivers respond to the quantity and seasonal pattern of precipitation in a region. The streams of the eastern United States, principal among which are the Hudson, Delaware, Susquehanna, Potomac, and Savannah, receive rainfall in every month and therefore are reliable avenues for waterborne commerce. Rivers of the interior, such as the Ohio, Missouri, Tennessee, Illinois, and Mississippi, often flood in spring and decrease in size during the hot weeks of late summer and the snow months of winter. Some flow regulation and flood control have been achieved on these rivers through a costly and controversial system of dams and levees. Rio Grande is also one of the largest rivers in the USA. In the north the Columbia River, the Snake River, the Sacramento River, the Jon Joaquin, the Colorado River and others can be found.

Major lakes are Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario. The surface water sources of the nation also include the five Great Lakes, which occupy an interconnected set of glacially scoured basins and together serve as a major transportation artery.

The Mississippi River is the longest river in the United States. It is more than 3,700 kilometers long. The Mississippi begins as a small creek and at the Gulf of Mexico it is nearly two kilometers wide.

The river gets water from rain, snow, hail, and ice. Many small rivers run into the Mississippi. Half of the rain falling in the United States flows into the Mississippi. Boats can go from the Gulf of Mexico up the Mississippi for 1,600 kilometers. Many of the boats are barges. Barges carry freight of many kinds up the river and down the river.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

_____ is over 5,000 kilometers long.

_____ starts as a small stream.

The Mississippi River _____ is both deep and shallow.

_____ is 10 kilometers wide.

_____ gets water from other rivers. _____ .

_____ gets half the rainfall of the U.S.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. the ... river in the United States
2. more than 3,700 kilometers
3. begins as a ... creek
4. nearly two kilometers ...

3. Define the content of the second paragraph.

1. The Mississippi gets wider.
2. The Mississippi is a creek.
3. The Mississippi is always deep.

4. Complete the sentence.

1. The Mississippi begin as a small

- a. river b. creek c. gulf

2. The Mississippi is _kilometers wide at the Gulf of Mexico.

- a. two b. 3,700 c. 1,600

3. The Mississippi is the river in the U.S.

- a. widest b. deepest c. longest

4. Many small ... flow into the Mississippi.

a. boats b. barges c rivers

Answers:

- 1) - starts as a small stream.
- The Mississippi River: -is both deep and shallow.
- gets water from other rivers,
- gets half the rainfall of the U.S.

2)1. the longest 2. long 3. small 4. wide

3)1.

5) 1.b 2.a 3.c 4.c

Ex. 3. Read the text and find the answers to the question



Mount Everest

Mount Everest, 29,002 feet high, is situated on the boarder of Tibet and Nepal. Since the end of the nineteenth century climbers have been ambitious to conquer Everest and stand on the highest point of land in the world. On Friday, 29 May 1953, two members of the British Everest Expedition succeeded in reaching the top. They were the first men known to have done so.

Before the successful climb of 1953 there had been ten other expeditions. The first attempts were made from north, after permission had been obtained from the ruler of Tibet. The first expeditions were organized by the Alpine Club and the Royal Geographical Society. The aim of the 1921 expedition was to examine the mountain and the surrounding area, and find a route by which a later expedition might hope to reach the top.

The climbers were successful in mapping possible routes up the mountain from the north, the north-east, and the north-west. One of them, George Mallory, reached a height of over 24,000 feet, and was able to see an immense valley on the south-west side of the mountain. It was from this valley that the climb was made in 1953.

The expedition of 1924 again approached the mountain from the north. Two of the climbers, Mallory and Irvine, set up a camp at 26,800 feet. From this camp they sent back a message saying that the weather was good and that they hoped to reach the top and get back to their tent the next day. They were seen the next afternoon through a break in the clouds at a height of about 28,230 feet. They did not return to their tent, and the weather made it impossible for other climbers to go to their help. Mallory's ice-axe was found nine years later by members of another expedition.

In 1951 a British expedition, led by Eric Shipton, found a way into the immense valley to the south-west of the mountain. The exploration and map-making were of the greatest value to the men who won success in 1953.

I. When did the first successful climb take place?

1).1921 2). 1924 3).1951 4). 1953

II. How many had there been climbs before the successful climb? . 1).3

2).5 3).7 4).10

III. Find the sentence which has wrong information

1. It is very difficult to conquer Everest.
2. The climbers were successful in mapping possible routes up the mountain from the north, the north-east, and the north-west.
3. The expedition of 1924, consisting of two climbers, again approached the mountain from the north.

4. In 1951 a British expedition found and explored a way into the immense valley to the south-west of the mountain.

1).4 II).4 III).3

Ex. 5. Read and Skim through the paragraph text and do the tests below.

The Buffalo

The buffalo is the largest North American animal. It weighs as much as 1,000 pounds. It lives with other buffalo in groups or herds. Two hundred years ago, there were 60 million buffalo. They lived all over the centre of North America. There were thousands of herds. One herd was twenty miles long and twenty miles wide. The buffalo followed the grass and the Indians mowed the buffalo.

The Indians used the buffalo for many things. They used it for meat. Sometimes they dried the meat in the sun. Then they ate it later. The Indians also used the skin, or hide of the buffalo. From the hide they made tents, clothes, shoes, hats, and rope. They wasted nothing.

But times changed. People from other lands came to America. These immigrants crossed the country in wagon trains. They killed the buffalo for food and hides. And everyone wanted leather. Hunters with guns killed the buffalo only for their hides. They wasted everything else. These hunters were very good at their job. By 1900, there were fewer than thirty buffalo alive.

Today, there are about 30,000 buffalos in America. But herds are very rare. You can see them in states like Wyoming. Sometimes you can buy buffalo meat at a restaurant.

1. Define the meaning of words in the bold type.

The buffalo lives in **herds**.

- a. grass b. groups c. flocks

2. The Indians used the **hide** of the buffalo.

- a. skin b. meat c. flesh

3. **Immigrants** came to America.

- a. People from other lands
b. People who do not like animals
c. People from South America

4. The buffalo **followed** the grass.

- a. saw b. went after c. looked for

5. **Hunters** killed the buffalo.

a. People who follow and kill animals

b. People who like restaurants

c. People who live in North America

6. They *wasted* everything else.

a. did not like b. did not take c. did not use

II. Find the sentence which has wrong information

1. The buffalo weighs as much as 200 pounds.
2. Two hundred years ago, there were 30,000 buffalo.
3. The buffalo followed the Indians.
4. In 1900, there were fewer than thirty buffalo.
5. Hunters killed the buffalo for their hides.
6. You cannot eat buffalo meat in a restaurant today.

Answers:

I. Lb. 2.a 3.a 4.b 5.a 6.c

Listening

Ex.1. Listen the following text through headphones and put the words in the blanks given bellow.

Climate of the USA

The United States has a broad range of climates. The Southern tip of Florida is tropical and tundra, as is Hawaii. The Great Plains west of the 100th meridian are semi-arid. East of the United States has humid subtropical climate and the North East of the United States has humid continental climate. West of the United States has the steppe climate and the grasslands of the Great Plains; trees are found along the watercourses. In the United States there are the deserts of the basin and range province, with the hottest and driest spots in the United States. Along the Pacific coast is the Mediterranean-type climate of South California and, extending north into Alaska, the marine West Coast climate. The Pacific Northwest is one of the wettest parts of the United States and is densely forested.

The Rocky Mountains, Cascades, and Sierra Nevada have typical highland climates and are also heavily forested.

1. The United States has a ... of climates.

2. The Southern tip of Florida is ... and tundra, as is Hawaii.

3.The Great Plains west of the 100th meridian are semi-arid.

4.East of the United States has humid climate and the North East of the United States has ... continental climate.

5.West of the United States has the steppe climate and the ... of the Great Plains; trees are found along the watercourses.

6.In the United States there are the deserts of the basin and... ... , with the hottest and driest spots in the United States.

7.Along the Pacific coast is the Mediterranean-type ... of South California and, extending north into Alaska, the ... West Coast climate.

8.The Pacific Northwest is one of the ... parts of the United States and is densely forested.

9.The Rocky Mountains, Cascades, and Sierra Nevada have typical ... climates and are also ... forested.

Ex.2. Listen to the text and retell it

USA population.

As of January 1, 2013, the United States had a total resident population of 315,214,000, making it the third most populous country in the world. It is a very urbanized population, with 82% residing in cities and suburbs as of 2008 (the worldwide urban rate is 50.5%). This leaves vast expanses of the country nearly uninhabited. California and Texas are the most populous states, as the mean center of United States population has consistently shifted westward and southward. New York City is the most populous city in the United States.

Ex. 3. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Flora and Fauna.

America's land is fertile especially in valleys of the Pacific Coast. American farmers plant wheat, raise corn, beef cattle and rice in Louisiana and Florida. Florida and California are famous for their vegetables and fruit production. There are forests, walnut, oak, hickory and timber. Fur-bearing animals are found in some forested mountains. We find muskrats, skunks, and raccoons. Fishing produces an important industry. The native flora of the United States includes about 17.000 species of vascular plants, plus tens of thousands of additional species of other plants and plant – like organisms such as algae, lichens and other fungi, and mosses. About 3.800 additional non-native species of vascular plants are recorded as established outside of cultivation in the USA as well as a much smaller number of

non-native non-vascular plants and plant relatives. The United States possesses one of the most diverse temperature floras in the world, comparable only to that of China.

The native flora of the United States has provided the world with a large number of horticultural and agricultural plants, mostly ornamentals, such as flowering dogwood, redbud, mountain laurel, bald cypress, southern magnolia and black locust, all non-cultivated in temperate regions worldwide but also various food plants such as blueberries, black raspberries, cranberries, maple syrup and sugar, and pecans, and Monterey pine and other timber trees.

Bison (buffalo) are popularly associated with the grasslands, although in fact they once ranged over most of eastern North America before being nearly exterminated by hunting; they now exist only in captivity or in protected areas. Gophers, rabbits, prairie dogs, ferrets, ants, and other burrowing creatures are best suited to the grasslands, which were once swept by fires.

Sequoias, or redwood trees, grow in the western United States, mostly in California and Oregon. Sequoias are some of the oldest living things on earth. They are also among the biggest. They often grow more than 30 meters high.

To tell the age of a tree it is necessary to cut it down. The trunk of the tree has rings. There is a ring for each year of life of the tree. By counting the rings, people can learn the age of a tree. One sequoia had 3,000 rings! Some sequoias are even older.

Sequoias are evergreen trees and their bark is very tough. It is about 15 centimeters thick and is almost fireproof. The fireproof bark has helped sequoias live through many forest fires.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

grow in California.

are found in the East.

are very old.

Sequoias grow 80 meters high.

are evergreen plants.

have thin bark.

have tree rings.

are almost fireproof.

2. Fill in the blanks with adverbs from the text.

1. _____ in California and Oregon
2. are among the biggest
3. They grow more than
4. are older
5. bark is tough
6. is fireproof

3. Define the content of the second paragraph.

1. The age of a tree is told by rings.
2. The age of a tree is told by its height.
3. The age of a tree is told by its bark.

Ex. 4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

In the USA animals depend, either directly or indirectly, on plants for their survival. Each major vegetation region thus has its own characteristic kinds of animal life.

Interpretation.....

...

In the Arctic areas and regions of mountain tundra are found burrowing marmots, ground squirrels, cold-water fish such as grayling and trout, and an occasional bear. Alaskan coastal waters are the habitat of a number of large mammals, including walrus and fur seals. Caribou and elk spend summers on the tundra but migrate into the conifer forest for winter.

Interpretation.....

...

Many birds migrate even farther, going from the Polar Regions to the Tropics each winter. The hardwood forests of the eastern United States contain moose, black bears, deer, foxes, raccoons, skunks, squirrels, and a diversity of small birds.

Along the Gulf of Mexico coast live larger and more colorful birds such as pelicans, flamingos, and green kingfishers, as well as alligators and warm water fish such as catfish. Several varieties of venomous snakes are also found here.

Interpretation.....

...

Answers:

- 1) grow in California,
are very old.

Sequoias are evergreen plants, have tree rings, are almost fireproof.

2) 1. mostly 2. also 3. often 4. even 5. very 6. almost

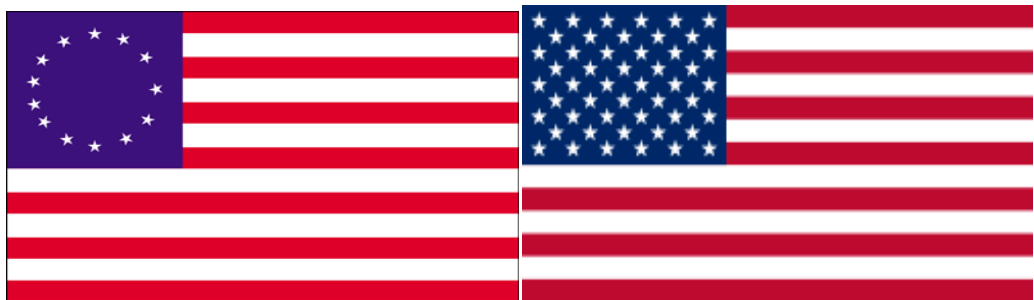
3) 1

Ex.5. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

The Flag and Emblem of the USA

The national anthem of the United States is "The Star Spangled Banner". The words written during the Anglo-American war of 1812-1814 and set to the music of an old song. Every state has its own flag, its own emblem and its own anthem too.

The Statue of Liberty is the symbol of American democracy. It stands on Liberty Island in New York. It is one of the first things people see when they arrive in New York by sea. This National Monument was a present from France to the USA. France gave the statue to America in 1884 as a symbol of friendship. Liberty carries the torch of freedom - in her right hand. In her left hand she is holding a tablet with the inscription "July 4, 1776" - American Independence Day.



The flag of the United States consists of 13 equal horizontal stripes of red (top and bottom) alternating with white, with a blue rectangle in the canton bearing 50 small, white, five-pointed stars arranged in nine offset horizontal rows of six stars (top and bottom) alternating with rows of five stars. The 50 stars on the flag represent the 50 U.S. states and the 13 stripes represent the Thirteen Colonies.

The United States flag is commonly called "the Stars and Stripes" or "Old Glory," with the latter nickname coined by Captain William Driver, a 19th century shipmaster. The US flag is an important symbol to all Americans. During the revolution against Britain George Washington asked Betsy Ross to make a flag as an encouragement for his soldiers. This flag had 13 stripes, seven red and six



white, and in one corner 13 white stars on a blue background to represent the 13 states. On 14 June 1777 it became the flag of the independent US. (The first one above.) As each new state became part of the US an extra star was added.

The Bald Eagle

In 1782, soon after the United States won its independence, the bald eagle was chosen as the national bird of the new country. American leaders wanted the eagle to be a symbol of their country because it is a bird of strength and courage. They chose the bald eagle because it was found all over North America.

Today, the bald eagle has almost disappeared from the country. In 1972 there were only 3,000 bald eagles in the entire United States. The reason for the bird's decreasing population is pollution, especially pollution of the rivers by pesticides. Pesticides are chemicals used to kill insects and other animals that attack and destroy crops. Unfortunately, rain often washes pesticides into rivers. Pesticides pollute the rivers and poison the fish. Eagles eat these fish and then the eggs eagles lay are not healthy. The eggs have very thin shells and do not hatch. Because many of the eggs did not hatch and produce more eagles, the number of eagles quickly became smaller.

Today, the American government and the American people are trying to protect the bald eagle. The number of bald eagles is slowly increasing. It now appears that the American national bird will survive.

1. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. In 1972 there were only 3,000 bald eagles in the entire United States.

- a. whole b. central c. western

2. The reason for the bird's decreasing population was pollution.

- a. other animals b. dirty air and water c. people

3. The eggs have thin shells and do not hatch.

- a. open b. fly c. smash

4. Eagles lay only two or three eggs a year.

- a. eat b. produce c. deserve

5. Pesticides kill animals that attack and destroy crops.

- a. insects b. plants c. flowers

6. It now appears that the American national bird will survive.

- a. die
- b. fly away
- c live

2. Find the correct answers from the text.

1. Why was the bald eagle chosen as the symbol of the United States?

- a. It was the cause of the American independence.
- b. It began to disappear.
- c American leaders chose it because it is a bird of strength and courage, and it was found all over North America.

2. Why has the bald eagle almost disappeared from the country?

- a. Because in 1972 there were only 3,000 bald eagles in the entire United States.
- b. The bald eagle has almost disappeared from the country because of pollution.
- c The eggs have very thin shells and do not hatch.

3. Find wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

- 1. The United States won its independence after 1782.
- 2. American leaders wanted the eagle to be a sample of their country.
- 3. They chose the bald eagle because it was found all over South America.
- 4. Today, a little over 200 years late, the bald eagle has almost disappeared.
- 5. In 1972 there were only 30,000 bald eagles.
- 6. Unfortunately, rain often washes crops into rivers.
- 7. The eagles have very thin shells and do not hatch.
- 8. Today, the American government and the American people are trying to pollute the bald eagle.

4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Today, the flag, called Old Glory or the Stars and Stripes is widely seen in the US. (The second one.) Government offices and schools have flags flying from flagpoles, and many people have flags outside their houses especially on Independence Day.

Interpretation.....

.

Children start the school day by saying the Pledge of Allegiance, a promise to be loyal to the flag and to their country. When somebody important dies, flags are flown at half mast.

Interpretation.....

When a soldier dies his or her coffin is covered with the flag is given to the family. Each of the US states also has its own flag. State flags may show the state flower or bird, or other emblem. You can find the information about this at the end of this book.

Interpretation.....

....

Answers to the tasks:

1)1.a, 2.b, 3.a ,4.b , 5.b, 6.c

2) 1.c,2.b

3) 1. after/before 2. sample/symbol 3. South/North 4. late/later

5. 30,000/3,000 6. crops/pesticides 7. eagles/eggs 8. pollute/protect

WRITING

Ex. 1.Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

Economy of the United States

The economy of the United States is the world's largest national economy and the world's second largest overall economy, the GDP(gross domestic product) of the EU being approximately \$2 trillion larger. Its nominal GDP was estimated to be over \$15 trillion in 2011, approximately a quarter of nominal global GDP. Its GDP at purchasing power parity is the largest in the world, approximately a fifth of global GDP at purchasing power parity. The U.S. economy also maintains a very high level of output. The U.S. is one of the world's wealthiest nations with per capita GDP (PPP) of \$48,328 (2011), the 6th highest in the world. The U.S. is the largest trading nation in the world. Its four largest export trading partners are as of 2011: Canada, China, Mexico and Japan.

The economy of the United States is a mixed economy and has maintained a stable overall GDP growth rate, a moderate unemployment rate, and high levels of research and capital investment. It has been the world's largest national economy (not including colonial empires) since at least the 1890s. As of 2012, the country remains the world's largest manufacturer, representing a fifth of the global manufacturing output. Of the world's 500 largest companies, 133 are headquartered in the United States. This is twice the total of any other country. The labor market in the United States has attracted immigrants from all over the world and its net migration rate is among the highest in the world. The U.S. is one of the top-performing economies in studies such as the Ease of Doing Business Index, the Global Competitiveness Report, and others. The United States is ranked first globally in the IT industry competitiveness index.

Ex. 2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

The United States has a capitalist mixed economy, which is fueled by abundant natural resources, a well-developed infrastructure, and high productivity. According to the International Monetary Fund, the U.S. GDP of \$15 trillion constitutes 23% of the gross world product at market exchange rates and over 20% of the gross world product at purchasing power parity (PPP). Though larger than any other nations, its national GDP is about 5% smaller than the GDP of the European Union at PPP in 2008. The country ranks ninth in the world in nominal GDP per capita and sixth in GDP per capita at PPP. The U.S. dollar is the world's primary reserve currency.

The United States is the largest importer of goods and third largest exporter, though exports per capita are relatively low. In 2008, the total U.S. trade deficit was \$696 billion. Canada, China, Mexico, Japan, and Germany are its top trading partners. In 2007, vehicles constituted both the leading import and leading export commodity. China is the largest foreign holder of U.S. public debt.

In 2009, the private sector was estimated to constitute 55.3% of the economy, with federal government activity accounting for 24.1% and state and local government activity (including federal transfers) the remaining 20.6%. While its economy has reached a postindustrial level of development and its service sector constitutes 67.8% of GDP, the United States remains an industrial power. The leading business field by gross business receipts is wholesale and retail trade; by net income it is manufacturing. Chemical products are the leading manufacturing field. The United States is the third largest producer of oil in the world, as well as its largest importer. It is the world's number one producer of electrical and nuclear energy, as well as liquid natural gas, sulfur, phosphates, and salt. While agriculture accounts for just under 1% of GDP, the United States is the

world's top producer of corn and soybeans. Coca-Cola and McDonald's are the two most recognized brands in the world.

SPEAKING

Ex.1. Retell the following text in your own words.

In August 2010, the American labor force comprised 154.1 million people. With 21.2 million people, government is the leading field of employment. The largest private employment sector is health care and social assistance, with 16.4 million people. About 12% of workers are unionized, compared to 30% in Western Europe. The World Bank ranks the United States first in the ease of hiring and firing workers. In 2009, the United States had the third highest labor productivity per person in the world, behind Luxembourg and Norway. It was fourth in productivity per hour, behind those two countries and the Netherlands. Compared to Europe, U.S. property and corporate income tax rates are generally higher, while labor and, particularly, consumption tax rates are lower.

The U.S. welfare state is one of the least extensive in the developed world, reducing both relative poverty and absolute poverty by considerably less than the mean for rich nations, though combined private and public social expenditures per capita are relatively high. While the American welfare state effectively reduces poverty among the elderly, it provides relatively little assistance to the young. A 2007 UNICEF study of children's well-being in twenty-one industrialized nations ranked the United States next to last.

Ex.2. Retell the following text in your own words.

The very dense soil of the Midwest plagued the first settlers who were using wooden plows, which were more suitable for loose forest soil. On the prairie, the plows bounced around and the soil stuck to them. This problem was solved in 1837 by an Illinois blacksmith named John Deere who developed a steel moldboard plow that was stronger and cut the roots, making the fertile soils of the prairie ready for farming.

The tall grass prairie has been converted into one of the most intensive crop producing areas in North America. Less than one tenth of one percent (<0.09%) of the original land cover of the tall grass prairie biome remains. States formerly with land cover in native tall grass prairie such as Iowa, Illinois, Minnesota, Wisconsin, Nebraska, and Missouri have become valued for their highly productive soils and are included in the Corn Belt. As an example of this land use intensity, Illinois and Iowa rank 49th and 50th out of 50 states in total uncultivated land remaining.

The region's fertile soil combined with the steel plow has made it possible for farmers to produce abundant harvests of cereal crops, such as corn, wheat, and oats. The region was soon known as the nation's "breadbasket."

Agriculture is limited by the area's rocky soil and cooler climate. Some New England states, however, are ranked highly among U.S. states for particular areas of production. Maine is ranked ninth for aquaculture, and has abundant potato fields in its northeast part. Vermont fifteenth for dairy products, and Connecticut and Massachusetts seventh and eleventh for tobacco, respectively. Cranberries are grown in Massachusetts' Cape Cod-Plymouth-South Shore area, and blueberries in Maine.

References:

output – mahsulot, ishlab chiqarish, (продукция, выпуск)

maintain – qo'llab-quvvatlash, (поддерживать)

currency – tarqalganlik, yoyilganlik, valyuta, (денежное обращение, деньги, валюта)

consumption – iste'mol qilish (потребление)

reduce – qisqartirmoq, kamaytirmoq, (уменьшать, сокращать)

shipment – yuk ortish, jo'natish, (груз, перевозка, отправка)

Exercise 3. Read the text aloud and condense it i.e. , say the same thing in fewer words, retaining the same meaning and analyze the outcome critically with the group students.

Between 1947 and 1979, real median income rose by over 80% for all classes, with the incomes of poor Americans rising faster than those of the rich. Since 1980, the United States has witnessed strong increases in productivity, low unemployment, and low inflation. However, income gains since 1980 have been slower than in previous decades, less widely shared, and accompanied by increased economic insecurity. Median household income has increased for all classes since 1980, largely owing to more dual-earner households, the closing of the gender gap, and longer work hours, but growth has been slower and strongly tilted toward the very top (see graph).

Consequently, the share of income of the top 1%—21.8% of total reported income in 2005—has more than doubled since 1980, leaving the United States with the greatest income inequality among developed nations. The top 1% pays 27.6% of all federal taxes, while the top 10% pays 54.7%. Wealth, like income, is highly concentrated: The richest 10% of the adult population possesses 69.8% of the country's household wealth, the second-highest share among developed nations. The top 1% possesses 33.4% of net wealth. In 2010 the United Nations Development Programme ranked the United States 12th among 139 countries on its inequality-adjusted human development index (IHDI), eight places lower than in the standard HDI.

Exercise 4. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

The United States imposes tariffs or customs duties on imports of goods. The duty is levied at the time of import and is paid by the importer of record. Customs duties vary by country of origin and product. Goods from many countries are exempt from duty under various trade agreements. Certain types of goods are exempt from duty regardless of source. Customs rules differ from other import restrictions. Failure to properly comply with customs rules can result in seizure of goods and criminal penalties against involved parties. United States Customs and Border Protection (“CBP”) enforces customs rules.

Exercise 5. Analyze the content of the text and practice picking out the main points.

Import of goods

Goods may be imported to the United States subject to import restrictions. Importers of goods may be subject to tax (“customs duty” or “tariff”) on the imported value of the goods. “Imported goods are not legally entered until after the shipment has arrived within the port of entry, delivery of the merchandise has been authorized by CBP, and estimated duties have been paid.”– Importation and declaration and payment of customs duties is done by the importer of record, which may be the owner of the goods, the purchaser, or a licensed customs broker. Goods may be stored in a bonded warehouse or a Foreign-Trade Zone in the United States for up to five years without payment of duties. Goods must be declared for entry into the U.S. within 15 days of arrival or prior to leaving a bonded warehouse or foreign trade zone. Many importers participate in a voluntary self-assessment program with CBP. Special rules apply to goods imported by mail.

All goods imported into the United States are subject to inspection by CBP.

Some goods may be temporarily imported to the United States under a system similar to the ATA Carnet system. Examples include laptop computers used by persons traveling in the U.S. and samples used by salesmen.

Exercise 6. Find sentences with the following words and phrases in the text and translate them into your mother tongue:

high level of output, in a bonded warehouse, shipment, affluent, export commodity, merchandise, self-assessment program, gender gap, sulfur, phosphates

Exercise 7. Use Role play. One reads , another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

About 60% of the global currency reserves have been invested in the United States dollar, while 24% have been invested in the euro. The country is one of the world's largest and most influential financial markets. The New York Stock Exchange (formally known as NYSE Euro next) is the world's largest stock exchange by market capitalization. Foreign investments made in the United States total almost \$2.4 trillion, which is more than twice that of any other country. American investments in foreign countries total over \$3.3 trillion, which is almost twice that of any other country. Total public and private debt was \$50.2 trillion at the end of the first quarter of 2010, or 3.5 times GDP.

In October 2012, the proportion of public debt was about 1.0043 times the GDP. Domestic financial assets totaled \$131 trillion and domestic financial liabilities totaled \$106 trillion. As of 2010, the European Union as a whole was the largest trading partner of the U.S., whereas Canada, China, and Mexico were the largest individual trading nations. The US economy is orderly reviewed with comprehensive economic data analysis by the Beige Book of the Federal Reserve System, the Bureau of Economic Analysis of the Department of Commerce, the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the United States Department of Labor and economic indicators of the United States Census

Exercise 8. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answer them.

According to the United States Census Bureau, the pretax median household income in 2007 was \$49,777. The median ranged from \$65,469 among Asian American households to \$32,584 among African American households. Using purchasing power parity exchange rates, the overall median is similar to the most affluent cluster of developed nations. After declining sharply during the middle of the 20th century, poverty rates have plateaued since the early 1970s, with 11–15% of Americans below the poverty line every year, and 58.5% spending at least one year in poverty between the ages of 25 and 75. In 2009, 43.6 million Americans lived in poverty.

Exercise 9. Listen to the retelling of the text of one student and analyze the outcome critically with the group students

Mountains

The Rocky Mountain region is the highest region of the United States by average elevation. The Rocky Mountains generally contain fairly mild slopes and wider peaks compared to some of the other great mountain ranges, with a few exceptions (such as the Teton Mountains in Wyoming and the Sawatch Range in Colorado). The highest peaks of the Rockies are found in Colorado, the tallest peak being Mount Elbert at 14,440 ft (4,400 m). The Rocky Mountains contain some of the most spectacular, and well known scenery in the world. In addition, instead of being one generally continuous and solid mountain range, it is broken up into a number of smaller, intermittent mountain ranges, forming a large series of basins and valleys.

West of the Rocky Mountains lies the Intermontane Plateaus (also known as the Intermountain West), a large, arid desert lying between the Rockies and the Cascades and Sierra Nevada ranges. The large southern portion, known as the Great Basin, consists of salt flats, drainage basins, and many small north-south mountain ranges. The Southwest is predominantly a low-lying desert region. A portion known as the Colorado Plateau, centered around the Four Corners region, is considered to have some of the most spectacular scenery in the world. It is accentuated in such national parks as Grand Canyon, Arches, Mesa Verde National Park and Bryce Canyon, among others.

Self-Work

References:

tundra – n. tundra (mayda o'simliklar bilan qoplangan, qutb doirasi yaqinidagi keng dashtlik), (тундра)

spot – n. joy, (место)

tornado – tornado (Shimoliy Afrikada quyunning nomi), dovul, (взрыв, вихрь)

suburban – shahar tashqarisidagi (пригородный)

archipelago – arxipelog, tizma orollar (архипелог)

quantity – miqdor, kattalik (количество)

taiga – n. taiga (Yevropa va Osiyo qit'alarining shimolidagi g'oyat zich to'qayzorlar), (тайга)

spruce – n. qoraqarag'ay, (ель)

fir – archa, (ель)

pine – n. qarag'ay, (сосна)

beech – qoraqayin, (бук)

sycamore – 1) oq zarang; 2) chinor, (платан, чинар)

Ex. 1. Find answers to the following questions in the text:

1. What is the territory of the USA? (Borders of the USA.)
2. What is the climate of the USA?
3. Name the major rivers and lakes of the USA.
4. What can you say about the major metropolitan areas of the USA?
5. What is the population of the USA?
6. Speak about flora and fauna of the USA.

Ex. 2. Translate the text into your mother-tongue

Resources and Environmental Protection

The United States is exceedingly rich in natural resources. The country's climate is favorable for a diversity of crops and forest products. The Corn Belt, a region stretching from western Ohio to central Nebraska, is the largest expanse of prime farmland in the world. Significant deposits of many important minerals, including more than a fifth of the world's coal, are present within the country's borders. Despite this wealth, the United States cannot produce all the resources needed by its large industrial economy. The country imports more than 80 percent of its asbestos, chromium, cobalt, magnesium, platinum, tin, and tungsten. The United States now produces about 65 percent of its petroleum needs, but new domestic discoveries tend to be small and costly to recover, especially in the geologically complex mountain regions and the deep waters of the continental shelf.

Agricultural exports have helped compensate for mineral imports, but the price is high. More than a third of the nation's topsoil has been lost to erosion. Gullies and other obvious scars common in the 1930s can now be repaired by modern heavy machinery, but soil losses caused by less noticeable sheet erosion are still high on more than half the nation's farmland. Many observers have also expressed concern about the rapid conversion of prime cropland to urban and other nonfarm uses.

Ex. 3. Make up questions on the content of the text and write the answers to them

A gradual transition to true desert vegetation is interrupted by the Rocky Mountains and other ranges, the elevation of which both increases rainfall and decreases temperature and evaporation. Trees become prominent on the lower and middle slopes. Hardy pines and junipers dominate at lower elevations, giving way to aspens, firs, and spruces at higher elevations. Still higher, the spruces and firs become stunted and widely spaced. Above this zone is treeless tundra, outwardly similar to Arctic vegetation, although the two kinds of tundra have different patterns of solar radiation, day length, and diurnal (day-to-night) temperature changes. Shrubby low-lying deserts alternate with forested (and occasionally tundra- or ice-capped) mountains across all of the Mountain states and into the Pacific states. This region is agriculturally productive only when massive investments are made in irrigation. Death Valley, which lies below sea level, is but one of the many nearly barren lowlands. Vegetation in these regions includes species such as sagebrush, juniper, rabbit brush, mesquite, creosote bush, and yucca; the cactus "forests" that form a popular image of deserts are actually found on the slopes of mountain ranges in the Mojave Desert of southern Arizona and California. On the higher but still relatively dry Colorado Plateau are found ponderosa and piñon pines.

Ex. 4 . Define the characteristics of North Carolina and Eastern Tennessee, The Gulf of Mexico coast, Southern Florida.

Still farther South, the frost-free season exceeds six months, rainfall becomes more reliable, and the forest reaches its maximum diversity. The Great Smoky Mountains National Park in western North Carolina and eastern Tennessee contains more tree species than the entire continent of Europe. The Gulf of Mexico coast is even warmer than this mountainous area, but its plains and low hills do not support as complex a forest. Moreover, the sandy soils and hot summers encourage fires, which suppress oaks and other hardwoods and favor the fast-growing pines that now represent the major forest resource of the nation. Other species found here include southern magnolia, pecan, red gum, and black gum (tupelo). A number of subtropical and tropical trees flourish in Southern Florida. Along the coast of the Gulf of Mexico, salt marshes and groves of cypress and mangrove help to armor the shore against the eroding forces of wind and water.

Ex. 5. Find sentences with the following words and phrases in the text and translate them into your mother tongue:

to land, a variety of coasts, sandy plains, rocky cliffs, rolling hills, fertile valleys, mountain, slope, prairie, grains, fruit trees, vegetables, corn, potato, bean, squash, pumpkin, continental shelf, carnivore.

Ex. 6. Jokes, Laughs, Smiles

* * *

'The harder it rains, the better I like it'. 'You must be an optimist'.
'No, I am an umbrella seller.'

A sentimental lady on an excursion in a forest stopped before a big tree.

'O, wonderful elm,' she said, 'if you could only speak, what would you say to me?'

The man accompanying her said: 'It would probably say, 'Excuse me, but I'm an oak.'

UNIT 2. The History of the USA

READING

Ex. 1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Glimpses of the History of America

The discovery of Greenland took place in 982 and this is the first data in American history. Norsemen crossed the Atlantic Ocean from Greenland to the West. But their discoveries in these cold and wild regions were transitory. Leif Ericson in 1003 sailed to the South shore of the land known now as a New England and encamped there. They find there grapes and Leif called the place Vinland.

The well-known Uzbek encyclopedic scientist Abu Raykhan Beruniy who lived in the 11th century wrote in his book "India" that there was a new land to the West. He meant that the new world was the American Continent. Therefore we must note that he was the first man who discovered the American Continent theoretically.

In five hundred years later in the 15th century Christopher Columbus's visit to the new world was the demonstration of Abu Raykhan Beruniy's theory.. At the age of 14 Christopher Columbus went to sea. He was a red haired, sun burnt boy

with bright blue eyes. In 1474 he left for Portugal. He explained that there was an unknown land to the West. But the king and the queen doubted and did not believe in him. He had to wait for 11 years to get the permission. His friends believed in his scheme and they persuaded the queen. On August 3, 1492 three ships sailed from Spain. On the 11th of October they saw a light glimmering in the distance. It was an island which later was called San Salvador. Columbus thought he had discovered a new way to India but he never knew that he had discovered a new continent.

His next two voyages were very hard and ruined his health. Columbus died on the 21 of May in 1506.

Another man gave the name to the new world that Columbus had found. He was Amerigo Vespucci who made several voyages to the West. Amerigo Vespucci and his men explored the coast of South America and discovered the Bay of Rio de Janeiro. They named the place after the month in which they had found the bay. In one of his letters to his friend Amerigo wrote that the new land he had seen must be a new world. After the publication of those letters the new land was named after him – Amerigo, the land of Amerigo.

The people of Britain did not like their king James I. they called him the foolish king of England. Many of them even left England went to live in other countries.

The first 102 colonists from England to North America were carried in the vessel called Mayflower. Among them there were 35 pilgrims. The Mayflower left England in August 1620. They reached the coast which is known now under the name of Plymouth. When the Mayflower came to America the people began to build a village. By January 1621 there were already two streets in their village and they called it “New Plymouth”. The Indians helped the white men how to plant corn. Indians called the Englishmen Yankees since that time. Yankee has been the name of a white man in America.

There were English, Spanish, French colonies in North America in the 16th and 17th centuries.

Eskimos lived along the Arctic coast and were busy with hunting. Indians lived in the North – West and they were engaging in fishing. They were busy with agriculture. In the 16th century there were approximately about 1 million Indians in the USA.

In the 17th century colonization began. People came from Spain, France, Holland, Sweden, and England. In the 18th century the Russian discovered Alaska. At the beginning of the 19th century Russian settlements appeared in California. England extended its territories. After seven years war with France in 1756 – 1763 England seized Canada and west Louisiana. At that time white and black slavery was there. Indians were turned into slaves. Cotton manufactures began to develop. Contradictions between American farmers and feudal slave – owning landlords often led to armed conflicts. The colonies became stronger and richer.

5. Find the right information given in the text.

	was a teacher
Christopher Columbus	was the founder of America
	was the king of Colombia

6. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. America was rediscovered some ... years later.
2. ... died on the 21 of May in 1506.
3. Eskimos lived along the ... and were busy with hunting.
4. In the 17th century ... began

7. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. They were busy with dancing.
2. Among them there were 55 pilgrims.
3. In the 18th century the British discovered Alaska.
4. In the 17th century there were approximately about 1 million Indians in the USA.

8. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. The discovery of Greenland took place in 982 and this is the first data in American history.
 - a) the act of finding
 - b) the act of sailing
 - c) collecting
2. But the king and the queen doubted and did not believe in him.

- a) to think that something is probably not true
 - b) exactly right
 - c) to struggle
3. On the 11th of October they saw a light glimmering in the distance.
- a) gloomy
 - b) a soft weak light
 - c) darkness
4. Contradictions between American farmers and feudal slave – owning landlords often led to armed conflicts.
- a) agreement
 - b) forced to
 - c) angry disagreement between people

Answers:

- 1) Christopher Columbus was the founder of America
- 2) 1. five hundred, 2. Columbus, 3. Arctic coast, 4. Colonization
- 3) 1. dancing/agriculture, 2. 35/55, 3. Russian/British, 4. 16th/17th
- 4) 1.a 2.a 3.b 4.c

Ex. 2. Read the following text and do the tests below.

There were anti – colonial uprisings in 1676 – 1689 in New York, in Virginia. The North American nation was formed. The taxes of the British Parliament were high. The colonial merchants and industrial bourgeoisie refused to pay the taxes. That was a revolt.

The war of independence (1775 - 1783) was the first bourgeoisie revolution on the American continent. It was a national liberation movement, anti-feudal. It was led by bourgeoisie. On July 4, 1776 the Declaration of Independence was proclaimed. It was signed by Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson who later became the third president of the USA.

In 1783 Great Britain recognized the USA's independence. The constitution was proclaimed in 1787. There were 13 states at that time (the states of New England, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Jersey, New York, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina,

South Carolina and Georgia). The first president of the United States was George Washington. He was the Commander in chief of the American troops.

The USA began a nation of 13 states. These were the colonies which had broken away from Great Britain in 1776 and fought a six year war for independence the original colonies were then located in the area today occupied in 16 states and 34 other states were admitted to the Union one by one.

Civil war (1861-1865). There was war between North and South and threatened to Union North Carolina declared an independent nation Florida, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi and Texas followed its lead in famous 1861 on February 8 congress of the delegates formed the Confederate States of America. Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated president of the US. In 1861 in early April Civil War began. Abraham Lincoln fought for the abolition of slavery. After Abraham Lincoln won the 1860 election, eleven Southern states seceded from the union between late 1860 and 1861, establishing a new government, the Confederate States of America, on February 8, 1861. Along with the northwestern portion of Virginia, which became West Virginia, four of the five northernmost "slave states" did not secede and became known as the Border States.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

	the third bourgeoisie revolution in the American
The war of independence was	the first bourgeoisie revolution in the American
	the second bourgeoisie revolution in the American

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. The ... American nation was formed.
2. It was a national liberation movement,
3. On ... the Declaration of Independence was proclaimed.
4. The first president of the United States was

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. The US began a nation of 15 states.
2. In 1785 Great Britain recognized the USA's independence.
3. Abraham Lincoln won the 1860 election.
4. He was the Commander on chief of the American troops.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. That was a revolt.
 - a) an attempt to remove the government of a country by using force
 - b) a union
 - c) a situation in which people completely change their government

2. The colonial merchants and industrial bourgeoisie refused to pay the taxes.
 - a) the lower class
 - b) the middle class
 - c) the upper class
3. Abraham Lincoln fought for the abolition of slavery.
 - a) the official end to a law or system
 - b) the official beginning to a law or system
 - c) the middle class
4. Eleven Southern states seceded from the union between late 1860 and 1861
 - a) united
 - b) separated
 - c) proclaimed

Answers:

- 1) The war of independence was the first bourgeoisie revolution in the American
- 2) 1. North, 2. anti-feudal, 3. July 4, 1776, 4. George Washington
- 3) 1. 15/13, 2. 1785/1783, 3. 1865/1860, 4. on/in
- 4) 1.a 2.b 3.a 4.b

Listening

Ex. 1. Listen to the following text through headphones and do the tests below.

Reconstruction took place for most of the decade following the Civil War. During this era, the "Reconstruction Amendments" were passed to expand civil rights for black Americans. Those amendments included the Thirteenth Amendment, which outlawed slavery, the Fourteenth Amendment that guaranteed citizenship for all people born or naturalized within U.S. territory, and the Fifteenth Amendment that granted the vote for all men regardless of race. While the Civil Rights Act of 1875 forbade discrimination in the service of public facilities, the Black Codes denied blacks privileges readily available to whites.

In response to Reconstruction, the Ku Klux Klan (KKK) emerged around the late 1860s as a white-supremacist organization opposed to black civil rights. Congress passed the Ku Klux Klan Act of 1870 and vigorous enforcement closed down the Klan and classified the KKK as a terrorist group. However, an 1883 Supreme Court decision nullified the Civil Rights Act of 1875 and ended federal efforts to stop private acts of violence designed to suppress legal rights.

During the era, many regions of the southern U.S. were military-governed and often corrupt; Reconstruction ended after the disputed 1876 election between Republican candidate Rutherford B. Hayes and Democratic candidate Samuel J.

Tilden. Hayes won the election, and the South soon re-entered the national political scene.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) In 1883 Supreme Court decision nullified the Civil Rights Act.
- b) In response to Reconstruction, the Ku Klux Klan (KKK) emerged around the late 1870s
- c) Hayes won the election, and the North soon re-entered the national political scene.

2. Complete the sentences.

- 1. Reconstruction ... for most of the decade following the Civil War.
- 2. While the Civil Rights Act of ... forbade discrimination in the service of public facilities.
- 3. Congress passed the Ku Klux Klan Act of 1870 and vigorous enforcement closed down the Klan and classified the KKK as a ... group.
- 4. During the era, many regions of the southern U.S. were military-governed and often

Ex. 2. Listen to the text and do the exercises below

The Statue of Liberty

One of the most famous statues in the world stands on an island in New York Harbor. This statue is, of course, the Statue of Liberty. The Statue of liberty is a woman who holds a torch up high. She symbolizes a welcome to a land of freedom. Visitors can go inside the statue. The statue is so large I hat as many as twelve people can stand inside the torch. Many more people i an stand in other parts of the statue. The statue weighs 225 tons and is 301 Fee1 tall.

The Statue of Liberty was put up in 1886. It was a gift to the United States from the people of France. Over the years France and the United States had a special relationship. In 1776 France helped the American colonies gain independence from England. The French wanted to do something special for the U.S. centennial, its 100th birthday.

Laboulaye was a well-known Frenchman who admired the U.S. One night at a dinner in his house, Laboulaye talked about the idea of a gift. Among guests was the French sculptor Frederic Augusto Bartholdi. Bartholdi thought of a statue of liberty. He offered to design the statue.

Many people contributed in some way. The French people gave money for the statue. Americans designed and built the pedestal for the statue to land on. The American people raised money to pay for the pedestal. Then French engineer Alexander Eiffel, who was famous for his Eiffel Tower in Paris, figured out how to make the heavy statue stand.

I. Complete the sentences

1. The people of France wanted to give the United States a special _____.
a. gift b. torch c. woman
2. _____ France and the United States had a special _____.
a. independence b. relationship c. feeling
3. France helped the American colonies _____ independence.
a. build b. gain c. protect
4. A famous Frenchman, Laboulaye, _____ the United States.
a. admired b. visited c. designed
5. Frederic Bartholdi _____ to design the statue.
a. contributed b. offered c. ordered
6. The Statue of Liberty stands on a _____.
a. building b. harbor c. pedestal

II. Complete the sentences

1. The Statue of Liberty is a famous statue in _____.
a. France b. the United States
2. _____ The Statue of Liberty was a gift _____.
a. from the people of France to the United States
b. from Laboulaye and Eiffel to the United States
3. _____ The Statue of Liberty symbolizes _____.
a. a woman with a torch b. a land of freedom

III. Find the information which is not found in the text

1. Twelve people can stand inside the torch of the Statue of Liberty.

2. The United States helped France gain its independence in 1776.
3. Alexander Eiffel was among the guests at Laboulaye's house.
4. Frederic Augusto Bartholdi was a French engineer.
5. Alexander Eiffel figured out how to make the statue stand.
6. Americans designed the pedestal for the statue.

Answers:

- I. 1.a 2.b 3.b 4.a 5.b 6.c
- II. 1.b 2.a 3.b

3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The story of the Native American or American Indian is one that is unique, tragic and ultimately inspiring. It is unique because the Indians were the original inhabitants of the American continent and experienced every phase of its European settlement, from the earliest 17th century colonies to the closing of the western frontier at the end of the 19th century. It is tragic because the conflict between the Indians and whites paralleled the experience of traditional peoples throughout the world who have come in contact with expanding, industrialized societies. It is an inspiring story because the Native Americans although dispossessed of much of their land in the 19th century, have survived, have asserted their political and economic rights, and have succeeded in retaining their identity and culture despite the onslaught of modern civilization.

In the state of Wisconsin, Chippewa Indian children are using computers to learn the language of their ancestors. Says one Chippewa father: "It is important for them to learn Ojibwa in order to understand the spiritual aspects of our religion."

Today, Native Americans are full citizens of the United States who are proud to be Americans. However, they are equally proud of their own cultural heritage, and, though it is difficult in the modern world, they are trying to protect and maintain it.

Marks of that heritage can be found all over the United States. Many of the names on United States maps Massachusetts, Ohio, Michigan, Kansas, Idaho and more are Indian words. The Indians taught the Europeans how to cultivate crops such as corn,

tomatoes, potatoes and tobacco. Canoes, snowshoes and moccasins federal reservations (land set aside for their use). Together, the reservations comprise 52.4 million acres (21 million hectares) of land, or about 2.5 percent of the land area in the United States. Most reservations are located west of the Mississippi River.

In recent decades, the Native American population has been increasing steadily. Today, there are about 1.9 million Native Americans (0.8 percent of the total population of the United States), which is believed to be more than there were when the first European explorers arrived in the New World. At that time, about one million Native Americans were living in North America. These people were soon overwhelmed by a flood of European settlers. By the time of the American Revolution in 1776, there were some 4 million whites and 600,000 blacks mostly slaves living on the continent. Just 40 years later, the white population had swelled to 12.9 million and the black population to 2.5 million. In 1990 there were 251,400,000 people living in the United States.

As European civilization spread rapidly across the continent, the native population declined. Disease and warfare took their toll. By 1920, the Indian population had fallen below 350,000. For a time it seemed the Indians would vanish. The transfer of land from Indian to European and later American hands was accomplished through treaties, war and coercion. It was accompanied by a long struggle between the Indian and European ways of life. In many ways, the history of the United States is the story of this struggle.

- a) The Native American
- b) About the nations of America
- c) European civilization

Answers:

- 1) In 1883 Supreme Court decision nullified the Civil Rights Act.
- 2) 1. took place, 2. 1875, 3. terrorist, 4. Corrupt
- 3) a) The Native American

Listening

Ex. 1. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Gradually, however, the status of black servants changed. Between 1640 and 1680, Virginia and the other southern colonies drifted steadily toward the establishment of a system of slave labor.

Most white indentured servants had a set term of servitude, and they knew it. No matter how badly they were treated, they could look forward to eventual freedom. They usually had written contracts stating when they would be free.

Blacks had no such contracts. They were brought to America by ships' captains who sold them to the highest bidder. In the early 1600s, the buyers and sellers sometimes agreed on a period of servitude for black indentured servants. That helped support the feeling that the buyers and sellers were trading in labor not people. However, the black servants had no voice in these dealings. And since the buyers wanted to get the greatest value for the price they paid, it became commonplace that black servants were indentured for life. It also became customary that the children of black indentured servants were considered to be indentured from birth to death in other words, they were held in slavery. Near the end of the 17th century, all pretenses that such a system wasn't slavery faded away.

Because blacks could be owned for life, the demand for black slaves outstripped the demand for white indentured servants. The demand for black labor on the large plantations of Maryland, Virginia and the Carolinas was great. To satisfy this demand, special ships were built to transport captive blacks directly from the west coast of Africa to the slave markets of North America. During the 18th century, the slave trade boomed. It brought death and untold suffering to millions of blacks. At the same time it made a number of people in Britain and in the British American colonies immensely wealthy.

Throughout the 18th century, an increasing number of people in Britain and North America spoke out against the slave trade. But the wealthy slave owners and slave traders had powerful friends in government and were able to defeat all attempts to end the slave trade.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) In the early 1700s, the buyers and sellers sometimes agreed on a period of servitude for black indentured servants.

- b) The demand for black labor on the large plantations of Maryland, Virginia and the Carolinas was great.
- c) Throughout the 18th century, an decreasing number of people in Britain and North America spoke out against the slave trade.

2. Complete the sentence.

- 1. Between... , Virginia and the other southern colonies drifted steadily.
- 2. In the early 1600s, the buyers and sellers sometimes agreed on a period of servitude for black
- 3. It brought death and untold suffering to millions of
- 4. During the 18th century, the slave trade

Answers:

- 1) b) The demand for black labor on the large plantations of Maryland, Virginia and the Carolinas was great.
- 2) 1. 1640 and 1680, 2. indentured servants, 3. blacks, 4. Boomed

Ex.2. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Abraham Lincoln (1809-1865)

Abraham Lincoln was the 16th President of the United States (1861-1865). He was born in Kentucky in 1809. His family was very poor. When Lincoln was a boy, he worked on his family's farm. He did not go to school. He taught himself to read and write. Later, Lincoln studied law and became a lawyer. After that, he became a politician. Everybody liked Abraham Lincoln because he was intelligent and hard-working. Lincoln was very ambitious. He wanted to be good at everything he did. He said that he wanted to win the "race of life". He was also kind and honest. People called him "Honest Abe".

Lincoln became president in 1860. In 1861, there was a war between the North and the South of the United States. The people in the South wanted a separate government from the United States. The North wanted the United States to stay together as one country. Lincoln was the leader of the North. In the war, brother killed brother. The Civil War was four years long.

The North won the Civil War. The war ended on April 9, 1865. Six days later, President Lincoln and his wife went to the theatre. Inside the theatre, a man went behind the president and shot him in the head. The man's name was John Wilkes Booth. He was a supporter of the South. Lincoln died the next morning.

He successfully led his country through its greatest internal crisis, the American Civil War, preserving the Union and ending slavery. As an outspoken opponent of the expansion of slavery in the United States, Lincoln won the Republican Party nomination in 1860 and was elected president later that year. He introduced measures that resulted in the abolition of slavery, issuing his Emancipation Proclamation in 1863 and promoting the passage of the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution. Six days after the large-scale surrender of Confederate forces under General Robert E. Lee, Lincoln became the first American president to be assassinated. He was 56 years old. His portrait appears on the United States Five-Dollar Bill.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) Lincoln studied law and became a lawyer.
- b) Lincoln became president in 1862.
- c) The South won the Civil War.

2. Complete the sentences.

- 1. His family was very
- 2. The ... wanted the United States to stay together as one country.
- 3. He was a supporter of the
- 4. Inside the theatre, a man went behind the ... and shot him in the head.

Answers:

- 1) a) Lincoln studied law and became a lawyer.
- 2) 1. poor 2. North 3. South 4. President

Ex. 3. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Theodore Roosevelt

Theodore Roosevelt was the 26th president of the United States. He was president from 1901 to 1909. He was a very intelligent man. He was also very energetic. He was a boxer, a soldier, a rancher, and an explorer.

This energetic man was not strong when he was a boy. He had some problems with his breathing. He had asthma. His father wanted him to be strong. Roosevelt learned to box and did many other sports. Soon Roosevelt became strong and energetic.

After he became president, Roosevelt kept his body strong. He even boxed in the White House. One day, another boxer hit him in the eye. After that accident, Roosevelt became blind in one eye.

Theodore Roosevelt's nickname was "Teddy". Everybody called him Teddy. When he was president, he often went hunting. One day he went hunting with some friends and saw a little bear. He did not shoot the bear. He said the bear was too small and must go free. The next day the story of the little bear was in the newspapers. The newspapers named the little bear "Teddy" after the president. Soon people called toy bears for children "teddy bears".

When he left the White House, Teddy Roosevelt went to hunt in Africa. He then went to South America to explore places that nobody knew about. Everybody loved his energy.

WRITING

Ex. 1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

World War I

As World War I raged in Europe from 1914, President Woodrow Wilson took full control of foreign policy, declaring neutrality but warning Germany that resumption unrestricted submarine warfare against American ships would mean war. Germany decided to take the risk and try to win by cutting off Britain; the U.S. declared of war in April 1917. American money, food and munitions arrived quickly, but troops had to be drafted, trained; by summer 1918 American soldiers under General John J. Pershing arrived at the rate of 10,000 a day, while Germany was unable to replace its losses. The result was Allied victory in November 1918. President Woodrow Wilson demanded Germany depose the Kaiser and accept his terms, the Fourteen Points. Wilson dominated the 1919 Paris Peace Conference but Germany was treated harshly by the Allies in the Treaty of Versailles (1919) as Wilson put all his hopes in the new League of Nations. Wilson refused to compromise with Senate Republicans over the issue of Congressional power to declare war, and the Senate rejected the Treaty and the League.

Ex. 2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790).

Benjamin Franklin was one of the Founding Fathers of the United States of America. He was a leading author, printer, satirist, political theorist, politician, scientist, inventor, civic activist, statesman, soldier, and diplomat. As a scientist, he invented the lightning rod, bifocals, the Franklin stove, a carriage odometer, and the glass harmonica. As a political writer and activist, he supported the idea of an American nation. As a diplomat during the American Revolution, he secured the French alliance that helped to make United States independence possible.

SPEAKING

Ex. 1. Retell the following text in your own words.

USA in World War II

In the Depression years the United States remained focused on domestic concerns while democracy declined across the world and many countries fell under the control of dictators. Imperial Japan asserted dominance in East Asia and in the Pacific. Nazi Germany and Fascist Italy militarized to and threatened conquests, while Britain and France attempted appeasement to avert another war in Europe. U.S. legislation in the Neutrality Acts sought to avoid foreign conflicts; however policy clashed with increasing anti-Nazi feelings following the German invasion of Poland in September 1939 that started World War II. Roosevelt positioned the U.S. as the "Arsenal of Democracy" pledging full-scale financial and munitions support for the Allies but no soldiers. Japan tried to neutralize America's power in the Pacific by attacking Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, which catalyzed American support to enter the war and seek revenge.

The main contributions of the U.S. to the Allied war effort comprised money, industrial output, food, petroleum, technological innovation, and (especially 1944-45), soldiers. Much of the focus in Washington was maximizing the economic output of the nation. The overall result was a dramatic increase in GDP, the export of vast quantities of supplies to the Allies and to American forces overseas, the end of unemployment, and a rise in civilian consumption even as 40% of the GDP went to the war effort. This was achieved by tens of millions of workers moving from low-productivity occupations to high efficiency jobs, improvements in productivity through better technology and management, and the move into the active labor force of students, retired people, housewives, and the unemployed, and an increase in hours worked. It was exhausting; leisure activities declined sharply. People tolerated the extra work because of patriotism, the pay, and the confidence it was only "for the duration" and life would return to normal as soon as the war was won. Most durable goods became unavailable, and meat, clothing, and gasoline were tightly rationed. In industrial areas housing was in short supply as people doubled up and lived in cramped quarters. Prices and wages were controlled, and

Americans saved a high portion of their incomes, which led to renewed growth after the war instead of a return to depression.

Ex. 2. Retell the following text in your own words.

The Cold War (1945–1964)

Following World War II, the United States emerged as one of the two dominant superpowers. The U.S. Senate on a bipartisan vote approved U.S. participation in the United Nations (UN), which marked a turn away from the traditional isolationism of the U.S. and toward increased international involvement.

The primary American goal of 1945–48 was to rescue Europe from the devastation of World War II and to contain the expansion of Communism, represented by the Soviet Union. The Truman Doctrine of 1947 provided military and economic aid to Greece and Turkey to counteract the threat of Communist expansion in the Balkans. In 1948, the United States replaced piecemeal financial aid programs with a comprehensive Marshall Plan, which pumped money into the economy of Western Europe, and removed trade barriers, while modernizing the managerial practices of businesses and governments. The Plan's \$13 billion budget was in the context of a U.S. GDP of \$258 billion in 1948, and was on top of \$12 billion in American aid to Europe between the end of the war and the start of the Marshall Plan. Soviet head of state Joseph Stalin prevented his satellites from participating, and from that point on Eastern Europe, with inefficient centralized economies, fell further and further behind Western Europe in terms of economic development and prosperity. In 1949, the United States, rejecting the long-standing policy of no military alliances in peacetime, formed the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) alliance, which continues into the 21st century. In response the Soviets formed the Warsaw Pact of communist states.

In August 1949 the Soviets tested their first nuclear weapon, thereby escalating the risk of warfare. Indeed, the threat of mutually assured destruction prevented both powers from going too far, and resulted in proxy wars, especially in Korea and Vietnam, in which the two sides did not directly confront each other. Within the United States, the Cold War prompted concerns about Communist influence. The unexpected leapfrogging of American technology by the Soviets in 1957 with Sputnik, the first Earth satellite, began the Space Race, won by the Americans as Apollo 11 landed astronauts on the moon in 1969. The angst about the weaknesses of American education led to large-scale federal support for science education and research.

In the decades after World War II, the United States became a global influence in economic, political, military, cultural, and technological affairs. Beginning in the 1950s, middle-class culture became obsessed with consumer goods. White Americans made up nearly 90% of the population in 1950.

In 1960, the charismatic politician John F. Kennedy was elected as the first and thus far only Roman Catholic President of the United States. The Kennedy family brought a new life and vigor to the atmosphere of the White House. His time in office was marked by such notable events as the acceleration of the United States' role in the Space Race; escalation of the American role in the Vietnam War; the Cuban missile crisis; the Bay of Pigs Invasion; the jailing of Martin Luther King, Jr. during the Birmingham campaign; and the appointment of his brother Robert F. Kennedy to his Cabinet as Attorney General. Kennedy was assassinated in Dallas, Texas, on November 22, 1963, leaving the nation in profound shock.

Ex.3. Translate the text consecutively.

Christopher Columbus, as well as some learned men of his time, had decided that the eastern coast of Asia could be reached by sailing westward across the Atlantic. Columbus thought, also, that Asia was no farther from Europe on the west than we know now America to be. He thought the East Indies were directly west from the Canary Islands. In these far-away lands men thought they should find honour, wealth, and fame.

Interpreter

Such an enterprise would require the equipment of vessels at much expense. Money and influence were essential. Columbus had neither. He sent his brother to England and to France.

Interpreter.....

Then went to Spain again. Finally, after seven years of waiting, Columbus found success. Isabella, Queen of Spain, agreed to aid him in carrying out his plans. Three small vessels, only one of which had a dick, were fitted out. The largest of these, the Santa Maria, was commanded by Columbus.

Interpreter

The others were the Nina and the Pinto. Before sunrise, August 3,1492, this little fleet, with one hundred and twenty men and provisions for a year, sailed out of the port Palos.

Interpreter.....

At last, after a voyage of ten weeks, land was is covered on October 12, 1492. Columbus had discovered one of the Bahama Islands which he called San Salvador. He coasted along the shores of Cuba and Haiti.

SELF-WORK

Ex. 1. Read the text and answer the questions below.

Columbus didn't find the cities of Asia as he had expected, but he had no doubt that he was in the East India and therefore called the natives Indians.

When Columbus returned to Spain with the news of his discovery the people were enthusiastic with delight. Men were now eager to go here they expected to find all kinds of wealth. Four voyages were made in all, but when adventurers reached the land of their hopes and found no silks, no spices, no precious stones, no gold, they reproached Columbus. The Court of Spain, also, finding no return for the great expense of fitting out these expeditions, censured him. His enemies increased, and his last days were spent in disappointment and neglect. Heart-broken, he died ignorant of the greatness of his own discovery.

1. Why did Columbus call the natives Indians?
2. With what news did Columbus return to Spain?
3. What did Columbus find when he reached the land of their hopes?
4. Why did the Court of Spain find no return for the great expense of fitting out these expeditions and censure him?
5. Why did he die ignorant of the greatness of his own discovery?

Ex.2. Read and retell the text

Amerigo Vespucci, a native of Florence and a navigator, was first employed by Spain and later by Portugal, to make explorations. In 1499 he skirted the coast of Venezuela and northeastern South America. During the next four years he made several voyages to Brazil, and explored its coasts as far south as the mouth of the La Plata River. On returning to Europe he wrote a good description of what he had seen. This was published in 1504, and constituted the first printed account of the mainland of the New World. Up to that time Europe, Asia and Africa were known as the three parts of the world, and one distinguished geographer believed there was an unknown southern continent which constituted the fourth part.

It now seemed clear that Amerigo Vespucci proved the existence of the fourth part. In consequence of this belief a German professor, who printed a little treatise on geography a few years later, suggested that the fourth part should be

called America, after Amerigo Vespucci. According to this suggestion the name America, and later still to the whole of the New World.

Ex. 3. Add your own information which you have read to the text

The English had visited America at different times. But they had never stayed very long. John Cabot came to Newfoundland in 1498. In 1577 Sir Francis Drake sailed along the western coast of America on his voyage around the world . In 1583 a few men with Ser Humphrey Gilbert tried to settle in Newfoundland, but they found it too cold. Soon after Gilbert's visit, Sir Walter Raleigh, another Englishman, thought of sending ships to the New World. The first people came over in 1585. They named the land Virginia. A second company came a little later. Neither was successful.

In the year 1606, some English people decided they did not like the way their king, James the first, was treating them. They formed a group which they called the London Company, and made plans to sail for America. King James gave the company a charter, on the right to build a colony in the new land. The London Company sent three ships to America. For weeks the little boats were tossed about like corks upon the ocean. Then, in April, 1607, the people saw the green shores of Chesapeake Bay. The ships sailed up the river, which the colonists named the James in honor of their king. About thirty miles up the James, the party landed. A fort and a few log houses were built, and the settlement was named Jamestown.

Life was very hard in the little colony. Nearly all of the men had come from the rich or well-to-do families in England, They had never had to work. These people believed the stories of the riches which, they had been told, lay every where in the New World. The Indians gave them some corn, but the colonists never had enough food. Many people died. But in 1610 ships and food came from England and Jamestown was sav

UNIT 3. State System of the USA

READING

Ex. 1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

Like the federal government, state governments have three branches: executive, legislative, and judicial. In the United States each of 50 states has its own government. The seat of the central (federal) government is Washington DC. States governments have the power to make laws on all subjects in the U.S. Constitution. These include education, family law, contract law, and most crimes. Unlike the federal government, which only has those powers granted in the Constitution a state government has inherent powers allowing it to act unless limited by a provision of the state or national constitution.



There are 89,500 local governments, including 3,033 counties, 19,492 municipalities, 16,500 townships, 13,000 school districts, and 37,000 other special districts that deal with issues like fire protection. Local governments directly serve the needs of the people, providing everything from police and fire protection to sanitary codes, health regulations, education, public transportation, and housing. Typically local elections are nonpartisan local activists suspend their party affiliations when campaigning and governing.

About 28% of the people live in cities of 100,000 or more population. City governments are chartered by states, and their charters detail the objectives and powers of the municipal government. For most big cities, cooperation with both state and federal organizations is essential to meeting the needs of their residents. Types of city governments vary widely across the nation. However, almost all have a central council, elected by the voters, and an executive officer, assisted by various department heads, to manage the city's affairs.

There are three general types of city government: the mayor-council, the commission, and the council-manager. These are the pure forms; many cities have developed a combination of two or three of them.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

- three branches

State governments have:

- four branches

- five branches

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. In the United States each ... 50 states has its own government.

2. States governments have the power to make ... on all subjects in the U.S. Constitution.
3. There are ... local governments
4. For most big cities, cooperation with both state and federal organizations is ... to meeting the needs of their residents.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. The seat of the central (federal) government is Alaska.
2. These include education, family law, contract law, and much crimes.
3. About 30% of the people live in cities of 100,000 or more population.
4. These are the pure forms; many cities have developed a settlement of two or three of them.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. Like the federal government, state governments have three branches: executive, legislative, and judicial.

- a) relating to laws b) collection of laws c) leader of new organization

2. Local governments directly serve the needs of the people, providing everything from police and fire protection to sanitary codes, health regulations.

a) organization of health protection b) an official rule that controls the way things are done c) organization of leaders

3. Typically local elections are nonpartisan local activists suspend their party affiliations when campaigning and governing.

- a) foreign relations, b) officially connection c) separated part of the country

4. City governments are chartered by states, and their charters detail the objectives and powers of the municipal government.

- a) relating to a town b) near to city c) far from the city

Answers:

- 1) State governments have three branches.
- 2) 1. of 2. laws 3. 89,500 4. Essential
- 3) 1. Alaska/Washington DC 2. much/most 3. 30%/28%
4. settlement/combination
- 4) 1.a 2.b 3.b 4.a

Ex. 2. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The Constitution of the USA

The United States Constitution is the second oldest written constitution still in use by any nation in the world after the 1600 Statutes of San Marino. It holds a central place in United States law and political culture. The handwritten original document penned by Jacob Shallus is on display at the National Archives and Records Administration in Washington, D.C.

It is the basic law from which the U.S. government gets all its power. It is the law that protects those who live in the USA.

The constitution defines three branches of government. They are **the legislative** branch, which enacts (makes) laws; **the executive** branch, which enforces those laws, and **the judicial** branch, which interprets them (=decides what they mean). The separation of powers between the three branches was designed to provide a series of checks and balances, so that no branch would become too powerful. The constitution said that it was a responsibility of the US government to protect individual states. It also set a rather difficult process by which it could be amended (changed). Compared with other constitutions, the US one is brief and simple. The entire Constitution, with its amendments, is just over 7,000 words long. It does not attempt to spell out every detail of how government will operate. The Founders wisely left it to generations to work out such details in the process of actually running the government.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

- holds a central place and political culture.

The United States Constitution: - is the first oldest written constitution.

- is the law that protects.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. It is the basic law from which the U.S. government gets all its
2. The lower house, which is called the House of Representatives, has ... members.
3. The entire Constitution, with its ... , is just over 7,000 words long.
4. One representative is ... from each district.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. It is a law that protects those who live in the USA.
2. It does not attempt to spell out each detail of how government will operate.
3. All of whom are elected every three years.
4. One of the representative's major duties is to protect the interests of the people at that district.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. They are the legislative branch, which enacts laws.
a) makes b) leads c) does
2. It also set a rather difficult process by which it could be amended.
a) let b) changed c) joined
3. The executive branch, which enforces those laws.

- a) to make people obey a law b) persuade c) to sign
4. They can override the veto and the bill becomes law.
a) accept b) reject c) identify

Answers:

The United States Constitution: - is the law that protects.

- 2) 1. power 2. 435 3. amendments 4. Elected
3) 1. a/the 2. each/every 3. three/two 4. at/in
4) 1.a 2.b 3.a 4.a

Ex. 3. Read and define whether it is True, False or not stated.

Congress of the USA

In the USA the legislative branch is called Congress. It is made up of two groups of legislators - the Senate and the House of Representatives. A member of the Senate is addressed as Senator. Members of the House of Representatives are called congressmen or congresswomen from each state. The Senate has 100 members - two senators from each state. Both senators represent the entire state. Senators are elected for six year terms. Every two years, one - third of all senators face reelection.

The lower house, which is called the House of Representatives, has 435 members. All of whom are elected every two years. The number of representatives from each state is determined by that state's population. While the seven smallest states have only one representative, California, the most populous state, had 52 representatives in the 108 Congress (2002-2004). For the purpose of electing representatives, each state is divided into congressional districts. The districts within a state are about equal in population. One representative is elected from each district. One of the representative's major duties is to protect the interests of the people in that district.

The job of Congress is pass laws (Before a law is passed, it is called a bill. In order to become a law, a bill must be approved by a majority of each house of Congress and by the president. If the president vetoes (disapproves of) a bill, it can still become law if at least two-thirds of the members of each house of Congress override the veto by voting for it when it is voted on again).

When both the House of Representatives and the Senate have passed the same version of a bill they must ask for the President's approval. The President has three choices: to sign the bill, in which case the bill becomes law to do nothing, in which

case the bill becomes law after ten day; or to veto the bill and send it back to Congress without his approval. If the President vetoes a bill, it still has one more change: if two -thirds of the members of the House of Representatives and the Senate vote for the bill, they can override the veto and the bill becomes law.

1. In the USA the legislative branch is called Parliament.
2. It is made up of two groups of legislators - the Senate and the House of Representatives.
3. The House of Representatives, has 635 members.
4. California is the most populous state, it had 152 representatives in the Congress
5. The job of Congress is pass bills (Before a law is passed, it is called a law
6. The President has three choices: to sign the bill, in which case the bill becomes law to do nothing, in which case the bill becomes law after ten day; or to veto the bill and send it back to Congress without his approval.

Ex. 4. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The White House



The White House, the official home of the United States President, was not built in time for George Washington to live in it. It was begun in 1792 and was ready for its first inhabitants, President and Mrs. John Adams, in 1800. When the Adams moved in, the White House was not yet complete, and John Adams suffered many inconveniences. Thomas Jefferson, the third president, improved the comfort of the White House in many respects and added new architectural features such as the terraces on the east and west ends. When British forces burned the White House on August 24, 1814, President Madison was forced to leave, and it was not until 1817 that then President James Monroe was able to return to a rebuilt residence. Since then, the White House has been occupied by each U.S. President.

I. Find the title for the text

1. George Washington's Life in the White House
2. The Burning of the White House
3. The Early History of the White House
4. Presidential Policies of Early U.S. Presidents

2. Find an answer for this question: Why did George Washington not live in the White House?

1. It had been burned by the British.
2. He did not like the architectural features.
3. He did not want to suffer the inconvenience that the Adamses had suffered.
4. Construction had not yet been completed.

3. Complete the sentence

John Adams was...

1. The first president of the United States.
2. The second president of the United States.
3. The third president of the United States.
4. The fourth president of the United States.

4. Find an answer for this question: Which of the following best describes Thomas Jefferson's living in the White House?

1. He had to escape from the White House because of the war with the British.
2. He was accepting of the many inconveniences.
3. He removed the terraces that had been added by Adams.
4. He worked to improve the appearance and convenience of the White House.

5. Complete the sentence

When James Monroe came back to the White House, it had been...

1. repressed, 2. Reconstructed, 3. Relocated, 4. reserved.

Answers to the tasks:

- 1.-3, 2.-4, 3.-2, 4.-4, 5.-2

Listening

**Ex.1. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests
bellow.**

Political parties in the United States

The United States Constitution has always been silent on the issue of political parties; at the time it was signed in 1787, there were no parties in the nation. Nevertheless, parties soon emerged to help mobilize supporters.

Political scientists and historians have divided the development of America's two-party system into five eras. The modern two-party system consists of the Democratic Party and the Republican Party. In general, the Democratic Party currently positions itself left-of-center in American politics, supporting an American liberalism and Third Way platform, while the Republican Party positions itself as right-of-center, supporting an American conservatism and economic liberalism platform.

Several third parties also operate in the United States, and from time to time achieve relatively minor representation at the national and state levels.

The Democratic Party is one of two major political parties in the United States. It is the oldest political party in the United States and among the oldest in the world.

The Democratic Party, since the division of the Republican Party in the election of 1912, has consistently positioned itself to the left of the Republican Party in economic as well as social matters. The economically left-leaning philosophy of Franklin D. Roosevelt, which has strongly influenced American liberalism, has shaped much of the party's economic agenda since 1932. Roosevelt's New Deal coalition usually controlled the national government until the 1970s.

In 2004, it was the largest political party, with 72 million voters (42.6% of 169 million registered) claiming affiliation. The president of the United States, Barack Obama, is the 15th Democrat to hold the office, and since the 2006 midterm elections, the Democratic Party is the majority party for the United States Senate.

Former President George W. Bush is the 19th Republican to hold that office. The party's nominee for President of the United States in the 2008 presidential election was Senator John McCain of Arizona. It is currently the second largest party with 55 million registered members, encompassing roughly one third of the electorate. Since the 2010 midterm elections, the Republicans have held a majority in the United States House of Representatives.

The states compose the vast bulk of the U.S. land mass; the two other areas considered integral parts of the country are the District of Columbia, the federal district where the capital, Washington, is located; and Palmyra Atoll, an uninhabited but incorporated territory in the Pacific Ocean. The United States also

possesses five major overseas territories: Puerto Rico and the United States Virgin Islands in the Caribbean; and American Samoa, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands in the Pacific. Those born in the major territories (except for American Samoa) possess U.S. citizenship. American citizens residing in the territories have many of the same rights and responsibilities as citizens residing in the states; however, they are generally exempt from federal income tax, may not vote for president, and have only nonvoting representation in the U.S. Congress.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) America's had two-party system into five eras.
- b) America's had three-party system into four eras.
- c) America's had one-party system into five eras.

2. Complete the sentence.

- 1. The Democratic Party is one of two major ... parties in the United States.
- 2. It is the oldest political party in the United States and among the ... in the world.
- 3. Those born in the major territories possess U.S.
- 4. Since the 2010 midterm ... , the Republicans have held a majority in the United States House of Representatives.

Ex. 2. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The Republican Party is one of the two major contemporary political parties in the United States of America. It is often referred to as the Grand Old Party, GOP, and "Gallant Old Party". Founded in 1854 by anti-slavery expansion activists and modernizers, the Republican Party rose to prominence with the election of Abraham Lincoln, the first Republican president. The party presided over the American Civil War and Reconstruction but was harried by internal factions and scandals toward the end of the 19th century. Today, the Republican Party supports an American conservative platform, with further foundations in economic liberalism, fiscal conservatism, and social conservatism.

- a) The Republican Party
- b) Political parties
- c) Abraham Lincoln

Ex. 3. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

The United States is a federal union of fifty states. The original thirteen states were the successors of the thirteen colonies that rebelled against British rule.

Interpretation.....

...

Early in the country's history, three new states were organized on territory separated from the claims of the existing states: Kentucky from Virginia; Tennessee from North Carolina; and Maine from Massachusetts.

Interpretation.....

...

Most of the other states have been carved from territories obtained through war or purchase by the U.S. government. One set of exceptions comprises Vermont, Texas, and Hawaii: each was an independent republic before joining the union.

Interpretation.....

....

During the American Civil War, West Virginia broke away from Virginia. The most recent state—Hawaii—achieved statehood on August 21, 1959. The states do not have the right to secede from the union.

Interpretation.....

.

Ex. 4. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

The Executive Body of the USA

The President is the head of state of the US and the nation's chief executive. He (the President has so far always been a man) decides US policy on foreign affairs and is the commander-in-chief of the armed forces. He can appoint heads of government departments and federal judges. Congress must ask the President to approve new laws, although it is possible to pass a law without the President approval. Each year, the president gives a *State of the Union Address* to Congress (speech of the President about his government's successes, plans and policies). The President works in what may be the most famous office in the world, the Oval Office in the White House in Washington D.C. He must see that all national laws are carried out. Of course, a very large staff of advisers and other employees assist the president. In fact, the executive branch employs almost 3 million people located all over the world.

The president also appoints ambassadors and other consular heads that represent the U.S. abroad. In addition, he appoints judges of the federal courts. The vice president is the only other elected person in the executive branch. One important constitutional duty of the person holding this office is to serve as president of the Senate. The vice president's most important function is to become president upon the death, resignation, or disability of the president.

The Constitution requires that a president should be at least 35 years old and have been born in the US. It is often said that the President is directly elected by the people, and this is true in comparison with countries like Britain where the Prime Minister is elected by Members of Parliament. In fact, although people vote for one of the candidates for President, an electoral college makes the final choice.

Americans have a lot of respect for the office of President, and they are shocked when the president is believed to have done something wrong or illegal. In such a case it is possible for Congress to impeach the President (=remove him from his job).

The most important group of advisers is called the **Cabinet**. The cabinet consists of the heads of the 14 departments that make up the executive branch of the federal government, such as the Secretaries of State, Treasury, Defence, Justice, Interior, Agriculture, Commerce, Labour, Health and Human Services, Housing and Urban Development, Transportation, Energy and Education. The State Department ranks ahead of others. The political power of the Secretary of the State is the second only to that of the president. He must maintain peace and negotiates economic and political treaties. Cabinet members are chosen by the President with the approval of the Senate.

Each president appoints the department heads, called secretaries, from his own party, and they advise him on policy. Since the Cabinet was not established by the Constitution, the President may add, remove or combine government departments, and can decide when to ask the Cabinet for advice, and whether or not to follow it.

State governments are usually organized in a similar way to the national government, and most have a cabinet.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) The President is the head of state of the US and the nation's chief executive.
- b) The Constitution requires that a president should be at least 25 years old and have been born in the US.
- c) The most important group of advisers is called the Congress.

2. Complete the sentence.

1. Of course, a very large staff of advisers and other ... assist the president.
2. The president also appoints ... and other consular heads that represent the U.S. abroad.
3. Cabinet members are chosen by the ... with the approval of the Senate.
4. Since the Cabinet was not established by the ...

Ex. 5. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

The judicial system is one of the three branches of the US federal government. But the legal system operates at many levels, since as well as federal courts there are state, county and city courts. Each type of court has its own jurisdiction, i.e. it deals with certain kinds of cases. Some courts hear only criminal cases. Other courts are for civil cases, in which two people disagree over something. Cases are first heard in trial courts. The person accused in a criminal trial, and both sides involved in a civil trial, have the right to appeal against the court's decision, and if they do the case goes to a court of appeals.

- a) The judicial system
- b) The Judicial branch of the USA
- c) Federal government

Answers: a) The President is the head of state of the US and the nation's chief executive. 1. Employees 2. Ambassadors 3. President 4. Constitution) the judicial branch of the USA

Ex.6. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Some trial courts have limited jurisdiction. Many states, for example, have family courts where people get divorced, and small claims courts, which hear cases involving small sums of money.

Interpreter.....

States have trial courts of general jurisdiction, which can hear a wider range of cases. These are often called courts of common please.

Interpreter.....

State courts of appeals are called superior courts or district courts, and most states have a supreme court. This is the highest court in the state and hears only the most serious appeals.

Interpreter.....

WRITING

Ex.1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.

The Middle Atlantic (New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Washington, DC, and Maryland). The first settlers in this region were more diverse than in the Northeast. Not only were English Protestants included, but also English Catholics, Dutch, and Swedes. Although the weather is not quite as cold, farming was still difficult, so manufacturing and shipping became the dominant industries. Some of the most highly populated American cities (including the largest, New York City) are located in the Mid Atlantic, as is the nation's capital (Washington DC). Today finance, communications, and pharmaceuticals are some of the most important industries in the region. The Mid-Atlantic region lies along the Atlantic Ocean to the south of New England. The region is also called the East Coast. The East Coast is the country's main business area. To other Americans, East Coast people seem to have a fast and aggressive lifestyle. Most of the factories produce iron, glass, and steel.



Ex. 2. Write the answers to the following themes finding from the text

The South includes Virginia, West Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana, and parts of Missouri, Texas and Oklahoma. The first southerners were English Protestants, like the northeasterners, but they were less independent and revolutionary in their nature. With temperate weather and sprawling lands, the south was very conducive to farming and soon agriculture became the primary industry. Southerners are probably the most distinctive of all American regional groups, with more relaxed attitudes and traditional ways than their neighbors to the north. They are known for their hospitality. The climate and the landscape have led this region to become popular with American tourists, and also with retirees. Today farming has become less prominent, and manufacturing and tourism have contributed greatly to the economy. The South differs from other regions of the USA. Perhaps the most difference is its geographic situation.

Because there are days are drier and sunnier than other regions. Southerners call their land as the land of yellow sunlight. The South has many poor areas. The people are traditionally very religious, and the religion is often called the Bible belt. The hot climate means that people have a slower lifestyle, so other Americans sometimes think Southerners are lazy. They also criticize the South for its past

treatment of slaves. Much has now changed, with some African Americans (state), having good jobs and with the growth of lively cities like Atlanta.

1. The South includes
2. The first southerners
3. Difference of the South from other regions of the USA
4. The hot climate of the South

Ex.3. Write expressing your attitude towards the content of the text.

The Midwest (Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Wisconsin, Illinois, Minnesota, Iowa, parts of Missouri, North Dakota, South Dakota, Kansas, Nebraska and eastern Colorado). The Midwest is the largest of the regions, with the most variation in weather. However, the land is almost entirely flat, and also very fertile, making it ideal for farming. The region is known as the nation's "breadbasket" because of its abundant production of oats, wheat, and corn. The first immigrants were Americans from the east coast, as well as Europeans from Sweden, Norway, and Germany. Midwesterners are known for being honest, straightforward people of traditional values. The area is not densely populated, with fewer big cities than its neighbors to the east. The largest city is Chicago, known for its port, and for being a connection (through railroad lines and airline hubs) between the eastern and western United States.

The Southwest (western Texas, parts of Oklahoma, New Mexico, Arizona, and Nevada). This region has had the least influence by European immigrants. Much of its culture has been defined by Native Americans (also known as American Indians) and by the Spanish (most of the Southwest previously belonged to Mexico). The land is generally flat and dry, and the weather is very hot. The region has many deserts. The nation's greatest natural wonder, the Grand Canyon, is located in this region. Also located here is Las Vegas, one of the world's premier gambling centers.

Ex. 4. Write the translation of the text in your mother-tongue.

The West includes Western Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, Utah, California, Nevada, Idaho, Oregon, Washington, Alaska, and Hawaii. The first settlers in the West were the Spanish who established Catholic missions along the coast. This region has probably the most variation in landscape and climate. Mountain chains run from north to south, creating temperate, wet areas to the west, and harsher, drier areas to the east. This region contains much undeveloped land which is enjoyed by the locals for recreation. The west has the most varied mixture of immigrants of all the other regions. In some areas, Mexican and Asian influences

are dominant over European influences. Westerners are known as the least traditional of Americans, and the most tolerant of change and differences. California is the nation's most populous state, and is famous for its movie productions.

SPEAKING

Exercise 1. Act as an interpreter

I want to speak about the duties of a Vice President

The chairman of the senate is the Vice President. Unlike the speaker, the Vice President is not a member of the chamber and sometimes he is not a member of the party in power.

Interpreter.....

The Vice President is the second-highest executive official in rank of the government. As first in the [U.S. presidential line of succession](#), the Vice President becomes President upon the death, resignation, or removal of the President, which has happened [nine times](#) in U.S. history.

Interpreter.....

Under the Constitution, the Vice President is [President of the Senate](#). By virtue of this role, he or she is the head of the Senate.

Interpreter.....

In that capacity, the Vice President is allowed to vote in the Senate, but only when necessary to [break a tie vote](#). Pursuant to the [Twelfth Amendment](#), the Vice President presides over the joint session of Congress when it convenes to count the vote of the Electoral College.

Interpreter.....

While the Vice President's only constitutionally prescribed functions, aside from presidential succession, relate to his or her role as President of the Senate, the office is now commonly viewed as a member of the executive branch of the federal government.

Interpreter.....

The U.S. Constitution does not expressly assign the office to any one branch, causing scholars to dispute whether it belongs to the executive branch, the legislative branch, or both.

Interpreter.....

EX.2.Retell the following text in your own words.

The capital of the USA

The beautiful city of Washington D.C. is the capital of the United States and the centre of its government.

The capital was named after the first president George Washington and was founded in 1790. It is situated on the Potomac River in the District of Columbia. Washington is not the largest city in the USA. It has a population only 900000.

Washington D.C. has nothing characteristically American in it, as its conception is purely French. It has long wide avenues, gardens, beautiful parks. Washington is the residence of the President and the Congress of the USA. The White House is the President's residence, the Capitol - the seat of the American Congress. The largest and the tallest among the buildings is the Capitol with its great House of Representatives and Senate Chamber. (The second picture)

There are no skyscrapers because no other building must be taller than the Capitol. All American presidents except George Washington (the White House was not yet built in his time) have lived in the White House. It was built in 1799. Washington is a large scientific and cultural centre, where there are many research institutes, five universities, the National Academy of Science and the Library of Congress.

Ex. 3. Speak on the main content of the text.

There is one more well-known building in Washington Pentagon, the residence of the US Military department. It is situated in the suburbs to the south of the Potomac Science and the Library of Congress.

The word pentagon comes from the Greek petal, which means "five". A pentagon is a figure with five sides. The Pentagon has five rings. The rings are inside each other. Each ring has five sides. How tall do you think the Pentagon is? The answer is easy. Each ring is five stories tall. The Pentagon is the largest office building in the world. It has seventeen miles of halls. People can get lost in the Pentagon. So the walls on each floor are a different color (brown, green, red, gray, and blue). This helps people to know where they are. There are also many maps in the halls.

The Pentagon is so big that it is like a city. Almost 30,000 people work there. The Pentagon has its own doctors, dentists, and nurses. It has its own banks and stores. It has a post office, a fire department, and a police department. It also has an important center for communications.

This center guards the country. It is hundreds of feet under the ground. The Pentagon even has its own radio and TV stations.

References:

bicameral – adj. ikki palatali (parlamentda), (двухпалатный)

provision – ta'minot, (снабжение)

pattern – namuna, (образец)

municipal – adj. shahar (муниципальный, городской)

non-partisan – hech bir partiyaga a'zo bo'lmagan (беспартийный)

deprive – mahrum etmoq, (лишать)

amendment – n. (xatoni) tuzatish, (исправление)

legislative – qonun chiqaruvchi organlar, (законодательный)

executive – rahbar, (руководящий)

juridical – yuridik, (юридический)

negotiate – kelishmoq, (договариваться)

tranquility – n. tinchlik, (спокойствие)

Exercise 6. Use Role play. One reads , another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

Exercise 4. Answer the following questions

1. What is the division of the US government?
2. When was the constitution of the USA adopted?
3. Name the articles of the constitution.
4. What is the legislative branch of the government of the USA?
5. What is the job of the Congress of the USA?
6. What is the executive branch of the government?
7. What is the judicial branch of the government?
8. What is the bill of the Congress?
9. Who are the members of the Cabinet?
10. What types of courts exist in the USA?

Self-Work

Exercise 1. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering

The chief executive of a state is its popularly elected governor, who typically holds office for a four-year term (although in some states the term is two years).

Except for Nebraska, which has unicameral legislature, all states have a bicameral legislature, with the upper house usually called the Senate and the lower house called the House of Representatives, the House of Delegates, Assembly or something similar. In most states, senators serve four-year terms, and members of the lower house serve two-year terms.

The constitutions of the various states differ in some details but generally follow a pattern similar to that of the federal Constitution, including a statement of the rights of the people and a plan for organizing the government. However, state constitutions are generally more detailed.

Exercise 2. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

Suffrage, commonly known as the ability to vote, has changed significantly over time. In the early years of the United States, voting was considered a matter for state governments, and was commonly restricted to white men who owned land. Direct elections were mostly held only for the U.S. House of Representatives and state legislatures, although what specific bodies were elected by the electorate varied from state to state. Under this original system, both senators representing each state in the U.S. Senate were chosen by a majority vote of the state legislature. Since the ratification of the Seventeenth Amendment in 1913, members of both houses of Congress have been directly elected. Today, U.S. citizens have almost universal suffrage from the age of 18, regardless of race, gender, or wealth. The only significant exception to this is the disenfranchisement of convicted felons, and in some states former felons as well.

Under the U.S. Constitution, the national representation of territories and the federal district of Washington, D.C., in Congress is limited: residents of the District of Columbia are subject to federal laws and federal taxes, but their only congressional representative is a non-voting delegate. Residents of U.S. territories have varying rights; for example, only some residents of Puerto Rico pay federal income taxes (though all residents must pay all other federal taxes, including import/export taxes, federal commodity taxes and federal payroll taxes, including Social Security and Medicare). All federal laws that are "not locally inapplicable" are automatically the law of the land in Puerto Rico but their current representation in the U.S. Congress is in the form of a Resident Commissioner, a nonvoting delegate.

Exercise 3. Choose the correct answers.

1) He was the first president of the USA.

a) Thomas Jefferson b) George Washington c) Abraham Lincoln

2) This president has run for three terms.

a) Franklin Delano Roosevelt b) Gerald Rudolph Ford c) John Fitzgerald Kennedy

3) He became famous for his doctrine which contains the spread of communism.

- a) Harry S. Truman b) Dwight (David) Eisenhower c) Jimmy Carter
- 4) When he was elected he was the youngest president ever elected.
- a) John Fitzgerald Kennedy b) William (Bill) Jefferson Clinton c) Theodore Roosevelt
- 5) When he was elected he was the oldest president ever elected.
- a) Ronald Wilson Reagan b) Martin van Buren c) John Adams
- 6) He fought against slavery.
- a) Lyndon Baines Johnson b) Gerald Rudolph Ford c) Abraham Lincoln
- 7) He said: Ask not what your country can do for you - ask what you can do for your country.
- a) John Fitzgerald Kennedy b) Andrew Johnson c) Thomas Jefferson
- 8) He was involved in a series of scandals known as the Watergate affair.
- a) Franklin Delano Roosevelt b) Richard Millhouse Nixon c) Harry S. Truman

References:

Aggressive – tajavvuzkor, hamla qiluvchi, (агрессивный, нападающий)

Define – aniqlamoq, belgilamoq, (определять, устанавливать)

Gamble – qimor o'ynamoq, (играть в азартные игры,)

Reminiscent – eslatish, (напоминание)

Reflect – aks ettirmoq, (отражать)

Sparse – siyrak, sochib tashlangan, (редкий, рассеянный, разбросанный)

Carve – o'yib naqsh solingan, (вырезать)

Exercise 4. Find answers to the following questions

1. How many states are there in the USA?
2. Which states belong to in the Middle Atlantic?
3. How many states are there in the Midwest?
4. How many states are there The Southwest?
5. How many states are there in the West?

Ex.5. Translate into your mother-tongue

New York

New York is one of the largest cities in the world and the biggest seaport. It's the financial capital of the country. It's the business centre of the United States. The city is situated in New York State, at the mouth of the Hudson River. Its population is over eight million. In early times the New York area was populated by Indians. It is here in Wall Street many business offices, banks and world famous New York stock exchange are situated.



New York is an industrial and cultural centre of the country. The most important branches of industry are those producing vehicles, glass, chemicals. New York is also a great cultural centre. It has many museums, art galleries, theatres, ballet. There are two world-famous streets in New York - Broadway and Fifth Avenue. Broadway is the centre of the theatres and night life. Fifth Avenue is the great shopping, hotel and club centre.

The Empire State Building is there. Its a 102-stored building was built in 1931. The Metropolitan Museum of Art is also there. It includes hundreds of world famous masterpieces and attracts many visitors.

Ex. 7. *Jokes, Laughs, Smiles*

A Strange Room

A man asked for a room at a London hotel. He was shown into a very small room. There was nothing in it. "I don't like this room," he said. "I'll not have it."

"We don't ask you to sleep here," said the porter. "This is not a bedroom. This is the lift."

* * *

The Young Composer

Once a young man asked Mozart how to write symphonies. "You are still very young. I think you must begin with writing ballads," said the great composer.

The young man said, "But you began to write symphonies when you were very young, only ten years old!"

"Yes, I did," Mozart answered, "but I asked nobody how to do it."

UNIT 4. The Customs and Traditions of the USA

READING

Ex. 1. Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

American culture is rich, complex, and unique. It emerged from the short and rapid European conquest of an enormous landmass sparsely settled by diverse indigenous peoples. Although European cultural patterns predominated, especially in language, the arts, and political institutions, peoples from Africa, Asia, and North America also contributed to American culture. All of these groups influenced popular tastes in music, dress, entertainment, and cuisine. As a result, American culture possesses an unusual mixture of patterns and forms forged from among its diverse peoples.

As a result, American culture is more often defined by its popular and democratically inclusive features, such as blockbuster movies, television comedies, sports stars, and fast food, than by its more cultivated aspects as performed in theaters, published in books, or viewed in museums and galleries. Even the fine arts in modern America often partake of the energy and forms of popular culture, and modern arts are often a product of the fusion of fine and popular arts.

While America is probably most well known for its popular arts, Americans partake in an enormous range of cultural activities. Besides being avid readers of a great variety of books and magazines catering to differing tastes and interests, Americans also attend museums, operas, and ballets in large numbers. They listen to country and classical music, jazz and folk music, as well as classic rock-and-roll and new wave. Americans attend and participate in basketball, football, baseball, and soccer games.



The earliest museums in the United States grew out of private collections, and throughout the 19th century they reflected the tastes and interests of a small group. Often these groups included individuals who cultivated a taste for the arts and for natural history, so that art museums and natural history museums often grew up side by side. American artist Charles Willson Peale established the first museum of this kind in Philadelphia in the late 18th century.

The largest and most varied collection in the United States is contained in the separate branches of the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, D.C. The Smithsonian, founded in 1846 as a research institution, developed its first museums in the 1880s. It now encompasses 16 museums devoted to various aspects of American history, as well as to artifacts of everyday life and technology, aeronautics and space, gems and geology, and natural history.

The serious public display of art began when the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City, founded in 1870, moved to its present location in Central Park in 1880. At its installation, the keynote speaker announced that the museum's goal was education, connecting the museum to other institutions with a public mission. The civic leaders, industrialists, and artists who supported the Metropolitan Museum, and their counterparts who established the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, the Art Institute of Chicago, and the Philadelphia Museum of Art, were also collectors of fine art. Their collections featured mainly works by European masters, but also Asian and American art. They often bequeathed their collections to these museums, thus shaping the museum's policies and holdings. Their taste in art helped define and develop the great collections of art in major metropolitan centers such as New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, and Boston. In several museums, such as the Metropolitan and the National Gallery of Art in Washington, D.C., collectors created institutions whose holdings challenged the cultural treasures of the great museums of Europe.

1. Find the right information given in the text.

-is rich and complex.

American culture: - is more often defined by its popular.

-possesses an usual mixture of patterns.

2. Fill in the blanks with words from the text.

1. Their ... featured mainly works by European masters, but also Asian and American art.
2. Americans attend and participate ... basketball, football, baseball, and soccer games.
3. The serious public display of art began when the Metropolitan Museum of Art in ... City.
4. American artist Charles Willson Peale established the first museum of this kind in Philadelphia in the late ... century.

3. Find the wrong word in each sentence and substitute it by correct one.

1. As a result, American culture is more often defined by its common and democratically inclusive features.
2. Even the fine arts in ancient America often partake of the energy and forms of popular culture.
3. The earliest museums in the United States grew out of public collections.
4. It now encompasses 26 museums devoted to various aspects of American history, as well as to artifacts of everyday life.

4. Find the meaning of the underlined words.

1. American culture is rich, complex, and unique.
a) unusual b) ancient c) complicated

2. They often bequeathed their collections to these museums, thus shaping the museum's policies and holdings.
 - a) to give someone money or property after you die
 - b) to persuade someone to do something
 - c) to take
3. Besides being avid readers of a great variety of books and magazines catering to differing tastes and interests.
 - a) excellent
 - b) good
 - c) very enthusiastic
4. It emerged from the short and rapid European conquest of an enormous landmass sparsely settled by diverse indigenous peoples.
 - a) stopped
 - b) ruined
 - c) to come out of something

Answers:

1) American culture is rich and complex

2) 1. collections 2. in 3. New York 4. 18th

3) 1. common/popular 2. ancient/modern 3. public/private 4. 26/16

4) 1.a 2.a 3.c 4.c

Ex. 2. Fill in the suitable words according to the meaning of words given below.

Jazz music

Americans have contributed to many art forms, but jazz, a type of music is the only art form that was created in the United States.

Jazz was created by black America in the 19th century.

Jazz is a mixture of many different kinds of music. It is a combination of the music of West Africa, the work songs the slaves sang, and religious music. Jazz bands formed in the late 1800s. They played in bars and clubs in many towns and cities of the South, especially New Orleans.

New Orleans is an international seaport, and people from all over the world come to New Orleans to hear jazz. Improvisation is an important part of jazz. This means that the musicians make the music up as they go along, or create the music on the spot. This is why a jazz song might sound a little different each time it is played.

Jazz became more and more popular. By the 1920s, jazz was popular all over the U.S. By the 1940s, you could not only hear jazz in clubs and bars, but in concert halls as well. Today, people from all over the world play jazz. Jazz musicians from the U.S., Asia, Africa, South America, and Europe meet and share

their music at festivals on every continent. In this way jazz continues to grow and change.

1. Americans were the first to perform jazz music. It was... in the United

States.

a. contributed b. created c improvised

2.Many ships come to New Orleans because it is a big... .

a. seaport b. continent c harbor

3.The black slaves sang and played the music of the place they were born. West Africa was their... .

a. combination b. homeland c nature

4.When you join with others and give ideas to create something, you... to it.

a. improvise b. contribute c arrive

5.Jazz musicians from all over the world meet at... to play and share their music.

a. festivals b. concert halls c theatres

6.Jazz musicians create music as they go along. They invent music... .

a. to grow and change b. by chance c on the spot

Ex. 3 Read the following text and do the tests bellow.

The invention of the phonograph happened quite by accident. Thonms Edison moved to Menlo Park, New Jersey, in 1876, where he established the industrial research laboratory. There Edison worked on a carbon telephone transmitter to improve the existing Bell system. In that laboratory a year later Edison invented the phonograph while trying to improve a telegraph repeater. He attached a telephone diaphragm to the needle in the telegraph repeater to produce a recording that could be played back. After some im- j provements to the machine, he recited "Mary Had a Little Lamb" and played I the recognizable reproduction of his voice back to an astonished audience. I

I.. Find the title for the text

1) Thomas Edison's Many Inventions 2) Improvements in the Telephone and Telegraph 3) The History of Menlo Park 4) A Surprise Invention

2. Complete the sentences

I. The invention of the phonograph...

1) was quite unplanned. 2) was Edison's principal project. 3) was surprising to no one. 4) took many years.

II. In what year did the invention of the phonograph occur?

1)1876, 2) 1877 ,3) 1878, 4)The article does not say.

III. Find an answer to the question: How was the phonograph made?

1.With a telephone needle and a recorder,

2.From a recording of a telegraph

3.With only a telegraph repeater

4.From a combination of telephone and telegraph parts

IV. Find an answer to the question: How did Edison test his new invention?

1. He made improvements to the machine.

2. He used a carbon transmitter.

3. He read a children's rhyme.

4. He reproduced the audience's voice.

■ *Ответы к заданиям:*

II 11.1 III.2 IV.4 V.3 VI.2

Ex. 4. Read the following text and do the tests below.

Yellowstone National Park

A national park is a large piece of land. In the park animals are free to mine and go. Trees and plants grow everywhere. People go to a national park to enjoy nature. Many people stay in campgrounds in national parks. They set up tents and cook their food over campfires. They also walk on trails or picnic in the parks. On a gate at the entrance of Yellowstone, a sign says, "For the Benefit and Enjoyment of the People".

Yellowstone is the world's oldest national park. It became a national park in 1872. It is also the world's largest park. It covers parts of the states. Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho. Yellowstone is two-and-a-half times larger than the smallest state, Rhode Island.

Yellowstone is famous for its geysers. These holes in the ground shoot hot water into the air. There are about seventy geysers in the park. The most famous is Old Faithful. About every hour Old Faithful shoots hot water hundreds of feet into the air.

Two-and-a-half million people visit this beautiful park each year. Park Rangers give information to visitors. They also take care of the park. They tell

visitors not to pick the flowers. They also tell them not to feed or hunt the animals.

I. Fill in the suitable word

1). People go to a national park to enjoy... .

a. people b. nature c animals

2). There is a sign on a .

a. visitor b. gate c house

3). The sign says, "For the _____ and Enjoyment of the People".

a. Benefit b. Information c Security

11. Yellowstone is famous for its _____ -

a. visitors b. geysers c bears

111. Park rangers of the park.

a. feed b. take care c are afraid

1V. Visitors cannot... the animals.

a. hunt b. pick c catch

V. Find the correct answer why did Yellowstone become a national park?

a. Yellowstone is the world's oldest park.

b. Yellowstone is two-and-a-half times the size of the smallest state, Rhode Island.

c. Yellowstone is famous for its natural beauty.

VI. Complete the sentences

1. Yellowstone covers parts of...
 - a. Wyoming and Montana
 - b. Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho
 - c. Rhode Island
2. Yellowstone is two-and-a-half times the size of...
 - a. Montana
 - b. Idaho
 - c. Rhode Island
3. Yellowstone has...
 - a. Twenty geysers
 - b. seventy geysers
 - c. about seventy geysers
4. Geysers shoot hot water into the...
 - a. ground
 - b. air
 - c. tree
5. The most famous geyser is...
 - a. Old Faithful
 - b. Old Hundred
 - c. Old Chap
6. Park rangers give to visitors.
 - a. flowers
 - b. information
 - c. directions

ANSWERS:

I.b. 2.b 3.a 4.b 5.b 6.a

II. .c

III. 1.b 2.c 3.c 4.b 5.a 6.b

Listening

Ex.1. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

You will notice that most Americans don't eat with a knife and fork like 'normal' people. When not eating with their hands they usually eat everything with a fork held in the right hand (unless left-handed).

Interpretation.....

If anything cannot be broken up into bite-size pieces with a fork (e.g. steak), you're permitted to use a knife, but must dispense with it afterwards (knives are generally reserved for killing people!).

Interpretation.....

.....

Even desserts are eaten with a fork, and a spoon is usually for your coffee.

Interpretation.....

Ex. 2. Listen the following text through headphones and do the tests bellow.

Christmas. Christmas is a Christian holiday commemorating the birth of Jesus Christ. Americans celebrate Christmas on December the 25th. It is usually a one - day official holiday, but it is preceded and followed by festive parties. By this day people decorate fir - trees with toys and candies. Children wait for Santa Claus who comes to every house and brings them presents. Before going to bed, children leave their shoes to find in them what they want most of all the next morning.

Decorating the house with holly, ivy and mistletoe is a custom, which comes from England. Ivy means immortality. Holly is a bush with shiny red berries and glossy leaves with a characteristic shape and sharp pointy edges. Because it remains green throughout the year it was believed to hold a promise that the sun would return. Holly berries symbolize Christ's blood. Mistletoe is an interesting green parasitic plant which grows in globe - like formations high up in the branches of oak trees. Springs of it are tied together with ribbons and hung up in doorways. By custom anyone standing under the mistletoe gets to be kissed.

New Year's Day. Although in the United States the official holiday is January the 1st, the celebration really begins on December 31st. New Year's Day is celebrated with parties which last beyond midnight so that everyone can see in the New Year and watch the Old Year out.

Halloween. Halloween is the day or evening before All Saints Day. The name is a shortened version of "All Hallows Eve" the night before All Saints Day which is celebrated on November 1st by the Catholic Church.

A favorite custom is making a jack-o-lantern. Children scrape out a pumpkin and cut the outlines of eyes, nose and mouth in its side. They light a candle inside the pumpkin to scare their friends. This custom refers to a man named Jack who still wanders around the earth lighting his way with a pumpkin lantern.



There are other holidays which are celebrated in the USA. They are Martin Luther Kings Birthday, President's Day, St. Valentine's Day, St. Patrick's Day, April Fool's Day, Earth Day, Take Your Daughter to Work Day, Memorial Day, May Day, Flag Day, Labor Day, Mother's Day, Father's Day, Columbus Day and others.

1. Listen and find the correct answer.

- a) Americans celebrate Christmas on December the 26th.

- b) Holly is a bush with shiny green berries and glossy leaves with a characteristic shape and sharp pointy edges.
- c) All Saints Day which is celebrated on November 1st by the Catholic Church.

2. Complete the sentence.

- 1. By custom anyone standing under the ... gets to be kissed.
- 2. Children scrape out a ... and cut the outlines of eyes, nose and mouth in its side.
- 3. This custom refers to a man named Jack who still wanders around the earth lighting his way with a pumpkin

Ex. 3. Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct answer which expresses the main content of it.

Thanksgiving Day is marked on the fourth Thursday of November in memory of the first Thanksgiving Day held by the early Pilgrim settlers in Massachusetts in 1621, in gratitude for the successful harvest. They experienced difficulty in those early times and survived only with the help of American Indians who taught them how to grow and harvest indigenous foods such as squash and corn. The first Thanksgiving Day lasted three days and was celebrated with their Indian friends. Thanksgiving was proclaimed a national day of observance by Congress in 1941.

Thanksgiving Day is a four-day holiday for most Americans. This is a family holiday. Families come together from near and far. In some places special religious services are held in the morning. Then comes the traditional feast. Turkey with stuffing is the main dish. It is served with sweet potatoes, squash, cranberry sauce, and pumpkin pie. Apple cider is the drink of the day.

Stores, classrooms, and homes are decorated with turkeys, pilgrims, Indians, wreaths of dried flowers, and vegetables. Homes of plenty are also very popular.

- a) Thanksgiving Day
- b) Happiness Day
- c) Turkey Day

Ex. 4. Listen to the passage and interpret it into your mother tongue consecutively.

Easter is a Christian religious holiday. It is memory of Resurrection of Jesus Christ. It falls on the first Sunday after the first full moon between March, 22, and April, 25.

Interpretation.....

The 40 days before Easter are called Lent. Just before Easter, schools and colleges usually close. The students have a week or ten days of spring holidays. Easter is a church holiday, and many churches have an outdoor sunrise service.

Interpretation.....

On the night before Easter, an imaginary creature known as the Easter Bunny

comes to visit children and leaves a basket filled with candy in the shape of eggs, bunnies and baby chicks.

Interpretation.....

Another tradition is painting hard boiled eggs different colors and designs on them. It is common to hide these eggs, as well as candy eggs, for children to look for an Easter Sunday as part of an Easter egg hunt.

Interpretation.....

Answers:

- 1) c) All Saints Day which is celebrated on November 1st by the Catholic Church.
- 2) 1. immortality 2. mistletoe 3. pumpkin 4. lantern
- 3) a) Thanksgiving Day

WRITING

Ex. 1. Translate the following text into your mother-tongue.



All countries have their social customs and peculiarities, and the US is no exception. Good manners, politeness and consideration for others are considered important by most people. Americans are generally informal in their relationships and won't be too upset if you break the social rules, provided your behavior isn't outrageous.

As a foreigner you may be forgiven if you accidentally insult your host (although you may not be invited again). On the other hand, you may consider normal American behavior occasionally shocking. Here are a few American customs you may like to familiarize yourself with:

Americans often greet total strangers, particularly in small towns and communities. This may vary from a formal 'good morning' to a more casual 'Hi!'; it's considered polite to respond likewise. On parting, it's customary to say 'Have a nice day' (don't, however, say it to the bereaved at a funeral), although this habit is reportedly dying out as Americans become weary of ritual insincerity. Americans often reply 'You're Welcome' or something similar when somebody thanks them, and they may think you're impolite if you don't do likewise. If someone asks 'How are you?' it's usual to reply 'Fine thanks' (even if you feel dreadful).

When introduced to someone, it's common to follow the cue of the person performing the introduction, e.g. if someone is introduced as George, you can usually call him George (although it might not be such a good idea if his last name is Bush and he happens to be the President, when Mr. President would be more appropriate). Americans generally dislike formality or any sort of social deference due to age or position, and most quickly say 'Please call me Rick (or Rita)'. To Americans, informality shows no lack of respect. Because of the rise of women's liberation in America, women may be introduced with the title 'Ms' (pronounced 'miss') and some women object to being addressed as 'Miss' or 'Mrs.'. In some social circles, women are introduced after their husbands, e.g. Mrs. Chuck Whiz kid, in which case you shouldn't address her as Chuck! Some American women retain their maiden (family) names after marriage. Many American first names can be confusing and it's often difficult to know whether a name refers to a man or a woman.

Ex. 2. Express your attitude towards the content of the text.

After you've been introduced to someone, you usually say something like, 'Pleased to meet you' or 'My pleasure' and shake hands with a firm grip (although more common among men). When saying goodbye, it isn't customary to shake hands again, although some people do. Among friends, it's common for men to kiss ladies on one or both cheeks. Men don't usually kiss or embrace each other, although this depends on their nationality or ethnic origin (or sexual proclivity).

If you're invited to dinner, it's customary to take along a small present, e.g. flowers, a plant, chocolates or a bottle of wine (but nothing extravagant or ostentatious). Flowers can be tricky, as to some people carnations mean bad luck, chrysanthemums are for cemeteries and roses signify love. Maybe you should stick to plastic, silk or dried flowers (or a nice bunch of weeds). Wine can also be a problem, particularly if you bring a bottle of Italian plonk and your hosts are wine connoisseurs or members of a religious group that considers alcohol consumption a sin. If you stay with someone as a guest for a few days, it's customary to give your host or hostess a small gift when you leave.

A wedding or baby 'shower' isn't a communal bath or an invitation to watch baby have its first wash, but a party organized by female friends to shower presents on a prospective bride or new mother. Presents may be of a particular kind, as in a china or linen shower or you may be directed to the gift registry the guest of honour has established at a local department store.

Although many foreigners have the impression that Americans are relaxed and casual in their dress, they often have strict dress codes. In the puritanical New England states, people usually dress conservatively and more formally than in most

other regions. This is particularly true of office workers, who are usually expected to wear a suit and tie (and have short hair). In the east, casual wear (jeans or casual trousers, open-necked shirt) is acceptable for the beach or the garden but is unacceptable in many restaurants. In the south and west, casual dress is more acceptable, in the office and socially, and only the most expensive restaurants insist on ties and formal dress. Many offices have introduced a 'dress-down' day on one day a week (usually Friday), when employees may wear casual attire (although jeans may still be off limits).

When going anywhere that could be remotely formal (or informal), it's wise to ask in advance what you're expected to wear. Usually when dress is formal, such as evening dress or dinner jacket, this is stated in the invitation (e.g. 'black tie'), and you won't be admitted if you turn up in the wrong attire. On the other hand, at some informal gatherings you may feel out of place if you aren't wearing jeans and a T-shirt. If you're invited to a wedding, enquire about dress (unless you want to stick out like a sore thumb). Black or dark dress is almost always worn at funerals.

Exercise 3. Write questions on the text and try to write the answers.

Thomas Alva Edison

Thomas Alva Edison was born in 1847. He was sick a lot when he was young. Edison's mother taught him lessons at home and he only studied the things he wanted to know. At the age of ten, he read his first science book. After he read the book, he built a laboratory in his house. Soon, Edison started to invent things. He was interested in the telegraph and electricity. At the age of twenty-three, he made a special telegraphic machine and sold it for a lot of money. With this money, he was now free to invent all the time.

Edison started his own laboratory at Menlo Park, New Jersey. He hired mechanics and chemists to help him. He worked day and night. Once, he worked on forty-five inventions at the same time. Edison did not sleep very much, but he took naps. He often fell asleep with his clothes on.

Did you know Edison invented wax paper, fire alarms, the battery, and motion pictures? But his favourite invention was the phonograph, or record player. He invented the phonograph in 1876. His other famous invention was the light bulb. Edison died in 1931, at the age of eighty-four. He had over 1,300 inventions to his name! Many people say that Edison was a genius - one of the smartest people in the world.

Exercise 4. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

July 4th is Independence Day. Another name for Independence Day is the Fourth of July. On this day in 1776 the final of the Declaration of Independence, written by Thomas Jefferson, was adopted.

Independence Day is a national holiday. Government offices, banks, and schools close. Most people don't go to work. Families and friends get together outside for picnics and cookouts.

Traditionally the Fourth of July is celebrated with firing of guns and fireworks, parades open - air meetings and speeches praising "Americanism, democracy, free enterprise."

Independence Day isn't only day for cookouts, noise, and fireworks. It is also a day to think about freedom. The Declaration of Independence says everyone has the right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. The Declaration of Independence more than 200 years old, but its ideas are important today.

Ex. 5. Write the same thing in fewer words, retaining the same meaning .

Old wedding traditions may have held that a prospective groom had to ask the bride's father for his blessing, but that tradition is seldom respected any longer, if it was ever respected to a wide degree in the U.S. While a young man and a young woman hope that both sets of parents will give their blessing to a union, and often a blessing will be asked more as a courtesy than for an actual blessing, such a blessing is not required or always sought.

Wedding planning can be elaborate and time-consuming and many brides today opt to have a professional wedding planner take care of the thousand-and-one details of the glorious day. A Traditional United States wedding is a fairly large and elaborate affair, especially when it is the first wedding for the bride. Traditionally the bride wears a white wedding dress and white wedding veil.

Prior to the wedding itself, it is traditional for the Maid of Honor to throw a bridal shower as part of the bridal ceremonies. During the bridal shower the bride-to-be will receive small gifts, often of a humorous nature, often gifts for use on the honeymoon.

While a religious setting, such as a church, synagogue or mosque is not mandatory, the more traditional U.S. weddings do take place in a religious setting. Family and friends are formally invited. Ushers seat guests, there are bride's maids, a best man, flower girls, a ring bearer, music (often chosen by the bride and/or the groom) and many other amenities designed to make the day special and memorable.

The traditional ceremony itself is often conducted by a religious leader known to the bride and/or the groom. The ceremony may include wedding vows written by the bride and the groom, in which they speak of their love and their desire to make their partner safe, happy and secure, and to be faithful to their partner and their partner alone for the rest of their lives.

At the conclusion of the ceremony, it is traditional for the official to ask if anyone present knows of any just cause why this man and this woman may not be legally married. Getting no response, the official asks the couple to exchange wedding rings, a symbol of their never-ending love and commitment to one another, and then the happy couple is pronounced, in front of family and friends (witnesses) to be husband and wife.

SPEAKING

Ex. 1. Retell the following text in your own words.



The United States has few wedding traditions that are totally unique to the U.S. Virtually all U.S. wedding traditions and customs have either been taken directly from a wide range of other countries and cultures – primarily European – or they have evolved from traditions in other nations.

In truth, many people still retain many of their ethnic wedding traditions, and this, too, has become part and parcel of the “American” wedding ceremony. In the U.S. we are very comfortable in allowing a wide diversity of traditions and ceremonies.

There are a few things that all U.S. weddings have in common. To begin with, U.S. wedding ceremonies may be either religious or civil. Most brides prefer a large and rather elaborate ceremony if it is their first wedding

Marriages are not “arranged.” A typical U.S. wedding takes place between two people who have sought out a partner and have found someone whom they believe they can share their life with. In other words, in the United States marriages are based on LOVE. They are not arranged to strengthen family business or influence.

As the couple leave the church they are often showered with rice or wheat (symbols of fertility) and the couple is then taken to a home, restaurant or other facility where a wedding reception takes place. Speeches and toasts are given to the new couple, wishing them every happiness.

Gifts are an important part of the U.S. wedding tradition. Gifts are given to help the new couple establish a new home together; often gifts of cash are given. A couple may “register” at a specific store where their gift needs are tracked. This allows well-wishers to not only purchase gifts that are truly useful to the new couple, but to also be assured that no one else has purchased the same gift.

Following the reception the couple traditionally goes on a honeymoon, during which their marriage is consummated. A honeymoon may last from several days to two or more weeks.

Couples who do not wish to go through the stress of an elaborate traditional wedding ceremony may choose to elope. An elopement involves much less work and much less preparation. The couple merely goes to a justice of the peace and is quietly married in a civil wedding ceremony. They may or may not include a small number of friends and/or family.

U.S. wedding ceremonies and wedding customs are among the most flexible in all the world. Whatever your wedding needs are, whatever your ideas of the perfect wedding venue, the wedding customs and wedding ceremonies that are right for you, you will find that they will all find a welcome home within the ideal of the American Wedding tradition.

Ex. 2 Act as an interpreter

Studies show that about 9 in 10 Americans identify with a religion and that about 6 in 10 belong to a church. About 94 percent of Americans who identify with a religion are Christians.

Interpreter.....

Among Christians there are more Protestants than Catholics. However, there are many different Protestant denominations, or groups. For example, Protestants include, among others, Baptists, Methodists, and Lutherans, and each of these groups is divided into smaller groups. So Catholics, although outnumbered by Protestants, are the single largest religious group.

Interpreter.....

Jews are the largest non-Christian group, with about 4 percent of the population. About 2 percent of the population is Moslem, and smaller numbers are Buddhists and Hindus. Native Americans often preserve their tribal religions.

Interpreter.....

The US is well known for its many traditional churches and less formal religious, though almost all are Christian. Freedom of worship is a result of the separation of Church and State that is written into the First Amendment of the Constitution. This happened because many people, including the Pilgrim Fathers, went to America to avoid religious persecution in Europe.

Interpreter.....

American Protestants are very religious, though the Catholic Church has more members than are one Protestant group. Religious beliefs are strong: it is said that 96 % of Americans believe in God, 90 % pray and 41 % go to church regularly. Churches are centers of social events and business activities, as well as places of worship.

Interpreter.....

Today, about 86 % of Americans are Christian (approximately 59 % Protestant and 27 % Catholic). However, this is a nation with great religious diversity. American Christians are divided into many different groups, including Roman Catholic, the various national denominations of the Eastern Orthodox churches, and hundreds of different Protestant denominations and sect. The largest Protestant groups are the Southern Baptist Convention.

Interpreter.....

References:

whistle – hushtak, (свисток)

sentiment – hissiyot (чувство)

carnation – chinnigul, alvon, och qizil, (алый цвет, гвоздика)

enterprise – muassasa, korxonа, (предприятие)

flowerist – gul sotuvchi, (продавец цветов)

witch – jodugar (ведьма)

ghost – sharpa, (привидение)

devil – shayton, (дьявол)

Exercise 3. Use Role play. One reads , another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

Memorial Day

The last Monday in May is Memorial Day. This is a national holiday to remember the dead. The first Memorial Day was many years ago after the Civil War (1861 -1865). After the war, people wanted to remember the dead. So around 1866, people began to decorate the graves of Civil War soldiers. People called this day Decoration Day or Poppy Day (Poppies are small red flowers).

On the Memorial Day, Americans honor the servicemen who gave their lives in past wars. Schools, clubs and churches decorate the cemeteries. They put up the flags on the graves of the army, navy and airmen. They hold memorial services in churches, halls, parks and cemeteries.

In addition to solemn services Memorial Day is often marked by other, more joyful ceremonies: colorful parades, sports competitions

Ex. 4. Work in groups: one reads and listen to him her. One retells the text, translates the speech into mother-tongue orally.

Flag Day

On June 14th, 1777, the United States adopted its first flag. Today Americans honor the US flag each year on June 14th. Flag Day is a national commemorative day. It is not a holiday from work. Many people fly the flag outside their homes and businesses on this day.

The American flag has different names. One name is "The Red, White, and Blue." This name is for the colors of the flag. Another name is "The Stars and Stripes." This name is for the 50 stars and 13 stripes.

The flag did not always have 50 stars and 13 stripes. In 1777, the original flag had 13stars and 13stripes for the 13 colonies. The 13 colonies became the first 13 states. Then more states joined the United States. In 1794, the flag had 15 stars and 15 stripes. Then more states joined. This created a problem for the flag makers. The flag was getting too big! So in 1818, Congress decided to have only 13 stripes on the flag. They decided to add one star each new state. So now there are 50 stars and 13stripes on the flag.

Exercise 5 Read the text aloud and condense it i.e. say the same thing in fewer words, retaining the same meaning and analyze the outcome critically with the group students

Labor Day

Labor Day is a legal holiday. It is celebrated each year on the first Monday in September. It was planned as a day to honor workers in America and to give them a long weekend holiday from work.

Labor Day was started in 1882 by a union called the Knights of Labor. The first celebration was a long parade followed by a picnic in New York City. In 1894 Congress made it a legal holiday.

Labor Day is traditionally celebrated with parades, speeches, and recognition of the labor unions. Labor Day sales are a popular event held on this holiday. Barbecues and picnics are popular on Labor Day. They mark the end of the summer season. Schools usually open after this holiday.

Columbus Day

The American continent was discovered in 1492 by the Spanish seaman Christopher Columbus. Columbus is said to be the first European man, stepping on

the American land, and that day, when it was happened, the 12th of October, became the holiday, which is called Columbus Day. This holiday is celebrated in 34 States of the USA and Puerto Rico. There are parades and parties in San Francisco and New York. One of the squares of New York is called Columbus Circle with the monument of Columbus in the middle of it.

Exercise 6. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering

Election Day

The first Tuesday after the first Monday in November is Election Day. It is a legal holiday. Since 1845, by Act of Congress, this date has been set aside for elections.

On this day American citizen elect their public officials, president, congressmen, governors, mayors and judges. All states require that voters be citizens of the United States.

"Election Day" sales in stories are very popular on this day. The night of the election, people watch the election results on TV. They listen to the speeches made by the winners.

References:

Clan – qabila, jamoa, (клан, клика, группа)

Tartan –katak-katak gazlama shotlandcha, (клетчатый материал шотландский)

Acquire – olmoq, erishmoq, (приобретать)

Regiment – polk, qo'shin, (полк, легион)

Narrate – hikoya qilmoq, so'zlab bermoq, (рассказывать, повествовать)

Self -work

Exercise 1. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

A 2001 survey directed by Dr. Ariela Keysar for the City University of New York indicated that, amongst the more than 100 categories of response, "no religious identification" had the greatest increase in population in both absolute and percentage terms. This category included atheists, agnostics, humanists, deists,

and others with no theistic religious beliefs or practices. Figures are up from 14.3 million in 1990 to 34.2 million in 2008, representing a proportionate increase from 8% of the total in 1990 to 15% in 2008. Another nation-wide study puts the figure of unaffiliated persons at 16.1%.

A study at the London School of Economics and Political Science based on a U.S. sample, showed that Americans who are atheist and liberal tend to have higher IQs by an average of 6-11 points. In addition, American men who identify as atheist and liberal are more likely to be sexually exclusive than average.

In a 2006 nationwide poll, University of Minnesota researchers found that despite an increasing acceptance of religious diversity, atheists were generally distrusted by other Americans, who rated them below Muslims, recent immigrants and other minority groups in "sharing their vision of American society". They also associated atheists with undesirable attributes such as criminal behavior, rampant materialism, and cultural elitism.

However, the same study also reported that, "The researchers also found acceptance or rejection of atheists is related not only to personal religiosity, but also to one's exposure to diversity, education and political orientation--with more educated, East and West Coast Americans more accepting of atheists than their Midwestern counterparts."

Exercise 2. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering

Sports in the United States

The opening of College football season is a major part of American culture and tradition. Massive marching bands accompanied by and color guard are almost universal at American Football games, especially during halftime. Although high school bands tend to be much smaller, it is rare for a game not to feature a marching band at halftime.

Baseball is the oldest of the major American team sports. Professional baseball dates from 1869 and had no close rivals in popularity until the 1960s; though baseball is no longer the most popular sport, it is still referred to as the "national pastime". Also unlike the professional levels of the other popular spectator sports in the U.S., Major League Baseball teams play almost every day from April to October.

American football now attracts more television viewers than baseball; however, National Football League teams play only 16 regular-season games each year, so baseball is the runaway leader in ticket sales. Basketball is another major sport, represented professionally by the National Basketball Association. It was invented in Springfield, Massachusetts 1891, by Canadian-born physical education teacher James Naismith, known in many Anglo phone countries as gridiron, is considered to be the most popular sport in the United States. The 32-team National Football League (NFL) is the most popular professional American football league. Its championship game, the, is the biggest annual sporting event held in the United States.

Exercise 3. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

The United States has few wedding traditions that are totally unique to the U.S. Virtually all U.S. wedding traditions and customs have either been taken directly from a wide range of other countries and cultures – primarily European – or they have evolved from traditions in other nations.

This is certainly easily understood since the United States was originally populated by immigrants from many lands, primarily Europe. These immigrants brought their own wedding traditions with them, and these traditions, stirred in the melting pot of the United States, have slowly evolved into the traditional “American” wedding ceremony.

In truth, many people still retain many of their ethnic wedding traditions, and this, too, has become part and parcel of the “American” wedding ceremony. In the U.S. we are very comfortable in allowing a wide diversity of traditions and ceremonies.

There are a few things that all U.S. weddings have in common. To begin with, U.S. wedding ceremonies may be either religious or civil. Most brides prefer a large and rather elaborate ceremony if it is their first wedding

Marriages are not “arranged.” A typical U.S. wedding takes place between two people who have sought out a partner and have found someone whom they believe they can share their life with. In other words, in the United States marriages are based on LOVE. They are not arranged to strengthen family business or influence.

Old wedding traditions may have held that a prospective groom had to ask the bride’s father for his blessing, but that tradition is seldom respected any longer, if it was ever respected to a wide degree in the U.S. While a young man and a young woman hope that both sets of parents will give their blessing to a union, and often a blessing will be asked more as a courtesy than for an actual blessing, such a blessing is not required or always sought.

Wedding planning can be elaborate and time-consuming and many brides today opt to have a professional wedding planner take care of the thousand-and-one details of the glorious day. A Traditional United States wedding is a fairly

large and elaborate affair, especially when it is the first wedding for the bride. Traditionally the bride wears a white wedding dress and white wedding veil.

Prior to the wedding itself, it is traditional for the Maid of Honor to throw a bridal shower as part of the bridal ceremonies. During the bridal shower the bride-to-be will receive small gifts, often of a humorous nature, often gifts for use on the honeymoon.

While a religious setting, such as a church, synagogue or mosque is not mandatory, the more traditional U.S. weddings do take place in a religious setting. Family and friends are formally invited. Ushers seat guests, there are bride's maids, a best man, flower girls, a ring bearer, music (often chosen by the bride and/or the groom) and many other amenities designed to make the day special and memorable.

The traditional ceremony itself is often conducted by a religious leader known to the bride and/or the groom. The ceremony may include wedding vows written by the bride and the groom, in which they speak of their love and their desire to make their partner safe, happy and secure, and to be faithful to their partner and their partner alone for the rest of their lives.

At the conclusion of the ceremony, it is traditional for the official to ask if anyone present knows of any just cause why this man and this woman may not be legally married. Getting no response, the official asks the couple to exchange wedding rings, a symbol of their never-ending love and commitment to one another, and then the happy couple is pronounced, in front of family and friends (witnesses) to be husband and wife. Traditionally the newlyweds kiss to seal their union.

As the couple leave the church they are often showered with rice or wheat (symbols of fertility) and the couple is then taken to a home, restaurant or other facility where a wedding reception takes place. Speeches and toasts are given to the new couple, wishing them every happiness.

Gifts are an important part of the U.S. wedding tradition. Gifts are given to help the new couple establish a new home together; often gifts of cash are given. A couple may "register" at a specific store where their gift needs are tracked. This allows well-wishers to not only purchase gifts that are truly useful to the new couple, but to also be assured that no one else has purchased the same gift.

Following the reception the couple traditionally goes on a honeymoon, during which their marriage is consummated. A honeymoon may last from several days to two or more weeks.

Couples who do not wish to go through the stress of an elaborate traditional wedding ceremony may choose to elope. An elopement involves much less work and much less preparation. The couple merely goes to a justice of the peace and is quietly married in a civil wedding ceremony. They may or may not include a small number of friends and/or family.

U.S. wedding ceremonies and wedding customs are among the most flexible in all the world. Whatever your wedding needs are, whatever your ideas of the perfect wedding venue, the wedding customs and wedding ceremonies that are

right for you, you will find that they will all find a welcome home within the ideal of the American Wedding tradition.

References:

unique – noyob, yagona, (уникальный, единственный)

emerge – paydo bo'lmoq, ko'rinmoq (всплывать, появляться)

harmonious – totuv, ahil (дружный, слаженный)

casual – tasodifiy (случайный)

flourish – gullamoq, (процветать)

acute – o'tkir zehinli (острый ум)

blockbuster – katta kuchga ega bo'lgan aviatsion bomba (бомба большого калибра)

fusion – eritish, eritmoq (сплавление, плавка)

correspondent – muxbir (корреспондент)

aeronautic – aviatsion (авиационный)

Exercise 4. Find answers to the following questions in the text:

1. What do you know about American's culture?
2. Can you tell some information about the museums of the USA
3. Do you compare the museums of the USA and Uzbekistan?
4. What can you say about American famous people?
5. Who is the sixteenth president of the USA ?
6. Do you know Mark Twain's novels?

Ex. 5. . Translate the text into mother-tongue.

Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790)

Benjamin Franklin was one of the Founding Fathers of the United States of America. He was a leading author, printer, satirist, political theorist, politician, scientist, inventor, civic activist, statesman, soldier, and diplomat. As a scientist, he invented the lightning rod, bifocals, the Franklin stove, a carriage odometer, and the glass armonica. As a political writer and activist, he supported the idea of an

American nation. As a diplomat during the American Revolution, he secured the French alliance that helped to make United States independence possible.

Ernest Hemingway is one of the greatest 20th-century American writers. His incredible career, and the legend which developed around his impressive personality, was that of a man of action, a devil-may-care adventurer, a brave war correspondent, an amateur boxer, a big-game hunter and deep-sea fisherman, the victim of three car accidents and two plane crashes, a man of four wives and many loves, but above all a brilliant writer of stories and novels.

Hemingway was born in 1899 in Oak Park, Illinois. His father was a doctor who initiated the boy into the outdoor life of hunting, camping and fishing. In high school Hemingway played football and wrote for the school newspaper.

In 1917, when the United States entered the First World War, Hemingway left home and schooling to become a young reporter for the Kansas City Star. He wanted to enlist for the war but was rejected because of an eye injury from football. Finally he managed to go to Europe as an ambulance driver for the Red Cross. He joined the Italian army and was seriously wounded.

His war experience and adventurous life provided the background for his many short stories and novels. He achieved success with “A Farewell to Arms” the story of a love affair between an American lieutenant and an English nurse during the First World War.

Hemingway actively supported the Republicans in the Spanish Civil War and wrote another successful novel of war, love and death. It was “For Whom the Bell Tolls”.

During the Second World War Hemingway was a war correspondent first in China and then in Europe. He fought in France, and helped to liberate Paris. In his later years Hemingway lived mostly in Cuba where his passion for deep-sea fishing provided the background for “The Old Man and the Sea”. He was awarded the Nobel Prize for literature in 1954.

Unwilling to live with the inevitable physical aging, Hemingway committed suicide, as his father had done before him under similar circumstances.

Exercise 6. Suggest a possible title for the text in English:

The need to memorialize the past has a long tradition and is often associated with wars, heroes, and battles. In the United States, monuments exist throughout the country, from the Revolutionary site of Bunker Hill to the many Civil War battlefields. The nation's capital features a large number of monuments to generals, war heroes, and leaders. Probably the greatest of all these is Arlington National Cemetery in Virginia, where there are thousands of graves of veterans of American wars, including the Tomb of the Unknowns and the gravesite of President John F. Kennedy. In addition to these traditional monuments to history, millions of people are drawn to the polished black wall that is the Vietnam Veterans Memorial, located on the National Mall in Washington, D.C. The memorial is a stark reminder of the losses suffered in a war in which more than 58,000 Americans died and of a time of turmoil in the nation.

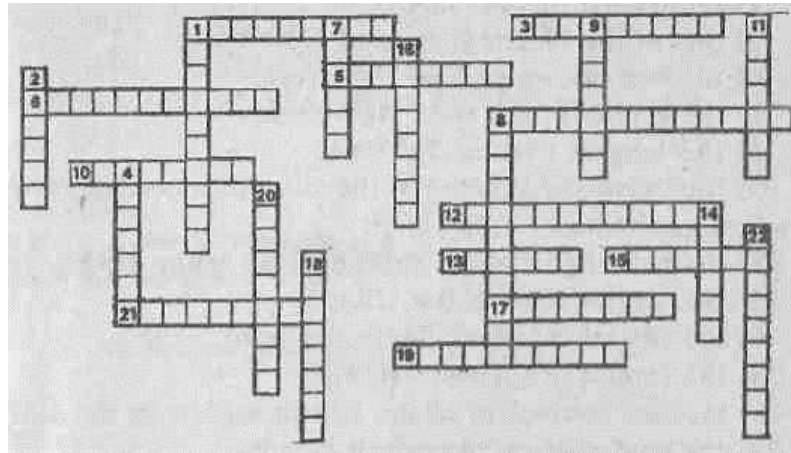
No less important than monuments to war heroes are memorials to other victims of war. The United States Holocaust Memorial Museum, which opened in 1993 in Washington, D.C., is dedicated to documenting the extermination of millions of Jews and others by the Nazis during World War II. It contains photographs, films, oral histories, and artifacts as well as a research institute, and has become an enormous tourist attraction. It is one example of a new public consciousness about museums as important sources of information and places in which to come to terms with important and painful historical events. Less elaborate Holocaust memorials have been established in cities across the country, including New York, San Francisco, and Los Angeles.

Monuments to national heroes are an important part of American culture. These range from the memorials to Presidents George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and Abraham Lincoln on the National Mall in Washington, D.C., to the larger-than-life faces of Washington, Jefferson, Lincoln, and Theodore Roosevelt carved into Mount Rushmore in South Dakota. Some national memorials also include monuments to ordinary citizens, such as the laborers, farmers, women, and African Americans who are part of the new Franklin Delano Roosevelt Memorial in Washington, D.C.

Americans also commemorate popular culture with museums and monuments such as the Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum in Cleveland, Ohio, and the Baseball Hall of Fame and Museum in Cooperstown, New York. These collections of popular culture are as much a part of American heritage as are fine arts museums and statues of national heroes. As a result of this wide variety of institutions and monuments, more people know about the breadth of America's past and its many cultural influences. This new awareness has even influenced the presentation of artifacts in natural history museums. Where these once emphasized the differences among human beings and their customs by presenting them as

discrete and unrelated cultures, today's museums and monuments emphasize the flow of culture among people.

Exercise 7. An interesting crossword for you



Across Clues

1) the name of a complex of buildings including a notorious hotel which is connected with the scandal during president Nixon election campaign, a symbol of corruption in the American political life of the 70s of the 20th century;

3) one of the five boroughs of New York, the heart of the city, a rocky island (the one which, as tradition says, had been bought from the Indians for 24 dollars);

5) a street in New York where theatres, variety theatres, show business of New York are situated. The symbol of the New York show business;

6) the mountain system in the east of the USA;

8) the state, the capital of which is Boston;

10) the only of the five Great Lakes which lies entirely on the territory of the USA;

12) the first capital of the USA;

13) the capital of the state Massachusetts;

15) the city where the Day of International Solidarity of Workers (May 1) was born;

17) the center of the military-industrial complex in the USA, the symbol of American militarism;

19) the mountain system in the west of the USA;

21) the city where the first battle between the British troops and the American colonists took place in 1775.

Down Clues

- 1) the capital of the USA;
- 2) one of the Negro ghettos of New York; 4) the best known park in New York;
- 7) the capital of the state New York;
- 8) the longest river in the USA;
- 9) the university situated in the city of Cambridge (one of the best universities of the USA);
- 11) the building in which the Congress of the USA sits;
- 14) the biggest state in the USA;
- 16) the city where Mark Twain was born;
- 18) the capital of the state Hawaii;
- 20) the first settlement of the British settlers in the USA;
- 22) the center of the American cinema.

UNIT 5. Educational System of the USA

Reading

Ex.1. Read and find the right information for the topics given below.

American public education is operated by state and local governments, regulated by the United States Department of Education through restrictions on federal grants. Children are required in most states to attend school from the age of six or seven some states allow students to leave school at sixteen or seventeen.

Children study 6 year elementary school and 6 year high school and 3 year junior high school, 3 year senior high school. American education provides a program for children beginning at the age 6 and continuing up to 18 .

The length of the school year varies among the states. Wide variation exists also in the length of the school day. The attendance is compulsory in most states until the age of sixteen. The elementary schools tend to be small.

American education provides a program for children, beginning at the age of 6 and continuing up to the age of 16 in some of the states, and to 18 in others.

The elementary school in the United States is generally considered to include the first six or eight grades of the common-school system, depending upon the organization that has been accepted for the secondary school. It has been called the "grade school" or the "grammar school". There is no single governmental agency to prescribe for the American school system; different types of organization and of curriculum are tried out.

The length of the school year varies among the states. A common practice is to have school in session from 9:00 to 12:00 in the morning and from 1:00 to 3:30 in the afternoon, Monday through Friday. The school day for the lower grades is often from 30 minutes to an hour shorter. Most schools require some homework to be done by elementary pupils. Elementary Schools, High Schools and Institutions of Higher Learning

Education in the United States is provided mainly by the government, with control and funding coming from three levels: federal, state, and local. At the primary and secondary school levels, curricula, funding, teaching, and other policies are set through locally elected school boards with jurisdiction over school districts. School districts can be (but are not always) coextensive with counties or municipalities. Educational standards and standardized testing decisions are usually made by the states through acts of the state legislature and governor, and decisions of the state departments of education.

1. American public education
2. The length of the school year
3. American education provides a program
4. The elementary school in the United States
5. The school day for the lower grades
6. Education funding in the United States

Ex. 2. Read the text “True”, “Wrong”, “Not given” information

Elementary school

The U.S. uses ordinal numbers for naming grades the United Kingdom. Thus, when asked what grade they are in, typical American children are more likely to say "fourth grade" rather than "Grade 4." The following are the typical ages and grade groupings in public and private schools. Many different variations exist across the country.

Elementary school, "grade school", "grammar school", and "public school" are all interchangeable names for schools that begin with kindergarten or first grade and end either with fifth or sixth grade. Elementary school provides a common daily routine for all students except the most disadvantaged (those with learning disabilities, mental illnesses, or those students who do not speak English). Sometimes gifted or advanced students(in the USA the pupils are called "students") receive separate education as well. Students do not choose a course structure and remain in a single classroom throughout the school day, with the exceptions of physical education ("P.E." or "gym"), music, and/or art classes.

Education is relatively unstandardized at this level. Teachers, most of whom are women, receive a book to give to the students for each subject and brief overviews of what they are expected to teach. In general, a student learns basic arithmetic and sometimes rudimentary algebra in mathematics, English proficiency (such as basic grammar, spelling, and vocabulary), and fundamentals of other subjects. Social studies and sciences are often underdeveloped, largely because most elementary teachers have a degree in English or education. Social studies may include basic events and concepts in American and world history and, in some places, state or local history; science varies widely.

1. American children are more likely to say "fourth grade" rather than "Grade 4."-----

2. Elementary school, "grade school", "grammar school", and "public school" are not all interchangeable names for schools-----

3. Elementary school provides the most disadvantaged (those with learning disabilities). -----

4. Education is relatively unstandardized. Teachers, most of whom are women, receive a book to give to the students for each subject and brief overviews of what they are expected to teach. -----

5. Social studies and sciences are few because most elementary teachers have no degree in English or education.-----

Ex. 3. Read the text and fill in the blanks with words from the text in the exercise given below.

It is common in the United States for old High School campuses to be turned into middle schools, as is the case with Leonia Middle School "Middle school", "junior high school", and "intermediate school" are all interchangeable names for schools that begin in 6th or 7th grade and end in 8th, though they sometimes include 9th grade as well. The term "junior high school" and the arrangement beginning with 7th grade are becoming less common.

At this time students begin to enroll in class schedules where they take classes from several teachers in a given day, unlike in elementary school where most classes are taught by the same teacher. The classes are usually a strict set of science, math, English, and social science courses, interspersed with a reading and/or technology class. Every year from kindergarten through ninth grade usually includes a mandatory physical education (P.E.) class. Student-chosen courses, known as electives, are generally limited to only one or two classes.

High school runs from grades 9 through 12. Some school districts deviate from this formula. The most widely seen difference is to include 9th grade in middle school, though it is a relatively old practice which is disappearing. Also, many districts will use an older high school as a separate campus for 9th grade, allowing these students to adjust to a high school environment. In high school, students obtain much more control of their education and often may even choose their core classes. Admission to the American high school is automatic on completion of the elementary school. During the four year high school program the pupils (student studies four or five major subjects per year and class in each of these subjects meet for an hour a day, five days a week).

In addition the student usually has classes in physical education, music and art several times a week. If he fails a course, he repeat only that course and not the work of the courses in order to receive a diploma or a certificate of graduation.

1. In the United States for old ... School ... to be turned into middle schools, as is the case with Leonia Middle School "Middle school", "junior high school", and "... school" are all ... names for schools that begin in 6th or 7th grade and end in 8th, though they sometimes include 9th ... as well.

2. Every year from ... through ninth grade usually includes a ... physical education (P.E.) class. Student-chosen courses, known as... , are generally ... to only one or two classes.

3. High school runs from grades 9 through 12. Some school districts ... from this formula. The most widely seen ... is to include 9th grade in middle school, though it is ... old practice which is disappearing. Also, many districts will use an

older high school as a ... campus for 9th grade, ... these students to adjust to a high school ...

4. ... to the American high school is automatic on ... of the elementary school. During the four year high school program the pupils (student studies four or five ... subjects per year and class in each of these subjects ... for an hour a day, five days a week).

Ex. 4. Read the text and find titles for each paragraph of the text.

Each of the 50 states in the USA has its own laws regulating education. From state to state some laws are similar, others are not. Almost every elementary school provides instruction in the following subjects: maths, language arts (a subject that includes reading, grammar, composition and literature) penmanship science, social subjects (includes history, geography, citizenship), music, art and physical education. In many elementary schools courses in the use of computers have been introduced. A foreign language is offered in the upper elementary school.

It usually takes four years to meet the requirements for a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree. A master of Arts or Master of Science degree may be obtained in one or two additional years. The highest Academic degree is the Doctor of Philosophy. It may take any number of years to complete the original research work necessary to obtain this degree. The colleges and universities charge a fee for tuition or registration. This fee is higher for those who come from outside the state.

There are private colleges and universities such as Harvard, Princeton, Yale. It has become common for the college and university program to be divided into broad fields, such as languages and literature, the social sciences, the sciences and mathematics and the fine arts. Students are classified a freshman, sophomors, juniors and seniors. A freshman – a first year student, a sophomer – a second year, a junior – third year, senior – a fourth year.

Many colleges require all freshmen and sophomores to take one or two fall year courses in each of three fields. Certain courses, such as English or history may be required for all, with some election permitted in the other fields. The executive head of a college or a university is usually called the president. Within a college there may be departments according to subject matter fields. The members of the faculty hold academic ranks such as instructor, assistant professor, associate professor and professor. Harvard University was established in 1636 with the purpose of providing a literate ministry for the churches. It was a small institution enrolling only 20 students 1642.

Ex. 5. Read the text and find the answers to the following questions given below.

Basic curricular structure.

Most students in the United States do not begin to specialize into a narrow field of study until their sophomore year of college. Some schools do encourage students to take electives in the areas they are considering for a career. Generally, at the high school level, they take a broad variety of classes without special emphasis. The curriculum varies widely in quality and rigidity; for example, some states consider 70 (on a 100-point scale) to be a passing grade, while others consider it to be as low as 60 or as high as 75.

If funds are available, a high school may provide Advanced Placement or International Baccalaureate courses, which are special forms of honors classes. AP or IB courses are usually taken during the third or fourth years of high school, either as a replacement for a typical third-year course (e.g., taking AP U.S. History as a replacement for standard U.S. History), a refresher of an earlier course (e.g., taking AP Biology in the fourth year even though one already took Biology as a freshman), or simply as a way to study something interesting during one's senior year (e.g., AP Economics).

Most postsecondary institutions take AP or IB exam results into consideration in the admissions process. Because AP and IB courses are supposed to be the equivalent of freshman year college courses, postsecondary institutions may grant unit credit which enables students to graduate early. Other institutions use examinations for placement purposes only: students are exempted from introductory course work but may not receive credit towards a concentration, degree, or core requirement. Institutions vary in the selection of examinations they accept and the scores they require to grant credit or placement, with more elite institutions tending to accept fewer examinations and requiring higher scoring. Both public schools and private schools in wealthy neighborhoods are able to provide many more AP and IB course options than impoverished inner-city high schools, and this difference is seen as a major cause of the differing outcomes for their graduates.

Also, in states with well-developed community college systems, there are often mechanisms by which gifted students may seek permission from their school district to attend community college courses full time during the summer, and during weekends and evenings during the school year. The units earned this way can often be transferred to one's university, and can facilitate early graduation. Early college entrance programs are a step further, with students enrolling as freshmen at a younger-than-traditional age.

1. What is the field of study in the colleges?

2. What does a high school provide if funds are available?
3. What are AP or IB exam results?
4. Institutions vary in the selection of examinations they accept and the scores aren't they?
5. What are there in states with well-developed community college systems?

Ex.6. Read the text and do the test below

Nobel Prize

After inventing dynamite, Swedish-born Alfred Nobel became a very rich man. However, he foresaw its universally destructive powers too late. I Nobel preferred not to be remembered as the inventor of dynamite, so in 1895, just two weeks before his death, he created a fund to be used for awarding prizes to people who had made worthwhile contributions to mankind. Originally there were five awards: literature, physics, chemistry, medicine, and peace. Economics was added in 1968, just sixty-seven years after the first awards ceremony.

Nobel's original legacy of nine million dollars was invested, and the interest on this sum is used for the awards which vary from \$30,000 to \$ 125,000. Every year on December 10, the anniversary of Nobel's death, the awards (gold medal, illuminated diploma, and money) are presented to the winners. Sometimes politics plays an important role in the judges' decisions. Americans have won numerous science awards, but relatively few literature prizes. No awards were presented from 1940 to 1942 at the beginning of World War II. Some people have won two prizes, but this is rare; others have shared I heir prizes.

I. Answer the question: Why was the Nobel prize established?

1. to recognize worthwhile contributions to humanity
2. to resolve political differences
3. to honor the inventor of dynamite
4. to spend money

II. Answer the question: in which area have Americans received the most awards?

1, literature ' peace 1. economics 4. science

I11. Which of the sentences has wrong information?

I. Awards vary in monetary value.

2. Ceremonies are held on December 10 to commemorate Nobel's invention.
3. politics can play an important role in selecting the winners.
4. Few individuals have won two awards.

Answers:

I' II I III.4 IV.2 V.3

Listening

Ex. 1. Listen to the text and act as an interpreter

Extracurricular activities

Many students, mostly in middle and high schools, participate in extracurricular activities. Sports programs and their related games, especially football and/or basketball, are major events for American students and for larger schools can be a major source of funds for school districts.

Interpreter.....

Schools may sell "spirit" shirts to wear to games; school stadiums and gymnasiums are often filled to capacity, even for non-sporting competitions.

Interpreter.....

The North Mesquite High School band performs at a marching band competition, one of many types of extracurricular activities engaged in by American students

Interpreter.....

High school athletic competitions often generate intense interest in the community, though a greater prevalence is seen in rural areas. Elite high school athletes command significant media attention and fierce competition between university athletic programs for their skills. Many state high school championship tournaments in these two sports are attended by tens of thousands each year.

Interpreter.....

In addition to sports, many non-athletic extracurricular activities are usually present in American schools, both public and private. Activities include student government, school newspapers, and various academic groups such as writing clubs, debate teams, quiz teams, club sports (not provided with the same funds or privileges as other sports programs), peer groups, and various other activities.

Interpreter.....

Sports are an important part of life on most campuses. Most coeducational and men's schools belong to various athletic leagues. Teams within these leagues compete against one another for the league championship. Football is the college sport that arouses the most national interest.

Interpreter.....

Especially in their first year, US students spend a lot of time on social activities. When social activities take up too much time, students skip lectures or cut class and take after the vocation. Generally, students must keep a C average to remain in school. Even some students complete college in less than 4 years by attending summer sessions.

Interpreter.....

For most students, the college years are exciting and rewarding, but they are certainly not easy or carefree. Just about all college students face the pressure of making important career decisions and anxiety about examinations and grades.

Interpreter.....

Many students have additional problems - too little money, not enough sleep, and a feeling of loneliness because they are far from home. Still, many people look back on their college years as the happiest time of their lives. Many alumni feel great loyalty to their former schools. Throughout their lives, they cheer for their school's athletic teams, donate money to help the institution grow, and go back to visit for homecoming festivities.

Interpreter.....

Exercise 2 Listen to the passage of the text and choose the correct title which expresses the main content of it.

In the United States, education of the mentally retarded, blind, and deaf is structured to adhere as closely as possible to the same experience received by normal students. Blind and deaf students usually have separate classes in which they spend most of their day, but may sit in on normal classes with guides or interpreters. The mentally retarded are required to attend the same amount of time as other students; however, they also usually spend most of their day in separate classrooms, commonly known as special education or specialed. The government funds their study.

1. Educational system.
2. Students with special needs.
3. Government funds

Speaking

Ex. 1. Work in groups : one reads and listen to him|her. One retells the text, translates the speech into mother-tongue orally.

Post-secondary education

Post-secondary education in the United States is known as college or university and commonly consists of four years of study at an institution of higher learning. Like high school, the four undergraduate grades are commonly called freshman, sophomore, junior, and senior years. Students traditionally apply to receive admission into college, with varying difficulties of entrance. Schools differ in their competitiveness and reputation; generally, public schools are viewed as more lenient and less prestigious than the more expensive private schools. Admissions criteria involve test scores (the SAT and ACT) and class ranking as well as extracurricular activities performed prior to the application date. Also, many colleges consider the rigor of previous courses taken along with the grades earned. Certain test scores, class rank, or other numerical factors hardly ever have absolute, required levels, but often have a threshold below which admission is unlikely.

Once admitted, students engage in undergraduate study, which consists of satisfying university and class requirements to achieve a bachelor's degree. The most common method consists of four years of study leading to a Bachelor of Arts

(BA), a Bachelor of Science (BS), or sometimes (but very rarely) another bachelor's degree such as Bachelor of Fine Arts (BFA).

Those seeking to continue their education may transfer to a four-year college or university (after applying through a similar admissions process as those applying directly to the four-year institution,). Some community colleges have automatic enrollment agreements with a local four-year college, where the community college provides the first two years of study and the university provides the remaining years of study, sometimes all on one campus. The community college awards the associate's degree and the university awards the bachelor's and master's degrees.

Ex.2. Exchange the information by asking questions on the content of the text and answering

After additional years of study and sometimes in conjunction with the completion of a master's degree, students may earn a Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D.) or other doctoral degree, such as Doctor of Arts, Doctor of Education or Doctor of Theology. Some programs, such as medicine, have formal apprenticeship procedures like residency and interning which must be completed after graduation and before one is considered to be fully trained. Other professional programs like law and business have no formal apprenticeship requirements after graduation (although law school graduates must take the bar exam in order to legally practice law).

Entrance into graduate programs usually depends upon a student's undergraduate academic performance or professional experience as well as their score on a standardized entrance exam like the GRE (graduate schools in general), the LSAT (law), the GMAT (business), or the MCAT (medicine). Many graduate and law schools do not require experience after earning a bachelor's degree to enter their programs; however, business school candidates may be considered deficient without several years of professional work experience. Only 8.9 percent of students ever receive postgraduate degrees, and most, after obtaining their bachelor's degree, proceed directly into the workforce

Ex 3. Use Role play. One reads , another one finds the key words in the paragraph and the third one uses them in the sentences, then they change their roles.

The Modern Library

Modern libraries, in addition to providing patrons with access to books and other materials, often publish lists of accessions and may maintain a readers' advisor service. Interlibrary loan services, lecture series, public book reviews, and the maintenance of special juvenile collections are other important recent developments. Three systems of book classification are widely used to facilitate

access to library collections: the Dewey decimal system of Melville Dewey, the system of Charles Ammi Cutter, and the Library of Congress system.

Since the 1930s public library systems have had several technological tools at their disposal, including micro-photographic techniques for copying, computer data banks enabling the storage of far more information and the search of indexes and catalogs far more quickly than ever before, and computer networks that provide instant access to materials in libraries throughout the world and to the Internet and its increasingly rich resources.

Major university libraries in the United States must work to meet an enormous demand for research materials and spend nearly \$5 million a year for books and related supplies such as binding materials.

Libraries in the United States and Great Britain benefited greatly from the philanthropy of Andrew Carnegie, who gave more than \$65 million for public library buildings in the United States alone and strengthened local interest by making the grants contingent upon public support. Among the innovations of the late 19th cent, were free public access to books (involving elaborate classification schemes) and branch libraries or deposit stations for books in many parts of cities; in the early 20th cent, traveling libraries, or "bookmobiles," began to take books to readers in rural or outlying areas

Ex.4. Task for 3-5 minutes. Give a talk on learning educational system of the

Education in the USA

The American system of school education differs from the systems in other countries. There are state public schools, private elementary schools and private secondary schools. Public schools are free and private schools are fee-paying. Each state has its own system of public schools.

Elementary education begins at the age of six or seven, when a child goes to the first grade (form). At the age of sixteen schoolchildren leave the elementary school and may continue their education at one of the secondary schools or high schools, as they call them.

The program of studies in the school includes English, Arithmetic, Geography, History of the USA, Natural Sciences and, besides, Physical Training, Singing, Drawing, Wood or Metal Work, etc. Sometimes they learn a foreign language and general history. Besides, giving general education some high schools teach subjects useful to those who hope to find jobs in industry and agriculture or who want to enter colleges or universities.

After graduating from secondary schools a growing number of Americans go on to higher education. The students do not take the same courses. During the first two years they follow a basic program. It means that every student must select at least one course from each of the basic fields of study: English, Natural Sciences, Modern Languages, History or Physical Training. After the first two years every student can select subjects according to his professional interest.

Ex. 5. Retell the main points of the text And compare with the system of education in your country.

The USA does not have a national system of education. All educational matters are left to states. 50 per cent of funds for education come from state sources, about 40 from local funds, and only 6 per cent from the federal government. There are two major types of schools in the USA— public which are free, and private, or fee-paying. Four of five private schools are run by churches and other religious groups.

Elementary education starts at the age of 6 and continues till 10-11 years. Secondary education is provided from the age 11 — 12. Intermediate school includes grades 6 through 9 for ages 11-12 up to 14—15. A senior high school may include grades 9—10 through 12. A senior high school may be comprehensive, general or vocational. A comprehensive school offers a broad program of academic and vocational education, a general school offers a more limited program. A vocational school focuses on vocational training with some general educational subjects. All such programs — academic, technical, or practical are generally taught under one roof. Nevertheless, many students of high school don't finish it. 1 per cent of American citizens at the age of 14 can neither read, nor write. High school students who wish to attend a college or a university go through one of the two standard tests — SAT (Scholastic Aptitude Test) and ACT (American College Test). They are given by non-profit, non-governmental organizations.

There are several ways to continue in education: universities, colleges, community colleges, and technical and vocational schools. A university in the USA usually consists of several colleges; each college specializes in a subject area. There are colleges of liberal arts, colleges of education and business colleges. A program for undergraduates usually takes four years and leads to the Bachelor of Arts or Science degree. After that, students may leave the university or go on for a graduate or professional degree. The university may be funded from several different sources. A publicly funded university gets some money form the state government. A privately funded university gets money from private sources only. A university may be funded by a religious group.

Writing

Ex1. Translate into English

Образование в США

Американская система школьного образования отличается от систем других стран. Есть государственные общественные школы, частные начальные школы и частные средние школы. Государственные школы являются бесплатными, а частные школы - платные. Каждый штат имеет свою собственную систему общественных школ.

Начальное образование начинается в возрасте шести или семи лет, когда ребенок идет в первый класс. В возрасте шестнадцати школьники заканчивают начальную школу и могут продолжить свое образование в одной из средних школ или хай-скул, как они их называют.

Программа обучения в школе включает английский язык, арифметику, географию, историю США, естественные науки и, кроме того, физическую культуру, пение, рисование, труды и т. д. Иногда они изучают иностранный язык и общую историю. Кроме предоставления общего образования некоторые средние школы преподают предметы, полезные для тех, кто надеется найти рабочие места в промышленности и сельском хозяйстве или кто хочет пойти в колледжи или университеты.

После окончания средней школы все большее число американцев получает высшее образование. Студенты не изучают одинаковые курсы. В течение первых двух лет они следуют основной программе. Это означает, что каждый студент должен выбрать по крайней мере один курс из общих отраслей науки: английский язык, естественные науки, современные языки, история и физическая культура. После первых двух лет каждый студент может выбрать предметы в соответствии с его профессиональными интересами.

Правительство не дает прямой финансовой помощи учреждениям высшего образования. Студенты должны оплачивать обучение. Это создает финансовые трудности для некоторых людей. Многие студенты должны работать, чтобы оплатить свои расходы. Американцы придают большое значение вопросам образования. Вот почему Кеннеди сказал: "Наш прогресс как нации не может быть быстрее, чем наш прогресс в образовании".

Exercise 2. Translate the words and expressions into your mother tongue and make up a topic using them:

the general pattern of education, nursery school, junior high school, senior high school, grammar school, curriculum, a single governmental agency, to require homework, vacation, attendance is compulsory, to accommodate, rural community, a one-room country school house, to be taught by the same teacher, admission to school, major subjects, to receive a diploma a fee for tuition.

To attend school, age limits, national curriculum, to provide instruction in, it is not necessary, teachers' certificates, to issue certificates, high school teaching, minimum requirement for, the decentralization of school control, absolute security of tenure, teacher-training institution, sufficient number of, fully trained teachers, to drop out of the profession, recruiting and supply, lowering certification standards.

Ex.3. Write the main content of the text comparing with the master's degree in your country.

Master's Degree

University level second stage: Master's Degree, Post-Master's Degree/Certificate, Diploma/Certificate, Degree of Education Specialist:

The Master's degree represents the second stage of higher education and is the first advanced (graduate) degree. U.S. Master's degrees may be taught (without thesis) or research (with thesis) and may be awarded in academic or professional fields. Most Master's degrees are designed to take 2 years of full-time study, although the time may vary depending upon the subject, the preparation achieved by the student at the undergraduate level, the structure of the programme, and whether the degree is pursued on a full- or a part-time basis. Research-based Master's degrees generally require completion of a series of advanced course and seminar requirements, comprehensive examinations, and an independent thesis. Non-research Master's degrees generally require completion of a special project as well as coursework and examinations. Both types of Master's degree also require the satisfaction of special requirements (such as linguistic or quantitative skill) or a combination. U.S. awards that fall between the Master's and the research doctorate may be of several types, but all of them fall within the second stage of U.S. higher education. Examples of awards given at this level include the degree of Education Specialist (E.Sp. or Ed.S.) and Certificates and Diplomas of Advanced Study (C.A.E., D.A.E.).

Ex. 4. Write the main content of the text comparing with the doctorate degree in your country.

Research Doctorate:

The Research Doctorate represents the third and highest stage of higher education in the United States and may be awarded in academic disciplines and some professional fields of study. This degree is not awarded by examination or coursework only, but requires demonstrated mastery of the chosen subject and the ability to conduct independent, original research. Doctoral programmes require intensive study and research in at least one subfield and professional level competence in several others. Following a series of research seminars designed to prepare the individual research proposal, come candidate examinations (covering at least two subfields in addition to the field of research focus, one of which must be in a subject outside the doctoral student's own faculty but related to his/her research). If the candidate examinations are passed at a satisfactory standard (excellent or higher), the student is advanced to candidacy for the doctorate and selects a research committee of senior faculty who will approve the dissertation topic, monitor progress, and examine the student when the research is finished. The conduct of research and preparation of the dissertation can take anywhere from one to several years depending on the chosen subject, available research funding, and the location of the research. When the dissertation is finished and approved as a document by the chair of the research committee, that individual convenes the full committee plus any outside faculty and public guests and presides over the candidate's oral defense of the dissertation. An unanimous vote of the research committee and examiners is generally required to award the doctorate. Most doctoral degrees take at least 4 or 5 years of full-time study and research after the award of a Bachelor's degree or at least 2 to 3 years following a Master's degree. The actual time to obtain the degree varies depending upon the subject and the structure of the programme. Research Doctorates are awarded in the academic disciplines and for theoretical research in some professional fields. The most common of such degrees is the Doctor of Philosophy (PhD). There are a variety of equivalent degree titles used in some institutions and disciplines.

Ex.5. Write the main content of the text comparing with the university level studies in your country.

University level studies

University level first stage: Associate Degree, Bachelor Degree, Advanced Certificate, First Professional Degree:

The Associate degree is the first academic or professional degree that can be awarded in U.S. postsecondary education. Holders of this degree may apply to enter higher degree programs at the Bachelor's level, but are not qualified to apply directly for advanced (graduate) studies program. Programs of study for this degree are usually designed to take 2 years of full-time study, but some take longer to complete. Those who pursue this degree on a part-time basis also take longer than 2 years to complete their studies. The Associate degree may be awarded in the liberal arts and general studies as an academic qualification or it may be awarded in a professional occupational field. Some professional career programs at the Associate level are terminal vocational programs that do not lead to further study, while others do so. Associate degree programs generally fulfil 2 years of the course requirements needed for a Bachelor's degree. Credit for Associate degree studies is usually transferable to Bachelor's degree programs, especially where transfer agreements have been established between or among institutions. The Bachelor's degree is the second academic degree that can be awarded in U.S. postsecondary education, and is one of two undergraduate (first) degrees that qualify a student to apply to programs of advanced (graduate) study (the other such degree is the first-professional degree). Programs of study for this degree are designed to take between 4 and 5 years, depending on the field of study. Part-time students may take longer to complete the degree requirements. Honours programs are offered by many institutions that award the Bachelor's degree. These generally require the completion of additional requirements such as preparation of an undergraduate thesis, honours paper or project, advanced coursework, or special examinations. Advanced certificates requiring a year or less of study following (and sometimes accompanying) completion of a Bachelor's are sometimes awarded to signify a concentration in a sub-specialization or completion of a related set of competences. First professional degrees comprise a limited number of second first degrees. Students are only admitted to first professional degree programs after completing most, or all, of a Bachelor's degree program in another subject. Thus, first-professional degrees are considered graduate-level degrees for purposes of admissions and student financial assistance. The study content of the first professional degree program is undergraduate in nature and the degrees are prerequisites for entry-level access to certain regulated professions. Confusion sometimes arises because several first professional degrees use the term 'doctor' in the title even though they are not advanced research degrees. First professional degrees are awarded in Medicine (MD), Dentistry (DDS/DMD), Veterinary Medicine (DVM), Osteopathic Medicine (DO), Optometry (OD), Paediatrics (DPM), Chiropractic (DC), Pharmacy (D.Pharm), Divinity (M.Div), Rabbinics (MHL/Rav), and Law (JD).

Self-work

Ex. 1 Read and translate into your mother-tongue

Harvard University

This historical town is separated from Boston by the Charles River. It is the seat of Harvard University and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).

Harvard University, the country's oldest institution of higher learning was established in 1636. Its enrollment grew from 12 students to its current total of nearly 19,000 degree candidates. It is the great desire of every successful student to be given the opportunity to study there. Harvard developed as a modern university in the 19th century, as other professional schools were added to the original college.

Harvard's superior academic traditions, extensive course offerings, distinguished faculty and devotion to research have made it one of the world's leading institutions of higher learning. The university library houses a total of more than 12 million volumes, and the Fogg Art museum is a world-class university art museum. Harvard is closely associated with many renowned research facilities and engages scholars to study and resolve global problem relating to government, health, and education. Harvard university contains the undergraduate college and ten graduate schools: Divinity (theology), Law, Dental Medicine, Medicine, Arts and Sciences, Business Administration, Education, Public Health, Design, and the John F. Kennedy School of Government. It is a member of the Ivy League, a group of prestigious East coast colleges that also includes Yale, Princeton and Dartmouth. Women were first admitted to the Harvard community in 1879.

Students live in one of 13 Harvard Houses, often lovely Georgian-style buildings that surround courtyards. Harvard is a city with 500 buildings, including more than 100 libraries, nine museums and dozens of laboratories on 380 acres of land, primarily in Cambridge. The center of this "universe" is Harvard Yard, the oldest part of the university - famous by the Widener Library, Memorial Church and University Hall.

Ex. 2. Read the text and write the answers to the questions given below.

Student Life

The USA has the world's largest international student population, with nearly 600,000 students choosing to broaden their education and life experience in the United States. Nearly 4% of all students enrolled in higher-level education are international students, and the numbers are growing. From the mid-1950's, when

international student enrollment was only just reaching 35,000, international education in the USA has come a long way. The USA “Way of Life”

If you are planning to live, learn and grow in the United States, you already possess a well-known American characteristic—a sense of adventure! As an international student, you will experience many new and exciting things. In this section, we hope to prepare you for some of the adventures involved in living in the United States.

It is difficult, if not impossible, to discuss exactly what “Living in the U.S.” means to everyone. American culture has been enriched by the values and belief systems of virtually every part of the world. From an international student’s perspective, that diversity is very valuable. If you choose to live in a completely different environment, you may be challenged with new situations every day; but if you decide to live in a part of the U.S. that resembles your home country in some ways, you may find comfort in those similarities.

Learning more about yourself is perhaps the most important part of your decision to travel to the U.S. Once you know what you want to achieve, then you can identify the right place to study and live and grow in the States.

1. How many students study at the Universities of the USA?
2. What kind of a well-known American characteristic do you possess if you are planning to live, learn and grow in the United States?
3. How has American culture been enriched?
4. May you find comfort in the similarities?
5. What is the most important part of your decision to travel to the U.S?

Ex 3. Translate the text into your mother-tongue.

Culture Shock

You are about to embark on totally NEW experience. “New” means “recently discovered, recognized, or learned about; different from the former; being in a position or place for the first time.” You probably expect that things will not be the same in the United States as they are in your home country; but are you prepared to deal with those differences?

New challenges always accompany new experiences. You may occasionally feel confused, unsure and uncomfortable in the United States. People may have different values and new ways of doing things that seem strange to you. You may feel that everything has changed, including your immediate support system of family and friends.

All of these things may contribute to “culture shock.” To minimize the shock, you will probably want to keep in touch with family and friends back home—but it is important to also identify new sources of support. People that you meet through your school’s international student office may also be a likely source of support. You could also contact relatives or friends who live in the United States to ask for their advice.

You may also want to maintain a few habits here in the States. Perhaps you could continue to practice your own faith on a regular basis, with a group of like-minded individuals. Or maybe you enjoy jogging, playing chess, or cheering for your favorite sports team. While the activity will most likely be somewhat “Americanized,” it may offer comfort to do some of the things that you enjoy in your back in your home country.

During the transition from your home country to the U.S., new support will most likely come from the admissions office or international student office at the U.S. campus you choose to attend. Most offices coordinate orientation sessions for new students within the first few days of your arrival, to help you get acquainted with your new surroundings.

Other forms of support will come from new friends, an academic advisor or psychological counseling centers. In the U.S., many schools have therapists who have been trained to work with people just like you to discuss the types of new challenges you face.

Most importantly, be prepared to open yourself to new experiences; be prepared to learn, not only in the classroom, but in your interactions with new people every day.

Ex.4. Put the suitable words from the text

University campuses

“The International Student Orientation Program,” traditionally coordinated by the Admissions Office or the Office of International Programs. College and university campuses are abound with activities designed to foster friendships. Many schools designate a “Student Activities Center” (also called a student union) where you may learn of different activities and programs Many times, topics include immigration, academic advisors, computer and library resources, telephone services, public safety, medical services, and banking and transportation options. (Be sure to see Study/ Living: Money Matters for more details about money management during your stay.) During orientation, students often learn of upcoming activities such as trips to local points of attraction.

College and university campuses are abound with activities designed to foster friendships. Many schools designate a “Student Activities Center” (also called a student union) where you may learn of different activities and programs, such as student government, the newspaper staff, outdoors club, chorus, dance, and a number of athletic teams. Explore which ones may suit you best!

1. Many times, topics ... immigration, academic advisors, computer and... ... , telephone services, public safety, medical services, and banking and ... options.

2. College and university campuses are abound with activities designed to ... friendships. Many schools ... a “Student Activities Center” (also called a student union) where you may learn of different activities and programs

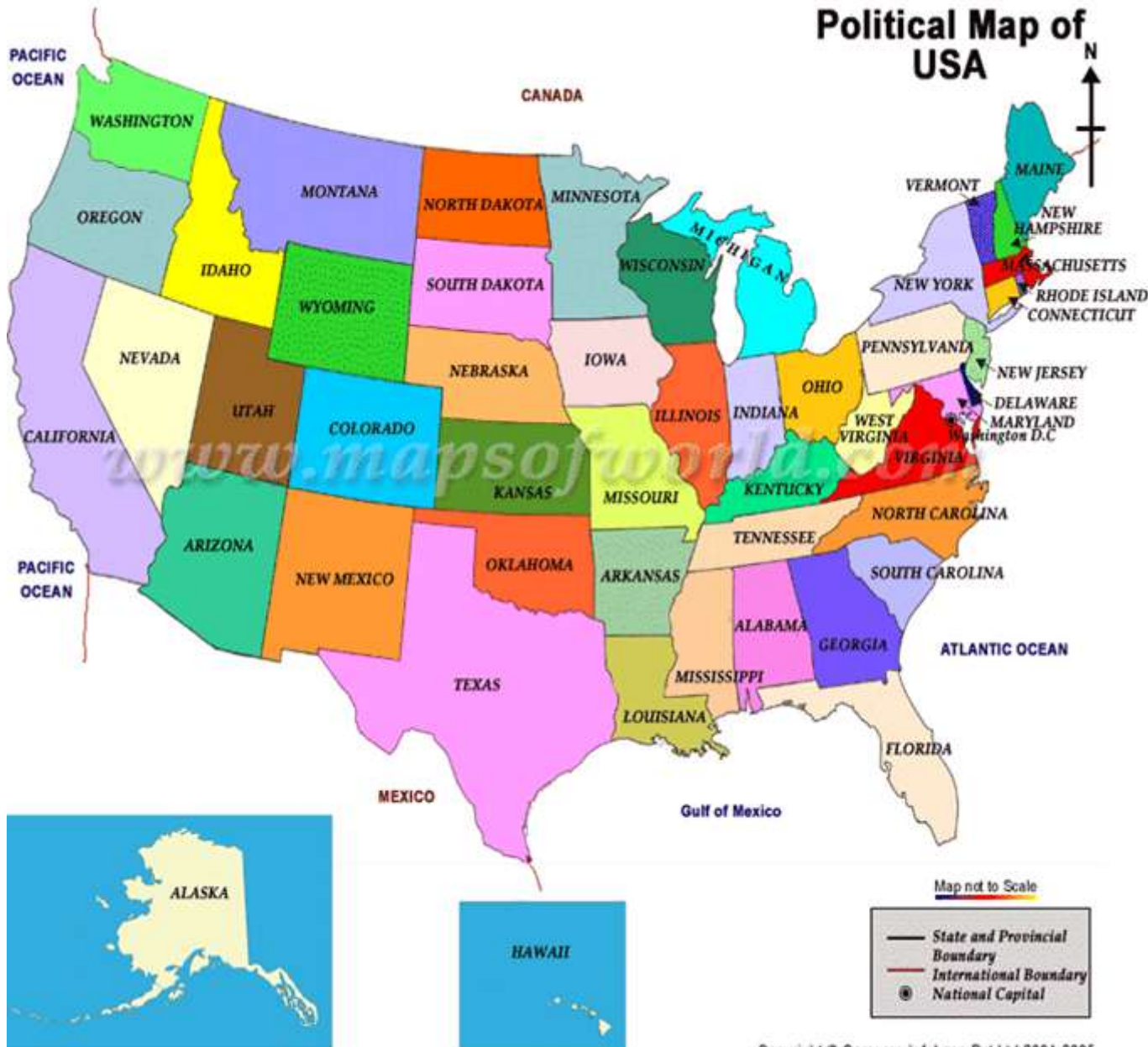
3. College and university ... are abound with activities ... to foster friendships. Many schools ... a “Student Activities Center” (also called a student union) where you may learn of different activities and programs

4.“The International Student Orientation Program,” traditionally ... by the Admissions Office or the Office of... ...

5. During... , students often learn of ... activities such as trips to local points of attraction.

APPENDIX

The States of the United States of America



1. **Alabama(AL).** Admitted in 1819 as the 22nd state, Alabama forms a roughly rectangular shape on the map, elongated in a north-south direction. It is bordered by Tennessee to the north, Georgia to the east, and Mississippi to the west. The Florida panhandle blocks Alabama's access to the Gulf of Mexico except in Alabama's southwestern corner, where Mobile Bay is located. Montgomery is the state capital. Its nickname is Cotton Plantation state. National bird is Yellowhammer and its flower is Camellia.

2. Alaska(AK). Admitted to the union as the 49th state in 1959, Alaska lies at the extreme northwest of the North American continent and is the largest peninsula in the Western Hemisphere. It is bounded by the Beaufort Sea and the Arctic Ocean to the north; Canada's Yukon territory and British Columbia province to the east; the Gulf of Alaska and the Pacific Ocean to the south; the Bering Strait and the Bering Sea to the west; and the Chukchi Sea to the northwest. The capital is Juneau. Its nickname is The Last Frontier. National bird is Willow ptarmigan and flower is flower Forget-me-not

3. Arizona(AZ). Arizona is the sixth largest state in the country in terms of area. Its population has always been predominantly urban, particularly since the mid-20th century, when urban and suburban areas began growing rapidly at the expense of the countryside. Some scholars believe that the state's name comes from a Basque phrase meaning “place of oaks,” while others attribute it to a Tohono O'odham (Papago) Indian phrase meaning “place of the young (or little) spring.” Arizona achieved statehood on Feb. 14, 1912, the last of the 48 coterminous United States to be admitted to the Union. Its nickname is Grand Canyon State. The capital is Phoenix. National bird is Cactus wren and flower is Blossom of the saguaro cactus

4.Arkansas(AR). Arkansas ranks 27th among the 50 states in area, but, except for Louisiana and Hawaii, it is the smallest state west of the Mississippi River. Its neighbors are Missouri to the north, Tennessee and Mississippi to the east, Louisiana to the south, Texas to the southwest, and Oklahoma to the west. The name Arkansas was used by the early French explorers to refer to the Quapaw people—a prominent indigenous group in the area—and to the river along which they settled. The term was likely a corruption of askance, the word applied to the Quapaw by another local indigenous community, the Illinois. Little Rock, the state capital, is located in the central part of the state. Its nickname is The Natural State. The capital is Little Rock. National bird is Mockingbird and flower is Apple blossom.

5. California(CA). California is bounded by the U.S. state of Oregon to the north, by the states of Nevada and Arizona to the east, by the Mexican state of Baja California to the south, and by the Pacific Ocean to the west. It was admitted as the 31st state of the Union on Sept. 9, 1850, and by the early 1960s it was the most populous U.S. state. The fluid nature of the state's social, economic, and political life has for centuries made California a laboratory for testing new modes of living. Its nickname is Golden State. The capital is Sacramento. National bird California valley quail and flower is Golden poppy.

6. Colorado(CO). Colorado is classified as one of the Mountain states, although only about half of its area lies in the Rocky Mountains. It borders Wyoming and Nebraska to the north, Nebraska and Kansas to the east, Oklahoma

and New Mexico to the south, and Utah to the west. Colorado was admitted to the Union on Aug. 1, 1876, as the 38th state. The capital is Denver. Its nickname is Centennial State. National bird is Lark bunting and flower is Rocky Mountain columbine.

7. Connecticut(CT). One of the original 13 states and one of the six New England states, Connecticut is located in the northeastern corner of the country. In area it is the third smallest U.S. state, but it ranks among the most densely populated. Lying in the midst of the great urban-industrial complex along the Atlantic coast, it borders Massachusetts to the north, Rhode Island to the east, Long Island Sound (an arm of the Atlantic Ocean) to the south, and New York to the west. Hartford, in the north-central part of the state, is the capital. The state is roughly rectangular in shape, with a panhandle of Fairfield county extending to the southwest on the New York border. The state's greatest east-west length is about 110 miles (180 km), and its maximum north-south extent is about 70 miles (110 km). Connecticut takes its name from an Algonquian word meaning "land on the long tidal river." "Nutmeg State," "Constitution State," and "Land of Steady Habits" are all sobriquets that have been applied to Connecticut. Its nicknames are Constitution State; Nutmeg. National State Bird is American robin and flower is Mountain laurel.

8. Delaware(DE), (1787) The first of the original 13 states to ratify the federal Constitution, Delaware occupies a small niche in the Boston–Washington, D.C., urban corridor along the Middle Atlantic seaboard. It is the second smallest state in the country and one of the most densely populated. The state is organized into three counties—from north to south, New Castle, Kent, and Sussex—all established by 1682. Its population, like its industry, is concentrated in the north, around Wilmington, where the major coastal highways and railways pass through from Pennsylvania and New Jersey on the north and east into Maryland on the south and west. The rest of the state comprises the northeastern corner of the Delmarva Peninsula, which Delaware shares with Maryland and Virginia (hence its name). Most state government operations are located in Dover, the capital. Its nickname is Capital city. National bird is Wood thrush and flower is American beauty rose.

9. Florida(FL), Admitted as the 27th state in 1845, Florida is the most populous of the Southern states. The capital is Tallahassee, located in the northwestern panhandle. Geographic location has been the key factor in Florida's long and colorful development, and it helps explain the striking contemporary character of the state. Florida, sometimes called the Peninsula State, consists of a large low-lying peninsula and, in the northwest, a strip of land known as the panhandle. It is a region of low, rolling hills, vast swamps and marshes, numerous lakes, and extensive forests. Superimposed on this varied pattern of physical

features are the farmlands, urban areas, transportation routes, and other cultural features that have transformed Florida from largely a wilderness area into one of the fastest-growing states in the Union. Its nickname is Sunshine State. National bird is Mockingbird and flower is Orange blossom.

10. Georgia(GA). The largest of the U.S. states east of the Mississippi River and by many years the youngest of the 13 former English colonies, Georgia was founded in 1732, at which time its boundaries were even larger—including much of the present-day states of Alabama and Mississippi. Its landscape presents numerous contrasts, with more soil types than any other state as it sweeps from the Appalachian Mountains in the north (on the borders of Tennessee and North Carolina) to the marshes of the Atlantic coast on the southeast and the Okefenokee Swamp (which it shares with Florida) on the south. The Savannah and Chattahoochee rivers form much of Georgia's eastern and western boundaries with South Carolina and Alabama, respectively. The capital is Atlanta. Its nicknames is Empire State of the South; peach State. National bird is Brown thrasher and flower is Cherokee rose.

11. Hawaii(HI). Hawaii (Hawaiian: Hawai‘i) became the 50th U.S. state on Aug. 21, 1959. Hawaii is a group of volcanic islands in the central Pacific Ocean. The islands lie 2,397 miles (3,857 km) from San Francisco, Calif., to the east and 5,293 miles (8,516 km) from Manila, in the Philippines, to the west. The capital is Honolulu, located on the island of Oahu. Its nickname is Aloha State. National bird is Nene (Hawaiian goose) and flower is Yellow hibiscus.

12. Idaho(ID). Idaho's area is twice that of the six New England states combined. Its boundaries—with the Canadian province of British Columbia to the north and the U.S. states of Montana and Wyoming to the east, Utah and Nevada to the south, and Oregon and Washington to the west—are both historical and geographic in derivation. The boundary with British Columbia follows the 49th parallel of north latitude, while the border with Utah and Nevada follows the 42nd parallel; both lines were established by treaty—the northern between the United States and Britain in 1846 and the southern between the United States and Spain in 1819. The border with Montana follows the Continental Divide, while the border with Wyoming incorporates a small slice of Yellowstone National Park. Idaho's border with Oregon and Washington is a 480-mile (770-km) straight stretch except between the Idaho cities of Weiser and Lewiston, where Hells Canyon of the Snake River serves as a natural boundary. Boise is the state capital. Admitted to the Union: July 3, 1890 (43rd state). Its nickname is Gem State. The capital is Honolulu. National bird is Mountain bluebird and flower is Syringa.

13. Illinois(IL) stretches southward 385 miles (620 km) from the Wisconsin border in the north to Cairo in the south. In addition to Wisconsin, the state borders Lake Michigan to the northeast, Indiana to the east, Kentucky to the southeast,

Missouri to the west, and Iowa to the northwest. Illinois was named for the Illinois Indians. The capital is Springfield, in the west-central part of the state.

Illinois is one of the most productive agricultural and industrial states in the Union, and its economic influence now extends far beyond the Midwest. This state was admitted to the Union December 3, 1818 (21st state). Its nicknames are Land of Lincoln, Prairie State. National bird is Cardinal and flower is Native violet.

14. Indiana(IN) sits, as its motto claims, at “the crossroads of America.” It borders Lake Michigan and the state of Michigan to the north, Ohio to the east, Kentucky to the south, and Illinois to the west, making it an integral part of the American Midwest. Except for Hawaii, Indiana is the smallest state west of the Appalachian Mountains. With a name that is generally thought to mean “land of the Indians,” Indiana was admitted on Dec. 11, 1816, as the 19th state of the union. Its capital has been at Indianapolis since 1825.

Indiana is one of the leading industrial and agricultural states in the Union. Manufacturing is Indiana's single most important economic activity, but agriculture remains a principal activity throughout much of the state. The state motto, the Crossroads of America, reflects the importance of Indiana in the commercial activities of the country, for numerous transportation routes pass through the state. Indianapolis, the state's capital and largest city, is itself a crossroads, situated at the center of the state with most transportation routes radiating from it. Its nickname is Hoosier State. National bird is Mountain bluebird and flower is Peony.

15. Iowa(IA) was admitted to the union as the 29th state on Dec. 28, 1846. As a Midwestern state, Iowa forms a bridge between the forests of the east and the grasslands of the high prairie plains to the west. Its gently rolling landscape rises slowly as it extends westward from the Mississippi River, which forms its entire eastern border. The Missouri River and its tributary, the Big Sioux, form the western border, making Iowa the only U.S. state that has two parallel rivers defining its borders. Iowa is bounded by the states of Minnesota to the north, Wisconsin and Illinois to the east, Missouri to the south, and Nebraska and South Dakota to the west. Des Moines, in the south-central part of the state, is the capital. The state name is derived from the Iowa Native American people who once inhabited the area. Its nickname is Hawkeye State. National bird is Eastern gold finch and flower is Wild rose.

16. Kansas(KS) is bounded by Nebraska to the north, Missouri to the east, Oklahoma to the south and Colorado to the west. Lying amid the westward-rising landscape of the Great Plains of the North American continent, Kansas became the 34th state on Jan. 29, 1861. In that year the capital was located in Topeka by popular election, outpolling nearby Lawrence by some 2,700 votes. The state's

name is derived from that of the Kansa, or Kaw, whose name comes from a Siouan-language phrase meaning “people of the south wind.”

Kansas is usually designated as a Midwestern state. However, it is commonly referred to as a plains state, and sections are often considered part of the Southwest or West. Such variations in terminology reflect the fact that Kansas does not belong wholly to one region and is an area of diversified relief, climate, economy, and patterns of settlement. The landscape of the east, with its hills, woodlands, grain-and-livestock farms, and comparatively large cities, contrasts sharply with the dry treeless plains and vast wheat farms of the sparsely populated west. Its nickname is Sunflower State. National bird is western meadowlark and flower is Sunflower.

17. Kentucky(KY). Rivers define Kentucky's boundaries except on the south, where it shares a border with Tennessee along a nearly straight line of about 425 miles (685 km), and on the southeast, where it shares an irregular, mountainous border with Virginia. Flowing generally northwestward, the Tug and Big Sandy rivers separate Kentucky from West Virginia on the east and northeast. On the north, Kentucky's boundary follows the Ohio River to the Mississippi, meeting the states of Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois en route. The Mississippi River then demarcates Kentucky's short southwestern border with Missouri. The capital, Frankfort, lies between the two major cities— Louisville, which is on the Ohio River, and Lexington.

Kentucky is one of four states that bear the name commonwealth, and its full title is the Commonwealth of Kentucky. Frankfort is the capital of Kentucky. Lexington-Fayette is the largest city, and Louisville is the center of the state's largest metropolitan area. This state was admitted to the Union on June 1, 1792 (15th state). Its nickname is Bluegrass State. National bird is Kentucky cardinal and flower is Goldenrod.

18. Louisiana(LA) is delineated from its neighbors—Arkansas to the north, Mississippi to the east, and Texas to the west—by both natural and man-made boundaries. The Gulf of Mexico lies to the south. The area of Louisiana includes more than 3,000 square miles (7,770 square km) of inland waters. The capital is Baton Rouge.

These activities provide the basis for much of the manufacturing in Louisiana. Baton Rouge is the capital of Louisiana. New Orleans is the largest city. This state was admitted to the Union on April 30, 1812 (18th state). Its nicknames are Pelican State, Bayou State Capital, Baton Rouge. National bird is Eastern brown pelican and flower is Magnolia.

19. Maine(ME). The largest of the six New England states in area, Maine lies at the northeastern corner of the country. Its area, including 2,270 square miles

(5,880 square km) of inland water, represents nearly half of the total area of New England. Maine is bounded to the northwest and northeast by the Canadian provinces of Quebec and New Brunswick, respectively, and to the west by New Hampshire. The famed rocky coastline of the state is angled from southwest to northeast along the Atlantic Ocean. Maine was admitted to the Union on March 15, 1820, as the 23rd state; its capital is Augusta. The Algonquian-speaking peoples inhabiting the region called it “Land of the Frozen Ground,” and there are two theories of the derivation of the state's English name: that it was named for the former French province of Maine and that it was so named for being the “mainland,” as opposed to the coastal islands. Portland is the largest city. Its nickname is Pine Tree State. National bird is Chickadee and flower is White pine cone and tassel.

20. Maryland(MD)(1788). One of the original 13 states, Maryland lies at the center of the Eastern Seaboard, amid the great commercial and population complex that stretches from Maine to Virginia. Its small size belies the great diversity of its landscapes and of the ways of life that they foster, from the low-lying and water-oriented Eastern Shore and Chesapeake Bay area, through the metropolitan hurly-burly of Baltimore, its largest city, to the forested Appalachian foothills and mountains of its western reaches. Its nicknames are Old Line State, Free State. The capital is Annapolis. National bird is Baltimore oriole and flower is Black-eyed Susan.

21. Massachusetts(MA) One of the original 13 states and one of the six New England states lying in the northeastern corner of the country, Massachusetts (officially called a commonwealth) is bounded to the north by Vermont and New Hampshire, to the east and southeast by the Atlantic Ocean, to the south by Rhode Island and Connecticut, and to the west by New York. It is the sixth smallest of the U.S. states in area. The capital is Boston. English explorer and colonist John Smith named the state for the Massachuset tribe, whose name meant “near the great hill”—believed to refer to Blue Hill, which rises south of Boston in an otherwise flat area. Massachusetts's residents represent an amalgamation of the prototypical Yankee spirit of an earlier America and the energies of the later immigrants who flocked to its cities in the 19th and 20th centuries. This state was admitted to the Union on February 6, 1788 (6th state). Its nicknames are Old Colony State, Bay State Capital, Boston. National bird is Chickadee and flower is Mayflower.

22. Michigan(MI). Although by the size of its land Michigan ranks only 23rd of the 50 states, the inclusion of the Great Lakes waters over which it has jurisdiction increases its area considerably, placing it 10th. The capital is Lansing, in south-central Michigan. The state's name is derived from michi-gama, an Ojibwa (Chippewa) word meaning "large lake."

It is unique among the states because it consists of two peninsulas completely separated by water and bordering on four of the five Great Lakes. Between Lakes Michigan and Huron lie the Straits of Mackinac, which separate Michigan's two peninsulas. The Lower Peninsula is bounded on the east by Lakes Huron, Saint Clair, and Erie and by the Detroit and Saint Clair rivers, all of which separate the state from the Canadian province of Ontario. This peninsula is bounded on the south by Ohio and Indiana, on the west by Lake Michigan, and on the north by Lakes Michigan and Huron and by the Straits of Mackinac. This state was admitted to the Union on January 26, 1837 (26th state). Its nicknames is Wolverine State. National bird is Robin and flower is Apple blossom.

23. Minnesota(MN) Minnesota became the 32nd state of the Union on May 11, 1858. A small extension of the northern boundary makes Minnesota the most northerly of the 48 conterminous U.S. states. (This peculiar protrusion is the result of a boundary agreement with Great Britain before the area had been carefully surveyed.) Minnesota is one of the north-central states. It is bounded by the Canadian provinces of Manitoba and Ontario to the north, by Lake Superior and the state of Wisconsin to the east, and by the states of Iowa to the south and South Dakota and North Dakota to the west. Its nickname is North Star State. The capital is St. Paul. National bird is Common loon and flower is Pink- and- white lady's slipper.

24. Mississippi's(MS) name derives from a Native American word meaning "great waters" or "father of waters." It became the 20th state of the Union in 1817. Jackson is the state capital. Its nickname is Magnolia State. National bird is Mockingbird and flower is Magnolia.

25. Missouri(MO). To the north of Missouri lies Iowa; across the Mississippi River to the east, Illinois, Kentucky, and Tennessee; to the south, Arkansas; and to the west, Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska. With the exception of Tennessee, Missouri has more neighboring states than any other U.S. state. Bisecting the state is the Missouri River, flowing from Kansas City in the west, through the state's capital, Jefferson City, in the center, to just above St. Louis in the east, where it joins the Mississippi. Missouri was the name of a group of indigenous people who lived in the area at the time of European settlement; the French named the river after the native community, and the river, in turn, gave its name to the state. Kansas City is the laigtst city. This state was admitted to the Union: August 10, 1821 (24th state). Its nickname is Show-Me State. National bird is Bluebird and flower is Hawthorn.

26. Montana(MT). Only three states— Alaska, Texas, and California—have an area larger than Montana's, and only two states—Alaska and Wyoming—have a lower population density. Montana borders the Canadian provinces of British Columbia, Alberta, and Saskatchewan to the north and the U.S. states of North

Dakota and South Dakota to the east, Wyoming to the south, and Idaho to the west. Although its name is derived from the Spanish *montaña* (“mountain” or “mountainous region”), Montana has an average elevation of only 3,400 feet (1,040 metres), the lowest among the Mountain states. The Rocky Mountains sweep down from British Columbia, trending northwest-southeast into western Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming. The eastern portion of the state, however, is a gently rolling landscape, with millions of grazing cattle and sheep, and with only scattered evidence of human habitation. It forms a part of the northern Great Plains, shared with Alberta, Saskatchewan, North and South Dakota, and northeastern Wyoming. Helena is the capital. This state was admitted to the Union on November 8, 1889 (41st state). Its nicknames are Treasure State, Big Sky Country. National Bird is Western meadowlark and flower is Bitterroot.

27. Nebraska(NE) was admitted to the Union as the 37th state on March 1, 1867. Nebraska is bounded by the state of South Dakota to the north, with the Missouri River making up about one-fourth of that boundary and the whole of Nebraska's boundaries with the states of Iowa and Missouri to the east. The boundary with Kansas to the south was established when the two territories were created by the Kansas-Nebraska Act in 1854. In the southwestern part of the state, the boundary with Colorado forms a right angle (south and west), which creates Nebraska's panhandle, to the west of which is the boundary with Wyoming. Lincoln, in the southeastern part of the state, is the capital. Its nickname is Cornhusker State. The capital is Lincoln. National bird is Western meadowlark and flower is Goldenrod.

28. Nevada(NV) Nevada borders Oregon and Idaho to the north, Utah to the east, Arizona to the southeast, and California to the west. It is the seventh largest of the 50 states. It also, however, is one of the most sparsely settled. Carson City, in the western part of the state, is the capital. Nevada became the 36th state of the Union on Oct. 31, 1864.

Nevada one of the Rocky Mountain states of the United States. A stark and arid land, Nevada is a region of ragged, snow-capped peaks, desert valleys green with sage, and sparsely populated expanses that still retain the vestiges of the Old West. Its nickname is Silver State. National bird is Mountain bluebird and flower is Sagebrush.

29. New Hampshire(NH). One of the 13 original U.S. states, New Hampshire is located in New England at the extreme northeastern corner of the country. It is bounded to the north by the Canadian province of Quebec, to the east by Maine and a 16-mile (25-km) stretch of the Atlantic Ocean, to the south by Massachusetts, and to the west by Vermont. The capital is Concord, located in the south-central part of the state.

New Hampshire one of the six New England states and one of the smaller states of the United States. The state is bordered on the north by the Canadian province of Quebec, on the east by Maine and the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by Massachusetts, and on the west by Vermont. Concord is the capital of New Hampshire. Manchester is the largest city. This state was admitted to the Union on June 21, 1788 (9th state). Its nickname is Granite State. National bird is Purple finch and flower is Purple lilac.

30. New Jersey(NJ). One of the original 13 states, New Jersey is bounded by New York to the north and northeast, the Atlantic Ocean to the east and south, and Delaware and Pennsylvania to the west. The state was named for the island of Jersey in the English Channel. The capital is Trenton.

New Jersey state is in the Middle Atlantic region of the United States. Its long eastern coast faces the Atlantic Ocean. To the northeast and north it is bordered by the Hudson River and New York. To the west lies Pennsylvania. New Jersey is separated from Delaware on the south and southwest by Delaware Bay and the Delaware River. Trenton is the capital of New Jersey. Newark is the largest city. This state was admitted to the Union on December 18, 1787 (3rd state). Its nickname is Garden State. National flower is Purple violet.

31. New Mexico(NM) became the 47th state of the Union in 1912. New Mexico is the fifth largest U.S. state and is bounded by Colorado to the north, Oklahoma and Texas to the east, Texas and the Mexican states of Chihuahua and Sonora to the south, and Arizona (which was part of the Territory of New Mexico from 1850 to 1863) to the west. At its northwestern corner New Mexico joins Arizona, Utah, and Colorado in the only four-way meeting of states in the United States.

New Mexico one of the Mountain states, located in the southwestern United States. A land of plains, plateaus, and mountains, New Mexico is famed for the great variety and magnificent colors of its scenery. Much of the land is used for livestock grazing. Manufacturing and other urban-based economic activities are carried on in only a few cities. Tourists, attracted not only by the scenic beauty of New Mexico's deserts and mountains but also by the rich Native American and Spanish cultures that distinguish the state, have become an important part of the state's economy. National bird is Roadrunner and flower is Yucca.

32. New York(NY). A constituent state of the United States of America, New York is one of the 13 original colonies. It is bounded to the west and north by Lake Erie, the Canadian province of Ontario, Lake Ontario, and the Canadian province of Quebec; to the east by the New England states of Vermont, Massachusetts, and Connecticut; to the southeast by the Atlantic Ocean and New Jersey; and to the south by Pennsylvania. The capital is Albany. This state was Ratified the U.S.

Constitution on July 26, 1788 (11th state). Its nickname is Empire State. National bird is Bluebird.

33. North Carolina(NC). One of the 13 original states, North Carolina lies on the Atlantic coast midway between New York and Florida and is bounded to the north by Virginia, to the east by the Atlantic Ocean, to the south by South Carolina and Georgia, and to the west by Tennessee. The terrain of North Carolina is among the wettest in the country, with vast marshlands in the coastal tidewater area and numerous lakes in the Piedmont and Appalachian regions. These three physical regions account for much of the diversity in lifestyles and cultures within the state's boundaries. The capital is Raleigh.

Long an important agricultural state, North Carolina is the nation's leading producer of tobacco. Since the 1920s, however, it has also been a major source of manufactured goods, especially tobacco products, chemicals, textiles, and furniture. Raleigh is the capital of North Carolina. Charlotte is the largest city and the center of the state's most populous metropolitan region. This state was admitted to the Union on November 21, 1789 (12th state). Its nicknames are Tar Heel State, Old North State. National bird is Cardinal and flower is Dogwood.

34. North Dakota(ND) was admitted to the Union as the 39th state on Nov. 2, 1889. A north-central state, it is bounded by the Canadian provinces of Saskatchewan and Manitoba to the north and by the U.S. states of Minnesota to the east, South Dakota to the south, and Montana to the west. The North Dakota town of Rugby is considered to be the geographic center of the North American continent. Bismarck, located in the center of the state, is the capital.

North of it lies Canada. North Dakota belongs to the vast plains section of the United States, and like other plains states it is predominantly agricultural. Bismarck is the capital of North Dakota. Fargo is the largest city. This state was admitted to the Union: November 2, 1889 (39th or 40th state). Its nickname is Peace Garden State. National bird is Western Meadowlark and flower is Wild Prairie Rose.

35. Ohio(OH) is a constituent state of the United States of America, on the northeastern edge of the Midwest region. Lake Erie lies on the north, Pennsylvania on the east, West Virginia and Kentucky on the southeast and south, Indiana on the west, and Michigan on the northwest. Ohio ranks only 35th in size among the 50 states, and it is one of the smallest states west of the Appalachian Mountains. The state ranks near the top, however, in population. Ohio's capital, after being located in Chillicothe and Zanesville during the early years of statehood, was finally established in newly founded and centrally located Columbus in 1816. The state takes its name from the Ohio River, which in turn traces its name to an Iroquoian word meaning “great water.”

Therefore it attracted settlers from all parts of the country and developed a culture significant for its diversity. Ohio first developed as an agricultural region, and more than half of the land is still devoted to growing crops and raising livestock. This state was admitted to the Union on March 1, 1803 (17th state). Its nickname is Buckeye State. National bird is Cardinal and flower is Scarlet carnation.

36. Oklahoma(OK) borders Colorado and Kansas to the north, Missouri and Arkansas to the east, Texas to the south and west, and New Mexico to the west of its Panhandle region. In its land and its people, Oklahoma is a state of contrast and of the unexpected. The terrain varies from the rolling, timbered hills of the east to the treeless high plains that extend from the Panhandle region into Texas and New Mexico. Oklahoma's east-central region is dominated by the lowlands of the Arkansas River, sweeping in from Colorado and Kansas, and by the Red River, which forms nearly all of its southern border with Texas. The capital is Oklahoma City, near the center of the state. This state admitted to the Union on November 16, 1907 (46th state). Its nickname is Sooner State. National bird is Scissor-tailed flycatcher and flower is Mistletoe.

37. Oregon(OR) is bounded to the north by Washington state, from which it receives the waters of the Columbia River; to the east by Idaho, more than half the border with which is formed by the winding Snake River and Hells Canyon; to the south by Nevada and California, with which Oregon shares its mountain and desert systems; and to the west by the Pacific Ocean, which produces the moderate climate of Oregon's western lands. The capital is Salem, in the northwestern part of the state.

Oregon contains some of the most beautiful scenery in the United States as well as some of the nation's most fertile soils and richest timberlands. However, it was the beaver that first gave rise to the development of Oregon. This state was admitted to the Union: February 14, 1859 (33rd state). Its nickname is Beaver State. National bird is Western meadowlark and flower is Oregon grape.

38. Pennsylvania(PA). One of the original 13 American colonies, Pennsylvania is approximately rectangular in shape and stretches about 350 miles (560 km) from east to west and 150 miles (240 km) from north to south. It is bounded to the north by Lake Erie and New York state; to the east by New York and New Jersey; to the south by Delaware, Maryland, and West Virginia; and to the west by the panhandle of West Virginia and by Ohio. Harrisburg, nestled in the foothills of the Appalachian Mountains, is the capital.

It entered the Union on December 12, 1787, making it second after Delaware. Pennsylvania means "Penn's woodland." It was named in honor of Admiral William Penn, whose son, William Penn, founded the colony as a haven for

members of the Society of Friends, or Quakers, and other religious minorities in 1682. Ratified the U.S Constitution: December 12, 1787 (2nd state). Its nickname is Keystone State. National bird is Ruffed grouse and flower is Mountain laurel.

39. Rhode Island(RI). One of the original 13 states and one of the six New England states. Rhode Island is bounded to the north and east by Massachusetts, to the south by Rhode Island Sound and Block Island Sound of the Atlantic Ocean, and to the west by Connecticut. It is the smallest state in the Union—only about 48 miles (77 km) long and 37 miles (60 km) wide—but is, however, one of the most densely populated states. The extreme compactness of area, proportionally large population, and economic activity have tied it closely to its neighboring states. In addition, Rhode Island's intimate connection to the sea—including more than 400 miles (640 km) of coastline—is the basis of its nickname, the Ocean State. The capital is Providence.

On May 4, 1776, Rhode Island became the first of the 13 original colonies to declare its independence from Great Britain. However, it was the last of the 13 colonies to ratify the Constitution of the United States, doing so on May 29, 1790. The smallest state in the Union, it is, after New Jersey, the second most densely populated and one of the most highly industrialized. This state ratified the U.S. Constitution on May 29, 1790 (13th state). Its nicknames are Little Rhody, Ocean State. National bird is Rhode Island Red and flower is Violet.

40. South Carolina(SC). One of the 13 original colonies, South Carolina lies on the southern Eastern Seaboard of the United States. Shaped like an inverted triangle with an east-west base of 285 miles (459 km) and a north-south extent of about 225 miles (360 km), the state is bounded on the north by North Carolina, on the southeast by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the southwest by Georgia. Columbia, located in the center of the state, is the capital and largest city.

In colonial days, the state was part of a vast region that Charles I, king of England, granted to Sir Robert Heath in 1629. The region was named Carolana, a word derived from the Latin form of Charles, in reference to the monarch. This state was ratified the U.S. Constitution on May 23, 1788 (8th state). Its Nickname is Palmetto State. National bird is Carolina wren and flower is Yellow Jessamine.

41. South Dakota(SD), became the 40th state of the Union on Nov. 2, 1889. The state has two unique physical features: It contains the geographic center of the United States, which is located just north of Belle Fourche, and it has its own continental divide, as a result of which Lake Traverse, in the southeastern corner of the state, flows northward to Hudson Bay, and Big Stone Lake, on the Minnesota border, flows southward to the Gulf of Mexico. South Dakota is bordered by North Dakota to the north, Minnesota and Iowa to the east, Nebraska to the south, and Wyoming and Montana to the west. The state is split by the upper Missouri River

valley into eastern and western regions. Pierre, in central South Dakota, is one of the country's smallest state capitals.

The east, with its flat or rolling lands and fertile soils, resembles portions of other states in the Midwest. However, the western section lies on the Great Plains. The state is mainly an agricultural region. This state was admitted to the Union on November 2, 1889 (39th or 40th state). Its nickname is Coyote State. The capital is Pierre. National bird is Chinese ring-necked pheasant and flower is Pasqueflower.

42. Tennessee(TN) is located in the upper South of the eastern United States and became the 16th state of the Union in 1796. The geography of Tennessee is unique. Its extreme breadth of 432 miles (695 km) stretches from the Appalachian Mountain boundary with North Carolina in the east to the Mississippi River borders with Missouri and Arkansas in the west; its narrow width, only 112 miles (180 km), separates its northern neighbours, Kentucky and Virginia, from Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, to the south. Nashville is the capital and Memphis the largest city. National bird is Mockingbird and flower is Iris.

43. Texas(TX) Texas became the 28th state of the Union in 1845. It occupies the south-central segment of the country and is the largest state in area except for Alaska. The state extends nearly 1,000 miles (1,600 km) from north to south and about the same distance from east to west.

It borders Mexico on the southwest and the Gulf of Mexico on the southeast. To the west is New Mexico, to the north and northeast lie Oklahoma and Arkansas, and Louisiana bounds Texas on the east. This state was admitted to the Union on December 29, (28th state). Its nickname is Lone Star State. The capital is Austin. National bird is Mockingbird and flower is Bluebonnet.

44. Utah(UT). Mountains, high plateaus, and deserts form most of Utah's landscape. The capital, Salt Lake City, is located in the north-central region of the state. The state lies in the heart of the West and is bounded by Idaho to the north, Wyoming to the northeast, Colorado to the east, Arizona to the south, and Nevada to the west. At Four Corners, in the southeast, Utah meets Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona at right angles, the only such meeting of states in the country. Utah became the 45th member of the Union on Jan. 4, 1896.

Its great variety of landscapes includes high wooded mountains, lakes, valley oases, barren salt flats, deserts, and a wild plateau country with strange rock formations and rainbow-colored canyons. Its nickname is Beehive State. National bird is Seagull and flower is Segoe lily.

45. Vermont(VT). One of the six New England states lying in the northeastern corner of the country, Vermont was admitted to the Union on March 4, 1791, as the 14th state. It is sparsely populated, and its capital, Montpelier, is

one of the least-populous U.S. state capitals. Vermont is bordered to the north by Quebec, Can., to the east by New Hampshire, to the south by Massachusetts, and to the west by New York. From the Canadian to the Massachusetts border, the Connecticut River separates Vermont from New Hampshire. The river, from the mean low-water line on the western bank, is entirely within New Hampshire's borders. Its nickname is Green Mountain State. The capital is Montpelier. National bird is Hermit thrush and flower is Red clover.

46. Virginia(VA). One of the original 13 colonies, Virginia is bordered by Maryland to the northeast, the Atlantic Ocean to the southeast, North Carolina and Tennessee to the south, Kentucky to the west, and West Virginia to the northwest. The state capital is Richmond.

This state named for the Virgin Queen, Elizabeth I of England, Virginia was England's first successful overseas colony and the site of the first permanent English settlement in America. At one time it held territory from which several other states were later formed. This state was ratified the U.S. Constitution on June 25, 1788 (10th state). Its nickname is Old Dominion. National bird is Cardinal and flower is Dogwood.

47. Washington(WA). Lying at the northwestern corner of the 48 coterminous states, Washington is bounded by the Canadian province of British Columbia to the north, the U.S. states of Idaho to the east and Oregon to the south, and the Pacific Ocean to the west. The capital is Olympia, located at the southern end of Puget Sound in the western part of the state. The state's coastal location and excellent harbours give it a leading role in trade with Alaska, Canada, and countries of the Pacific Rim. Washington cities have sister cities in several countries, and their professional and trade associations commonly include Canadian members.

Washington is the only state named for a U.S. president. This state was admitted to the Union on November 11, 1889 (42nd state). Its nickname is Evergreen State. National bird is Willow goldfinch and flower is Rhododendron.

48. West Virginia(WV). Admitted to the union as the 35th state in 1863, West Virginia is a relatively small state. It is bordered by Pennsylvania to the north, Maryland and Virginia to the east, Kentucky to the southwest, and Ohio to the northwest. The state capital is Charleston.

West Virginia lies in the very heart of the Appalachian Highlands, and its predominantly mountainous terrain and picturesque scenery have to its nickname as the Mountain State. Its nickname is Mountain State. National bird is Cardinal and flower is Big rhododendron.

49. Wisconsin(WI) was admitted to the Union as the 30th state on May 29, 1848. One of the north-central states, it is bounded by the western portion of Lake Superior and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan to the north and by Lake Michigan to the east. The state of Illinois lies to the south, and Minnesota and Iowa lie to the west and southwest, respectively. The name Wisconsin is an Anglicized version of a French rendering of an Algonquin name, Meskousing, said to mean “this stream of red stone,” referring to the Wisconsin River. Madison, in south-central Wisconsin, is the state capital.

Milwaukee is the largest city of Wisconsin. Its nickname is Badger State. National bird is Robin and flower is Wood violet.

50. Wyoming(WY), became the 44th state of the Union on July 10, 1890. It is the ninth largest U.S. state. It shares boundaries with six other Great Plains and Mountain states: Montana to the north and northwest, South Dakota and Nebraska to the east, Colorado to the south, Utah to the southwest, and Idaho to the west. Cheyenne, the capital, is located in the southeastern corner of the state. Its nickname is Equality State. National bird is Meadowlark.

Questions and Answers on the UK and the USA

The United Kingdom.

1.What is the difference between the United Kingdom and Great Britain?

The United Kingdom is made up of the countries of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Its full name is the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. Great Britain, on the other hand, comprises only England, Scotland and Wales. It is the largest island of the British Isles. Northern Ireland and the Irish Republic form the second largest island.

The Isle of Man and the Channel Islands are not part of the United Kingdom. They are largely self-governing with their own legislative assemblies and systems of law. The British Government is, however, responsible for their defence and international relations.

2.What are National Parks and where are they?

National Parks aim both to protect the outstanding countryside within their boundaries and to provide opportunities for outside recreation for their



many thousands of visitors each year.

There are nine National Parks in England -¹Dartmoor, ²Exmoor, ³Lake District, ⁴North York Moors, 'Northumberland, the ⁶Peak District, 'Yorkshire Dales, The Broads and the ⁹New Forest. A new National Park is proposed for the "'South Downs in southern England.

There are three National Parks in Wales -'Snowdonia, ²Brecon Beacons and the "Pembrokeshire Coast that together account for about 20 per cent of the total land area.

In Scotland, 'Loch Lomond and ²The Trossachs form the first national park and the 'Cairngorms became the second in September 2003. At 3,800 square kilometres it is the largest in Britain.

Northern Ireland's first National Park has been proposed for the Mourne area, one of the most picturesque mountain districts in Ireland.

3.Which are Britain's largest ethnic minority groups?

The largest ethnic minorities in Britain are those of Caribbean, African or other black descent (1,149,000 people).The next largest ethnic groups are Indians (1,053,000 people), and Pakistani and Bangladeshis (1,030,000 people). Overall, ethnic minority groups represent 7.9 per cent of the population of the UK. The ethnic population has evolved from the substantial immigration of people from former British colonies in the Caribbean and South Asian sub-continent during the 1950s and 1960s. In addition, in the 1970s Britain admitted some 28,000 Asians expelled from Uganda and some 22,000 refugees from South East Asia. Considerable numbers of Chinese, Italians, Greek and Turkish Cypriots, Poles, Australians, New Zealanders and people from the United States and Canada are also resident in Britain.

4.What is the population of Britain and its major cities?

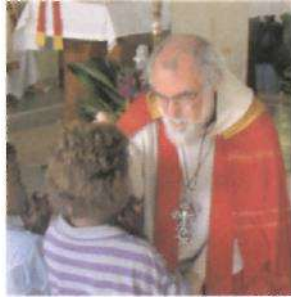
Britain ranks 20th in the world in terms of population size. In mid-2003, the population of the UK was 59.6 million, an increase of 3.7 million since mid-1971. The total population of England is estimated at 49.9 million, Wales is estimated at 2.9 million, Scotland at 5.1 million and Northern Ireland at 1.7 million people. England has the highest population density and Scotland has the lowest. The population of some of Britain's major cities according to the 2001 Census are as follows: London 7,172,091; Birmingham 977,087; Manchester 392,819;Glasgow 577,869; Edinburgh 448,624; Cardiff 305,353.The population of Belfast was estimated at 271,596 in 2003.

5.Which religions are represented in Britain?

Everyone in Britain has the right to religious freedom. In the 2001 Census 72 per cent of people said their religion was Christian. The Anglican church is

legally recognised as the official church of the State.

In Scotland, there are over two million members of the Church of Scotland - the



established church in Scotland. In Northern Ireland, about 46 per cent of the people regard themselves as Protestants and

40 per cent as Roman Catholics.

In Wales, the Anglican church was disestablished in 1920. This means that there is no one officially established church, but Methodism and Baptism are the two most widespread religions.

Britain has one of the largest Muslim communities in Western Europe, with nearly 1.6 million people and over 1,000 mosques and prayer centres. One of the most important Muslim institutions in the Western world is the Central mosque in London and its associated Islamic Cultural Centre.

The Sikh community in the UK comprises 336,000 people, with the largest groups of Sikhs concentrated in Greater London, Manchester and Birmingham. The oldest Sikh temple was established in London in 1908.

The Hindu community in the UK accounts for a further 559,000 people. The first Hindu temple was opened in London in 1962, and there are now over 140 throughout Britain.

Other religious groups include about 267,000 members of the Jewish faith.

6. What are Britain's main imports and exports?

Despite having under one per cent of the world's population, Britain is one of the largest trading nations in the world. In 2002, Britain had a 4.4 per cent share of the world trade in exports and a 5.3 per cent share of imports. Britain exports more per head than either the United States or Japan. Machinery and transport, manufactured goods and chemicals are Britain's largest export

The UK's pharmaceuticals industry is the world's fifth earner in his sector and is second only to the United States in the discovery and development of medicines, including 15 of the world's top 75 best-selling drugs.

Britain is also a major supplier of plastics, aerospace products, electrical and electronic equipment. Britain is the world's second largest exporter of services, including banking, insurance, stockbroking, consultancy and computer programming.

Over 60 per cent of imports into Britain are finished manufactured goods, while just under three per cent are basic materials. EU countries account for seven of the 10 leading suppliers of goods to Britain and Germany is Britain's biggest supplier of imports. Food, beverages and tobacco are major non-manufactured imports, while other major imports include machinery and transport equipment,

chemicals, fuels, clothing and footwear.

7.What does the Union Flag stand for and how should it be flown?

The flag of Britain, commonly known as the Union Jack (which derives from the use of the Union Flag on the jack-staff of naval vessels), embodies the emblems of three countries under one Sovereign. The emblems that appear on the Union Flag are the crosses of three patron saints:

the red cross of St. George, for England, on a white background;

the white diagonal cross, or saltire, of St. Andrew, for Scotland, on a blue background;

the red diagonal cross of St. Patrick, for Ireland, on a white background.

The final version of the Union Flag, including the cross of St Patrick, appeared in 1801, following the union of Great Britain with Ireland. The cross remains in the flag although now only Northern Ireland is part of the United Kingdom.

Wales is not represented in the Union Flag because, when the first version of the flag appeared, Wales was already united with England. The national flag of Wales, a red dragon on a field of white and green, dates from the 15th century and is widely used throughout the Principality. The dragon as a symbol was probably introduced into Britain by the Roman legions. According to tradition, the red dragon appeared on a crest borne by the legendary King Arthur, whose father Uthr Pendragon, had seen a dragon in the sky predicting that he would be king.

The Union Flag should be flown with the broader diagonal band of white uppermost in the hoist (near the pole) and the narrower diagonal band of white uppermost in the fly (furthest from the pole).

8.What are ‘GMT’ and ‘British Summer Time’

GMT or 'Greenwich Mean Time' is the local time of the 0 degree meridian that passes through Greenwich in London, from which the standard times of different areas of the globe are calculated. Thus it is the standard time for Britain, and a basis for other time zones in the world.

Summer Time or BST (British Summer Time) runs from the end of March to the end of October (the last Sunday in each month), when clocks are advanced one hour ahead of GMT to gain maximum use of daylight hours.

9.Does Britain have a National Day?

Scotland's National Day is St. Andrew's Day (30 November) which has now largely been overshadowed by Bums' Night (see Q18). St. Andrew, one of Christ's twelve apostles, is the patron saint of Scotland. Some of his bones are said to have been brought to what is now St. Andrews in Fife during the 4th century.

Since medieval times the X-shaped saltire cross upon which St. Andrew was supposedly crucified has been the Scottish national symbol.

St. David's Day (1 March) is the National Day of Wales. St. David (c.520-588), the patron saint of Wales, was the founder and first abbot-bishop of Menevia, now St. David's in Dyfed, South Wales. The day is commemorated by the wearing of daffodils or leeks by patriotic Welsh people. Both plants are traditionally regarded as the national emblems of Wales.

St. Patrick's Day (17th March) is an official Bank Holiday in Northern Ireland. The work of St. Patrick(c.389-c.461) was a vital factor in the spread of Christianity in Ireland. Born in Britain, he was carried off by pirates, and spent six years in slavery before escaping and training as a missionary. The day is marked by the wearing of shamrocks (a clover-like plant), the national badge of both Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland.

England's national day is St. George's Day (23 April). St. George is the patron saint of England. A story that first appeared in the 6th century tells that St. George rescued a hapless maid by slaying a fearsome fire-breathing dragon! The saint's name was shouted as a battle cry by English knights who fought beneath the red-cross banner of St. George during the Hundred Years War (1338-1453). This is immortalised in Shakespeare's play Henry V in the lines:

"I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips, Straining upon the start. The game's afoot: Follow your spirit; and, upon this charge Cry "God for Harry! England and Saint George!""

Today the red cross of St. George still flies above every English parish church to mark the saint's day.

10. How do the British celebrate traditional and religious holidays?



The excitement begins for children on Christmas Eve, when they hang up their stockings (an old sock or, more ambitiously, pillow cases) around the fireplace or at the foot of the bed for Father Christmas to fill with presents. The English Father Christmas or Santa Claus is first recorded in his traditional red and white outfit in a woodcut of 1653, but the story of Santa arriving in his reindeer-drawn sleigh and descending down the chimney to fill children's stockings with presents derives from the United States.

Practically everyone sits down to a Christmas dinner in the early afternoon of Christmas Day, traditionally roast turkey, but some families prefer goose or roast beef. The turkey is followed by the Christmas pudding, brought to the table flaming hot. Brandy is poured over the pudding, then lit. After dinner, everyone relaxes by going for a walk, playing games, enjoying their presents or watching television.

Boxing Day

Boxing Day (26th December) is so-called because it's a time when tradespeople receive a 'Christmas Box' - some money in appreciation of the work they've carried out all year.

Traditionally a time for visiting family and friends and indulging in more feasting, Boxing Day is a popular day for football matches and other sporting fixtures.

The day is a public holiday, so shops and banks are closed. More recently, some shops have broken with tradition and now open on Boxing Day to encourage shoppers who can't wait to spend their Christmas money!

New Year

New Year is often launched with a party - either at home with family and friends or a gathering in the local pubs and clubs. Merry-making begins on New Year's Eve and builds up to midnight. The stroke of midnight is the cue for much cheering, hooting, whistling, kissing and the drinking of toasts.

Tradition has it that the first person over the threshold on New Year's Day will dictate the luck brought to the household in the coming year. This is known as First Footing. At midnight on 31 December, particularly in Scotland and northern England, 'first footers' (traditionally a tall, dark, good-looking man) step over the threshold bringing the New Year's Luck. The first footer usually brings a piece of coal, a loaf and a bottle of whisky. On entering he must place the fuel on the fire, put the loaf on the table and pour a glass for the head of the house, all normally without speaking or being spoken to until he wishes everyone 'A Happy New Year'. He must, of course, enter by the front door and leave by the back.

In Wales the back door is opened to release the Old Year at the first stroke of midnight. It is then locked up to 'keep the luck in' and at the last stroke the New Year is let in at the front door.

In Scotland the New Year remains the greatest of all annual festivals. Called 'Hogmanay' (a word whose meaning has never been satisfactorily established), it's marked by an evening of drinking and merrymaking, culminating at the stroke of midnight when huge gatherings of people at Edinburgh's Tron Kirk and Glasgow's George Square greet the New Year by linking arms and singing 'Auld Lang Syne'.

Halloween

Halloween (31 October) and its associations with witches and ghosts derives from the Celtic Old Year's Night - the night of all witches, when spirits were said to walk the earth. Witches and supernatural beings are still remembered all over Britain, when bands of children roam the streets in ghoulish costumes, carrying Halloween lanterns - pumpkins hollowed out with a ghostly face cut into one side, which glows when a candle is placed inside. In recent years the custom of 'trick or treating' has gained in popularity. Although we commonly associate this practice

with the United States, the custom originated in England as 'Mischief Night' when children declared one lawless night' of unpunished pranks (usually May Day eve or Halloween)

Halloween parties (usually for children) include games such as apple bobbing, where apples are either floated in water or hung by a string. The object of the game is for the players to put their hands behind their back and try to seize an apple with their teeth alone.

Easter

Easter day is named after the Saxon goddess of spring, Eostre, whose feast took place at the spring equinox. Easter is now the spring feast of the Christian church, commemorating the resurrection of Jesus. It falls on a Sunday between 22 March and 25 April, according to the church calendar.

Traditionally Easter eggs, dyed and decorated or made of chocolate, are given as presents symbolising new life and the coming of spring.

Egg rolling competitions take place in northern Britain on Easter Monday; hard-boiled eggs are rolled down a slope, with the winner being - according to local preference - the one which rolls the furthest, survives the most rolls, or is successfully aimed between two pegs! The best publicised event takes place at Avenham Park in Preston, Lancashire.

Easter parades are also part of the Easter tradition, with those taking part wearing Easter bonnets or hats, traditionally decorated with spring flowers and ribbons.

11.What and when are 'bank' holidays?

Many public holidays in Britain are known as 'bank' holidays - so called because these are days on which banks are legally closed. Most fall on a Monday.

In England and Wales there are six bank holidays: New Year's Day, Easter Monday, May Day (not necessarily 1 May), Spring and Late Summer Holidays at the end of May and August respectively, and Boxing Day. There are also two common law holidays on Good Friday and Christmas Day.

In Scotland there are eight public holidays: New Year's Day, January 2, Good Friday, May Day (not necessarily 1 May), Spring and Summer Holidays at the end of May and the beginning of August respectively, Christmas Day and Boxing Day.

In Northern Ireland there are seven bank holidays: New Year's Day, St. Patrick's Day (17 March), Easter Monday, May Day (not necessarily 1 May), Spring and Late Summer Holidays at the end of May and August respectively, and Boxing Day. There are also two common law holidays on Good Friday and Christmas Day and a public holiday on the anniversary of the Battle of the Boyne (12 July).

There are holidays in lieu of those public holidays which fall at weekends. Shops, museums and other public attractions, such as historic houses and sports centres, may close on certain public holidays, particularly Christmas Day. As this varies, is advisable to check with the individual establishment beforehand.

12. What is Pancake Day?

Pancake Day or 'Shrove Tuesday' (the Tuesday which falls 41 days before Easter) is the eve of the Lenten fast. On this day in earlier times all Christians made their compulsory confessions or 'shrifts' from which the name 'Shrove Tuesday' derives, and took their last opportunity to eat up all the rich foods prohibited during Lent. Thus all eggs, butter and fat remaining in the house were made into pancakes, hence the festival's usual nickname of Pancake Day.

Though the strict observance of Lent is now rare, everyone enjoys eating the customary pancakes and some regions celebrate the day with pancake races. The oldest and most famous is held at Olney in Buckinghamshire. The race is run over 415 yards (about 380 metres) by women over sixteen, wearing a cap and apron. They must 'toss' their pancake (flip it over in the frying pan) at least three times during the race. The winner receives a kiss from the Pancake Bell Ringer (church bells were traditionally rung to remind parishioners to come to confession) and a prayer book from the vicar!

13. What is Guy Fawkes Night?

In 1605 Guy Fawkes, a Roman Catholic, and his fellow conspirators attempted to blow up King James I and the Houses of Parliament, as they disagreed with the King's Protestant policies. They succeeded in storing some 30 barrels of gunpowder in a cellar under the Houses of Parliament, but before Parliament opened on November 5th, the 'gunpowder plot', as it has come to be known, was discovered. Guy Fawkes and his colleagues were executed for treason.

Since then, the 5th of November has been celebrated in England by burning stuffed figures of Guy Fawkes on bonfires, usually accompanied by firework displays. These may be large organized events open to members of the public, or smaller, private gatherings of family and friends held in people's gardens. 'Guy Fawkes Night' is also known as 'Bonfire Night' or 'Firework Night'. In the days leading up to the 5th November children traditionally take their home made Guys out onto the streets of their town or village and ask passers-by for 'a penny for the Guy'. This money is supposedly used as a contribution towards their fireworks.

14. What is the significance of the poppy and when is it worn?

The poppy is traditionally worn on Remembrance Day in memory of service personnel who lost their lives in the First and Second World Wars and subsequent conflicts like the Falklands War and the Gulf War.

The red poppies represent the poppies that grew in the cornfields of Flanders in the First World War where many thousands of soldiers lost their lives. The paper poppies that are worn today are made by ex-service personnel and are sold by representatives of the Royal British Legion, an organization of ex-servicemen and women.

Remembrance Day falls on the nearest Sunday to Nth November - the day peace was declared. The day is commemorated by church services around the

country and a parade of ex-service personnel in London's Whitehall. Wreaths of poppies are left at the Cenotaph, a war memorial in Whitehall, built after the First World War.

By tradition, at 11 am on Remembrance Sunday a two-minute silence is observed at the Cenotaph and elsewhere in the country to honor those who lost their lives. In recent years, a two-minute silence has also been observed at 11 am on 11th November itself.

15.What are Britain's national flowers?

The national flower of England is the rose. The flower has been adopted as England's emblem since the time of the Wars of the Roses (1455-1485) - civil wars between the royal house of Lancaster (whose emblem was a red rose) and the royal house of York (whose emblem was a white rose).The Yorkist regime ended with the defeat of King Richard III by the future Henry VII at Bosworth on 22 August 1485, and the two roses were united into the Tudor rose (a red rose with a white centre) by Henry VII when he married Elizabeth of York.

ROSE	SHAMROCK	THISTLE	DAFFODIL
<i>England</i>	<i>Northern Ireland</i>	<i>Scotland</i>	<i>Wales</i>



The national flower of Northern Ireland is the shamrock, a three-leaved plant similar to clover which is said to have been used by St. Patrick to illustrate the doctrine of the Holy Trinity.

The Scottish national flower is the thistle, a prickly-leaved purple flower which was first used in the 15th century as a symbol of defence.

The three flowers - rose, thistle and shamrock - are often displayed beneath the shield on the Royal Coat of Arms.

The national flower of Wales is usually considered to be the daffodil, which is traditionally worn on St. David's Day. However, the humble leek is also considered to be a traditional emblem of Wales, possibly because its colors, white over green, echo the ancient Welsh standard.

16.Where can I find out about British folk songs and folk tales?

Numerous books have been written about British folk tales, and most libraries in Britain stock a selection of books on both local and national folklore.

The English Folk Dance and Song Society have an extensive library, open to the public A further valuable -source of information is the library of:

17.What are Britain's national costumes?

England

Although England is a country rich in folklore and traditions, it has no

definitive national costume. The most well-known folk costumes are those of the Morris dancers. They can be seen in many country villages during the summer months performing folk dances that once held ritualistic and magical meanings associated with the awakening of the earth.

The costume varies from team to team, but basically consists of white trousers, a white shirt, a pad of bells worn around the calf of the leg, and a hat made of felt or straw, decorated with ribbons and flowers. The bells and ribbons are said to banish harm and bring fertility. Morris dancing was originally an all-male tradition, but now some teams feature women too.

Scotland

Perhaps the most famous national costume in Britain is the Scottish kilt with its distinctive tartan pattern. The kilt is a length of woollen cloth, pleated except for sections at each end. The kilt is worn around the waist, with the pleats at the back and the ends crossed over at the front and secured with a pin.

Each Scottish Clan or family has its own distinctive tartan pattern, made up of different colours, and an official register of tartans is maintained by the Scottish Tartans World Register in Perthshire.

The kilt forms part of the traditional Highland dress, worn by Scottish clansmen and Scottish regiments. In addition to the kilt, a plaid or tartan cloak is worn over one shoulder, and a goatskin pouch or sporran is worn at the front of the kilt. Sometimes tartan trousers or trews are worn instead of a kilt. Women do not have their own distinctive national dress in Scotland, although tartan fabrics are widely used in clothing, and the kilt is also worn.

Wales

The national costume of Wales is based on the peasant costume of the 18th and 19th centuries. Because Wales was isolated geographically from the rest of Britain, many of the individual traits of costume and materials were retained in Welsh dress long after they had died out elsewhere.

Unlike Scotland, the distinctive folk costume of Wales was worn by the women, consisting of a long gown (betgwn) or skirt, worn with a petticoat (pais - the favoured colour was scarlet) and topped with a shawl folded diagonally to form a triangle and draped around the shoulders, with one corner hanging down and two others pinned in front. Aprons were universally worn, sometimes simple, sometimes decorated with colourful embroidery.

The most distinctive part of the costume was the tall black 'Welsh hat' or 'beaver hat', thought to have originated in France at the end of the 18th century. The hats had a tail crown, cylindrical or conical in shape with a wide brim, and were usually trimmed with a band of silk or crepe.

Northern Ireland

Early Irish dress, based on Gaelic and Norse costumes, consisted of check trews for men, worn with a fringed cloak or mantle, or a short tunic for both men

and women, worn with a fringed cloak. This style of dressing was prohibited in the 16th century under sumptuary laws, passed to suppress the distinctive Irish dress and so overcome Irish reluctance to become part of England. In particular, the wearing of the fringed cloak was forbidden, as was the wearing of trows or any saffron-coloured garment (saffron yellow was an important feature of Irish costume).

Although a strong tradition of wearing folk costume does not survive in Northern Ireland today, folk music and folk dancing are very important.

18. What is Burns' Night and how is it celebrated?

Commemorating the birthday of the Scottish poet Robert Burns (1759 -1796), Burns' Night is a patriotic festival celebrated on 25th January, wherever Scots gather together.

First commemorated by the 'Burns Clubs' soon after the poet's death, the evening begins with traditional food, often with a menu written in the poet's 'Lallans' (Lowlands Scots) dialect and sometimes in rhyme. This may include such delicacies as 'Powsowdie' (sheep's head broth); 'Cabbie-claw' (dried cod with horseradish and egg sauce) and 'Finnan toasties' (smoked haddock). But pride of place goes to the haggis - minced mutton, offal, oatmeal and spices boiled in a sheep's stomach!

The meal ends with multifarious toasts, followed by patriotic and sentimental speeches, Scottish dancing and performances of Burns' narrative poems, especially 'Tarn o' Shanter' and concluding with everybody linking arms and singing the most famous of them all, 'Auld Lang Syne'.

The words of 'Auld Lang Syne' which means literally old long since, or 'long ago', are:

Should auld acquaintance be forgot, And never brought to min'? Should auld acquaintance be forgot, And days o' auld lang syne? For auld lang syne, my dear, For auld lang syne, We'll take a cup o' kindness yet For auld lang syne!

Roughly, the verses mean:

Should old friends be forgotten,
and never brought to mind (remembered)?

Should old friends be forgotten,
and days of long ago.

For (the sake of) long ago, my dear,

for (the sake of) long ago,

We'll drink a toast

for the sake of long ago!

19. What are the most common superstitions in Britain?

There are many superstitions in Britain, but one of the most widely-held is that it is unlucky to walk under a ladder - even if it means stepping off the pavement into a busy street!

If you must pass under a ladder you can avoid bad luck by crossing your

fingers and keeping them crossed until you've seen a dog. Alternatively, you must lick your finger and make a cross on the toe of your shoe, and not look again at the shoe until the mark has dried.

Another common superstition is that it is unlucky to open an umbrella in the house - it will either bring misfortune to the person that opened it or to the household. Anyone opening an umbrella in fine weather is unpopular, as it inevitably brings rain!

The number 13 is said to be unlucky for some, and when the 13th day of the month falls on a Friday, anyone wishing to avoid an inauspicious event had better stay indoors.

The worst misfortune that can befall you is incurred by breaking a mirror, as it brings seven years of bad luck! The superstition is supposed to have originated in ancient times, when mirrors were considered to be tools of the gods.

Black cats are generally considered lucky in Britain, even though they are associated with witchcraft - a witch's 'animal-familiar' is usually a black cat. It is especially lucky if a black cat crosses your path.

A commonly-held superstition is that of touching wood for luck. This measure is most often taken if you think you have said something that is tempting fate, such as 'my car has never broken down - touch wood!'

20. What is the most popular food in Britain?

Britain's most popular 'fast food' has got to be fish and chips. Fish and chip shops first made an appearance at the end of the 19th century and since then have been a firm favourite up and down the country. The dish is simplicity itself: fish (usually cod, haddock *or* plaice) is dipped in a batter made from flour, eggs and water and then deep fried in hot fat. Chips are made from thick batons of potato and deep fried.

Fish and chips are served over the counter wrapped in paper, and traditionalists prefer to eat them straight out of the paper because they taste better that way!

The best-known British dish eaten at home has been roast beef, traditionally eaten on Sunday. The dish used to be so popular that the French still refer to the British as roast beefs. Roast beef is served with roast potatoes, vegetables and gravy - a sauce made from meat juices and stock, thickened with flour. Yorkshire pudding - batter baked in hot fat in the oven - is a favourite accompaniment to roast beef.

More recently, the British diet has been enriched by the vast array of ethnic foods available in our shops and restaurants, from Indian and Italian to Chinese and Thai. Indeed curry - a spicy dish with meat, fish or vegetables - is now Britain's most popular meal.

21. Why do the British like drinking tea?

Everything in Britain, says a popular song, 'stops for tea'. It's certainly true that tea is the most popular drink in Britain - far more popular than coffee, which is

favoured throughout the rest of Europe and the United States. The Dutch brought the first tea to Europe in about 1610, but it was not until 1658 that the first advertisement for tea appeared in a London newspaper.

By 1750, tea had become the principal drink in Britain, yet at that time a pound of the cheapest tea cost about one-third of a skilled worker's weekly wage! Tea was jealously guarded by the lady of the house, and kept in special containers called tea-caddies, often with a lock, and carefully doled out by the teaspoon. Gradually, tea-drinking developed into a fashionable social ritual and tea gardens blossomed in places like Vauxhall and Marylebone in London, where couples could stroll in the afternoon and enjoy a cup of tea with bread and butter and cakes. Tea parties were also popular at home, and soon the ritual of 'afternoon tea' was firmly established. Today, throughout the homes, tea-shops and hotels of Britain, the custom of tea-time continues, and it remains a feature of any cricket match or summer fete.

High Tea is a more substantial evening meal, popular in northern England and Scotland.

Tea in Britain is traditionally brewed in a china teapot, adding one spoonful of tea per person and one for the pot. Great importance is attached to the use of freshly boiled water, which is poured onto the leaves and then the tea is left to 'brew' for a few minutes. Most people in Britain prefer a rich, strong cup of tea with milk, and sugar is sometimes added to taste.

22.What is haggis?

Haggis is Scotland's best-known regional dish, a rich, spicy concoction made from lamb's offal (lungs, liver and heart) mixed with suet, onions, herbs and spices, all packed into a skin made of plastic, or, traditionally, a sheep's stomach. Traditionally served on Burns' Night, the haggis is often accompanied by mashed potatoes and mashed swede or turnips. Although the haggis neither sounds nor looks appetising, most people brave enough to try it agree that it is extremely tasty!

23.Is it true that a lot of British dishes are named after places?

The rich variety of British regional cooking is reflected in the names of our favourite dishes. Many regions have their own particular speciality of sweet or savoury fare, or are famed for their local produce.

Cheeses are produced in many regions, although Cheddar, a hard cheese with a strong, nutty taste, is the most popular variety. It originates from a village in Somerset in western England, also famous for its gorge. Other types of cheeses include Cheshire, Lancashire, Stilton and Wensleydale.

Cornwall in south-west England is famous for its Cornish Pasties - a pastry case filled with meat, potatoes and vegetables, which was the traditional midday meal of workers in the region.

The town of Bakewell in Derbyshire has a rich pastry tart named after it. The Bakewell pudding or Bakewell tart was said to have been invented by accident, when a cook forgot to put jam over the custard filling of a pudding - instead she

spread it straight onto the pastry case and poured the custard on top. Thus a new dish was born!

Welsh cakes, a kind of sweet cake cooked on a griddle, were originally served to hungry travellers when they arrived at an inn for the night while they waited for their supper to be cooked.

Many other dishes are named after places - from Lancashire hotpot (a casserole of meat and vegetables topped with sliced potatoes) and Dundee Cake (a rich fruit cake) to Anglesey eggs (a dish of leeks, mashed potato, hard-boiled eggs and cheese sauce), baked Ulster ham, and Bath buns (a sweet bun containing spices and dried fruit, originally made in Bath, western England). Indeed, dedicated gourmets could happily munch their way from one county to another!

24. Where can I look up the rules of cricket?

Wisden Cricketers' Almanack, published annually for the last 141 years, is a mine of information about cricket and the year's season. It also contains a summary of the rules of the game known as 'the Laws of Cricket'.

25. Where can I find out about the origins of British football clubs?

For information about English clubs contact:

The Football Association,

Those interested in a particular football club may also visit the Football Association Library at their headquarters in London. Please telephone first for details.

26. Why does Britain have four teams in international sporting tournaments?

In some international sporting tournaments, including hockey, football and athletics, Britain sends four separate teams, representing the countries of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

In football, each team is representative of a separate national sporting association, affiliated to FIFA (Federation International de Football Association) which controls world football. Since 1972 a British football team has not competed at the Olympics, as the four countries of the United Kingdom wish to maintain separate national teams, and under Olympic rules Britain is only allowed to send one team to the Olympics. Similarly, Scotland, England and Wales each have their own hockey team, and the countries compete separately at international

The rugby union touring team, the British Lions, represents England, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland. The side which toured Australia back in 1899 was the first to be totally representative. It is said the British Lions title was given to the team on its tour of South Africa in 1924 when local journalists coined the phrase because of the lion symbol the players wore on their ties.

27. What are the origins of the Wimbledon tennis championships?

The famous international tennis tournament at Wimbledon in south-west London had humble beginnings as a small championship competition for some 20

players (all men) who paid a fee of one guinea each to enter.

That first Lawn Tennis Championship was held at Worple Road, Wimbledon in 1877, home of the All England Croquet Club later to become the All England Lawn Tennis and Croquet Club (originally croquet was considered a more important sport than tennis!). Spencer Gore became the first men's singles champion, winning 12 guineas and a silver cup. In 1884 Miss Maud Watson became the first women's singles champion.

In 1922 the Club moved to its present ground at Church Road, Wimbledon, with its famous Centre Court building designed by Captain Stanley Peach. Centre Court currently has a capacity for over 13,000 spectators.

Today Wimbledon fortnight takes place in June each year; with most of the world's top-class tennis players competing for honors. During Wimbledon fortnight over 12,000 kilos of salmon, 28,000 kilos of English strawberries and 300,000 cups of tea are supplied by caterers, together with 17,000 bottles of champagne! Tickets for Wimbledon are issued to the general public by ballot. A Stamped Addressed Envelope (SAE) must be sent for an application form by the end of December. Overseas applicants may send an International Reply Coupon in place of a stamp.

28. What are the Highland Games?

The popularity of the Highland Games dates back to Queen Victoria's patronage of them, which began in the middle of the 19th century, although before that time many Highland clans had long held annual gatherings which included traditional sports and games.

One of the most famous gatherings is held each year at Braemar in Aberdeenshire during early September, opening with a spectacular march of kilted clansmen accompanied by pipers playing the bagpipes.

The Games at Braemar and elsewhere in Scotland usually feature displays of highland dancing and hard-fought contests for players of the bagpipes, as well as gruelling athletic events. These include 'throwing the hammer' - flinging an iron ball on a chain as far as possible, and 'tossing the caber' - tossing a long and unwieldy wooden pole, like a tree trunk, said to have originated as a way of heaving felled tree-trunks over ravines or streams!

29. How do the British spend their leisure time?

Britain's most common leisure activities are home-based or social. Watching television, videos and DVDs, and listening to the radio are by far the most popular leisure pastimes. Some 90 per cent of people tune into radio at least once a week and 85 per cent watch television every day. Britain's regular weekly dramas or 'soap operas' such as 'East Enders' and 'Coronation Street' have more viewers than any other programme.

Listening to music is also a popular pastime, with more than four in five households owning a CD player. Pop and rock albums are the most common type

of music bought, and pop is by far the most popular form of musical expression in Britain.

The most common free-time activity outside the home amongst adults is a visit to the pub. Other popular leisure activities include visits to the theatre or cinema. There are over 3,000 cinema screens in Britain thanks to the large growth in 'multiplex' cinemas with their multiple screens. Britain also has about 300 theatres, of which about 100 are in London. Britain's most famous theatre company, The Royal Shakespeare Company, performs in Stratford-upon-Avon, Shakespeare's birthplace, and in London and tours around the country.

Of all sporting activities, walking is by far the most popular for men and women of all ages, followed by swimming, keep-fit classes and yoga, cycling, and cue sports such as snooker and billiards.

30. Why do the British like going to the pub?

One of the main attractions of the pub for all regular pub goers is that it offers good company in friendly surroundings. Often the style of the pub and its locality will dictate the kind of clientele you can expect to find there. Village pubs with their country furnishings and real ales attract not only local folk but city-dwellers out for a drive, hikers fresh from a long day's walk and pensioners enjoying a pub lunch. City pubs tend to have a more mixed clientele - businessmen and women discussing the latest deal, theatregoers *or* groups of friends enjoying a drink together before going off to a restaurant or nightclub.

Good conversation and good beer are two essential items provided by the pub. The drinking of beer in a public house is not compulsory, but as any publican will tell you, beer remains the mainstay of the trade. It is said that beer is the perfect drink for the pub - it comes in large measures (one pint glasses) so that just one drink provides plenty of conversation time! Many pubs also serve food, from snacks to full meals.

Other attractions offered by city and country pubs alike include a game of darts (short, weighted steel darts are thrown at a circular dartboard numbered in sections) and snooker, a game similar to billiards.

The lure of the pub can lie in the variety of pub names; each pub has its own name, depicted on a painted inn sign hung outside the premises.

A pub name can refer to historical events, landmarks, sundry beasts or its meaning can be a complete puzzle. Some include references to animals, many with their origins in heraldry - The White Hart, the Nag's Head, the Black Bull, and the Bear to name but a few!

31. What and when are the Proms?

The Proms or Promenade Concerts are an annual series of music concerts held at the Royal Albert Hall and other venues in London. They are called 'Promenade Concerts' because originally the audience 'promenaded' or walked about during the concerts, although now they stand or sit.

The Proms originated in 1895, and since that time have become a hugely

popular even. The programmes are usually of classical music, and reflect popular taste as well as more original and adventurous pieces. These days jazz, world music and other musical styles also feature on the concert programme.

The Proms take place each year, from mid-July to mid-September, although the most popular evening is the Last Night of the Proms, when concert goers fill the Hall and stand tightly packed in the arena in front of the orchestra for an evening of stirring music.

Seasons of orchestral and choral concerts are also promoted every year in many large towns and cities, while in central London the principal concert halls (including the Royal Festival Hall and the Barbican Hall) draw packed audiences.

In addition to possessing a thriving interest in classical music, British music lovers have a passion for all other areas of music, from opera to folk and jazz, from rock to the latest chart topping pop group.

32. What is British humor?

The British sense of humor is often a source of mystification for other nations, and Britain may claim that our humor is incomprehensible; however, possessing, 'a sense of humor' is usually regarded as a favourite virtue of the British.

It is difficult to pinpoint the exact components of our 'sense of humor', but it may be loosely defined as an attitude of mind which is readily responsive to the incongruous and ridiculous. Thus the humorous qualities of Dickens' novels lie in the fact that many of his characters are 'larger than life' - their appearance and personal qualities are highly exaggerated. This is also true today of many of our favourite television comedies, where the lead players are often wonderfully eccentric and 'over the top' - for example, the ever popular *Mr Bean*, played by Rowan Atkinson, David Brent played by Ricky Gervais in *The Office* and the memorable assortment of characters portrayed by Matt Lucas and David Walliams in *Little Britain*.

Bawdy and slapstick comedy, which can trace their roots back to Chaucer and Shakespeare, have continued through the early films of Charlie Chaplin and the *Carry On* films of the 1960s and 1970s to TV series such as *Men Behaving Badly* and *Blackadder*, again starring Rowan Atkinson.

More subtle humor can be found in the satire of Thackeray, Charles Dickens and Jane Austen, which highlights the faults and weaknesses of the society of the period. Today, popular television comedy series such as *The Royale Family*, and the quiz show *Hove / Got News For You*, present modern satire.

British humor also has an ever-present but hard to define appreciation of the absurd, as shown in programmes like *The Goon Show* and *Monty Python's Flying Circus*.

Recent British comedy films such as *Bridget Jones: The Edge of Reason*, *Love Actually*, *Calendar Girls* and *Johnny English* have enjoyed international

critical acclaim.

33.What is the Edinburgh Festival?

The Edinburgh International Festival is an annual arts festival held in Edinburgh during August and September. The Festival, first held in 1947, has gained an international reputation, and is widely recognized for providing opportunities for avant-garde theatre groups and emerging new talents to showcase their work as part of the Edinburgh Fringe. Fringe performances are staged at smaller venues and theatres outside the main programme of events, and are often of a more experimental, 'offbeat' nature.

The quality of the Festival's professional productions of music and theatre attract an international audience, and it is widely acknowledged that every hotel and guest house in the city is full to capacity during the festival months.

34.Why is Big Ben so called?

Although the name 'Big Ben' is commonly used to refer to the famous clock tower at the top of St. Stephen's Tower of the Houses of Parliament in London, the nickname is more correctly applied to the bell within the tower. It was named after Sir Benjamin Hall, who was the Chief Commissioner of Works at the time.

The original bell, cast in 1856 and weighing some 15 tons, was being tested in Palace Yard when it developed serious cracks and had to be scrapped. The new bell, weighing a mere 13 tons, was installed in 1858. There are also four Quarter bells in the clock tower weighing between 4 tons and 1 ton.

35.What is the Giant's Causeway?

The Giant's Causeway lies on the north coast of Northern Ireland, near Portrush, County Antrim. It is an impressive formation of some 40,000 basalt columns (basalt is a type of hard, igneous rock) descending like a giant staircase into the sea. The columns are mainly hexagonal in shape, and were formed by lava flows pouring into the sea many millions of years ago.

According to legend the columns are the start of a causeway constructed by the terrible Irish Giant Finn Mac Cool, in an attempt to cross the sea to the Scottish coast!

36.How old is Stonehenge?

Stonehenge, the most famous prehistoric monument in Britain, is situated on Salisbury Plain in the county of Wiltshire. At various times regarded as a site built by the Druids, the Romans, the Danes and even the French, the first stage - a circular ditch and bank with an entrance flanked by a pair of small standing stones - is believed to have been built around 5,000 years ago. The site was subsequently abandoned and rebuilt between 2100 BC and 1800 BC.

There are many mysteries surrounding this ancient site. Some of the stones used are thought to have come from the Preseli mountains in Pembrokeshire, Wales - yet exactly how they were transported to the site in such a primitive age is a puzzle. Experts believe they may have been transported for most of the way by water, before being dragged overland for the last stage of the journey.

It has been suggested that Stonehenge once operated as a massive astronomical clock, and there are even suggestions that it was a landing site for UFOs (Unidentified Flying Objects)! A more likely explanation is that Stonehenge was an important centre of worship connected with the sun.

37. Is Hadrian's Wall still standing?

Hadrian's Wall is a Roman wall that runs for about 120 kilometres across northern England between Wallendene-on-Tyne in the East and Bowness in the Solway Firth in the West. Begun in 122 AD on the orders of the Emperor Hadrian, it was the northernmost frontier defence of Roman Britain. It was hoped that the wall would help to control the fearsome Scottish tribes, but it was attacked and overrun in the 2nd and 3rd centuries, and abandoned in the 4th century.

Originally about 3m wide and 4.5m high, substantial sections of the wall were plundered for building materials over the centuries. However, the wall and remains of Roman forts along the way still stand today, with the finest surviving stretch being in the Northumberland National Park around the village of Gilsland. One of the best preserved Roman forts can be seen at Housesteads (Roman Vercovicium), 10 kms north east of Haltwhistle. The Hadrian's Wall Path is England's newest national trail.

38. Why is the investiture of the Prince of Wales held at Caernarfon Castle?

Caernarfon Castle is one of the finest castles in Britain. It was built between 1285 and 1322. Edward I of England ordered the castle to be built three years after the independent Prince of Wales, Llywelyn, was killed and his Principality occupied by the English. Entrance is through the Gate of the King, a great arch-surmounted by a statue of Edward II, the first English Prince of Wales.

Although the castle is now only a shell, it is no less impressive for that. The Eagle Tower, over 40m high, can be reached by climbing 158 steps, passing by a small chamber known as the Queen's Oratory, where Edward II, Prince of Wales, was said to have been born. Legend also tells us that the entrance to the castle on the east side, known as the Gate of Queen Eleanor, was where the infant Edward was presented to the people of Wales as their new Prince. Since those days the ceremony of the investiture of the Prince of Wales has always been held in Caernarfon Castle.

39. Why is the Tower of London so popular with tourists?

The Tower of London is one of the most popular and imposing of London's historical sites. It comprises not one but 20 towers, the oldest of which, the White Tower, dates back to the 11th century and the time of William the Conqueror. It is the Tower's evil reputation as a prison that ensures it remains a much visited tourist spot today, together with the rich and varied history that surrounds it.

Many stories associated with British history come from the Tower. In 1483 King Edward IV's two sons were murdered in the so called Bloody Tower. Over

two centuries later the skeletons of two little boys were found buried beneath steps in the White Tower, and assumed to be the bodies of the princes.

Traitor's Gate, set in the southern wall of the Tower, has steps leading down to the River Thames. Countless prisoners, including the woman who was to become Queen Elizabeth I of England, were brought to the Tower by barge, and ascended the steps before being imprisoned - for many it was their last moment of freedom before their death. Elizabeth was released from the Tower and later became Queen.

Elizabeth I's father, Henry VIII, made the Tower the dreaded destination of enemies. Sir Thomas More was beheaded there in 1535 and the King's second wife, Anne Boleyn, was brought to trial there in 1536 and beheaded on Tower Green. Six years later her cousin, Catherine Howard, Henry VIII's fifth wife suffered the same fate.

The Tower is famous as home of the Crown Jewels. Today they can be viewed in the jewel house from a moving pavement, designed to cope with the huge numbers of tourists. They include the Crown of the late Queen Elizabeth the Queen Mother which contains the celebrated Indian diamond, the Kohinoor (mountain of light), and St Edward's Crown which is used for the actual crowning of the Sovereign and weighs over two kilograms.

No visit to the Tower would be complete without seeing the ravens: huge black birds who are an official part of the Tower community. Legend states that if the ravens were to leave the Tower the Crown will fall, and Britain with it. Under the special care of the Raven Master, the ravens are fed a daily diet of raw meat paid for out of a special fund set aside by Parliament. There is no danger of them flying away, as their wings are clipped!

40. How old is London's tube?

The London Underground, or 'tube' as it is often known, was the world's first urban underground rail-way. It began operating in 1863, when the Metropolitan Railway opened a line between Paddington and Farringdon. Even in those days traffic jams caused by the congestion of horsedrawn vehicles generated complaints and letters to The Times, and as a result construction work began on the underground railway in 1860.

Although Londoners were originally sceptical about the project, calling it 'the sewer railway', the service was an immediate success. Trains were steam operated, and travel must have been murky, sulphurous and extremely grimy compared with today's electrically operated trains.

Over one billion passenger journeys are made on London's buses every year. The familiar double-decker buses are one of the most distinctive sights in London, and no visit to London would be complete without a trip on one. The most famous design, with an open passenger platform at the rear of the bus, dates back to the 1950s, but these are being replaced with modern types.

41. What is Speakers' Corner?

Speakers' Comer in the north-east comer of Hyde Park in London is by tradition an area where public speeches can be made by anyone who has anything they want to say - no matter how eccentric or implausible. The area was set aside for such use in 1872, after Hyde Park itself became a popular centre for public speaking.

Speakers talk to the crowds from a soapbox - an improvised platform once made from wooden packing crates used for soap and other items. Individual speakers or representatives of various organizations or special causes deliver their speeches at weekends - to the amusement or bewilderment of passers-by. Crowds often gather around a speaker, and generally feel free to make comments on the speech or simply to heckle the speaker if they don't agree with what is being said! Speakers' Comer is often seen as a symbol of free speech.

42. Where can I obtain tourist information about Britain?

Tourist information about Britain can be obtained by writing to:

Visit Britain

Thames Tower, Black's Road, Hammersmith,
London W6 9EL

British Embassies and Consulates and High Commissions and Visit Britain's offices overseas may also be able to supply information.

43. Can you drive through the Channel Tunnel?

No, you cannot drive through the Channel Tunnel. You can travel on the Eurostar train or Le Shuttle. Those wishing to take their car through the tunnel arrive at the terminal in Folkestone, England, or Calais in France and pay a toll before driving onto Le Shuttle - 800m long rail freight vehicles - the largest purpose-designed rail wagons in the world.

There are three different types of shuttle: a doubledecker for carrying cars, motorbikes and bicycles; a single deck shuttle for carrying coaches, cars with caravans and campers; and another single deck shuttle for carrying fully loaded freight vehicles up to 44 tons in weight.

Tickets for Le Shuttle can be bought in advance, although it is not necessary to book services. Services through the tunnel work on a 'turn up and go' basis so there is no fixed check-in time. Drivers of cars, coaches and heavy goods vehicles can all expect up to four departures per hour, The journey time from platform to platform is 35 minutes, with 27 minutes in the tunnel.

44. What is the British weather like?

Despite its reputation for grey skies and rain, the climate in Britain is generally mild and temperate. The weather from day to day is mainly influenced by depressions moving eastwards across the Atlantic. Although the weather changes frequently, the temperature is subject to few extremes - it is rarely above 32°C or below -10°C.

Rain is fairly well distributed throughout the year, but, on average, March to June are the driest months and September to January the wettest. If you visit the

mountainous areas of the west and north you can expect more rainfall than in central parts of Britain. During May, June and July - the months of longest daylight - the mean daily duration of sunshine varies from five hours in northern Scotland to eight hours in the Isle of Wight on the south coast. November, December and January have the least sunshine - only an hour a day in northern Scotland or two hours a day on the south coast of England.

For a national weather forecast (calling from within Britain) dial AA Roadwatch 09003 401 100 or 401 100 from your mobile which also gives information about traffic problems. Just text 'Weather call mobile' at any time of day and the Met Office will send you today's local weather or a five-day forecast by return. You can text Marine call mobile for coastal, inshore and offshore UK sea area forecasts.

45. When do shops have sales?

The biggest sales take place in January, when bargain-hungry shoppers have been known to queue all night outside London's biggest department stores in the hope of snapping up drastically reduced goods. Wiser shoppers wait until the end of the month, when there may be a smaller choice of bargains, but often the prices have been reduced even further for clearance,

Other sales take place at the end of spring and summer, when there are reduced prices on out of season goods, although it is always best to check with individual stores first.

46. Where can I buy tickets for sporting events and shows?

Contact the arena or theatre where the event is taking place for advice on ticket sales. Many venues list a ticket sales hotline in the telephone directory or have a website where you can order tickets and pay for them by credit card. Alternatively, major cities like London have numerous ticket agencies which sell tickets for all major events and shows, and also operate ticket sales hotlines - check the Central

London telephone directory for details.

If you are in London you can buy cut-price tickets for the theatre on the day (subject to availability) at the half-price ticket booth in Leicester Square.

47. How can I trace my relatives and friends in Britain?

It is sometimes helpful to place an advertisement in the personal column of local newspapers in the area where relatives or friends were last known to be living. Addresses of local newspapers in Britain can be obtained from:

'Willings Press Guide', published annually and available from Willings Press Guide, Chess House, 34 Germain Street, Chesham, Buckinghamshire HP5 1SJ. Tel 0870 736 0010 Fax 0870 736 0011 I. Email enquiries@willingspress.com Website www.willingspress.com

Visitors to Britain can trace relatives and friends through telephone directories, or local electoral registers, which contain the names and addresses of everyone living in an area over the age of 18. Current telephone directories and electoral registers

for the whole country can be viewed at most libraries.

Birth, marriage and death certificates feature addresses of individuals.

48. Where can I get information for my family tree?

Sources of information for those undertaking genealogical research include birth, marriage and death certificates which are available from the appropriate register office (see question 51); parish registers (information available from county or district record offices) and divorce records (available from the appropriate office - see question 51),

In addition, public records are valuable sources *of* information. Copies of material such as legal documents, property and succession records, census returns, taxation records, old parish registers, etc. should be sought from the following offices. Please note that offices can answer enquiries, but will not undertake research:

49. How do I organize youth exchanges with Britain?

Connect Youth, a department of the British Council, promotes non-formal exchanges of young people between the UK and other countries. Although its primary function is to establish contacts between youth groups in Britain and abroad, youth groups overseas may be able to advertise in its newsletter

50. How do I organize school exchanges with Britain?

Windows on the World is a free database for schools and colleges that wish to develop links with other institutions worldwide. It gives information on how to develop links and case studies *of* projects

The European School Exchange Databank allows schools seeking a partner to register on a database. The information provided will then be passed on to potential partners across Europe. Registration on the database is free, but a listing of registered schools is charged for.

51. How do I organize school exchanges with Britain?

The Central Bureau is the national office responsible for the provision of information and advice on all forms of educational visits and exchanges from Britain and the linking of British educational establishments and local education authorities with counterparts abroad.

The European School Exchange Databank allows schools seeking a partner to register on a database. The information provided will then be passed on to potential partners across Europe. Registration on the database is free, but a listing of registered schools is charged for.

52. How many people speak English worldwide?

English is one of the most widely used languages in the world. Recent estimates suggest that over 337 million people speak English as their first language, with possibly some 350 million speaking it as a second language. America has the largest number of English speakers - over 226 million speak the

language as a mother tongue. English is an official language in India, alongside Hindi, and some 3,000 English newspapers are published throughout the country. English is also the favoured language of the world's major airlines and international commerce. Over 80 percent of the world's electronically stored information is in English and two-thirds of the world's scientists read in English. English is an official language, or has a special status in over 75 of the world's territories.

If the rest of the world isn't talking English, they're borrowing English words to add to their own language: the Japanese go on a "pikunikku" (picnic), Italians program their computers with "il software", Germans talk about "ein Image Problem" and "das Cashflow" and Czechs say "ahoy!" for "hello" - a greeting traditionally used by English sailors, which is interesting as there's no sea in the Czech Republic!

53. Why are many English words pronounced differently from the way they are spelt?

Beware of heard, a dreadful word,
That looks like beard and sounds like bird,
And dead: it's said like bed, not bead,
For Goodness' sake, don't call it deed!
Watch out for meat and great and threat,
They rhyme with suite and straight and debt.

(Anon)

English spelling is unpredictable at the best of times, and occasionally totally chaotic -an opinion no doubt shared by British schoolchildren and those studying English around the world alike. However, studies of the language claim that there are only about 400 words in English whose spelling is wholly irregular. Unfortunately many of them are among the most frequently used in the language. The problems with the English spelling system came about as the language developed over a period of 1,000 years. Some complications arose early on, when the Romans tried to write down Old English using the 23 letter Latin alphabet. Old English contained nearly 40 vowels and consonants.

The influence of French after the Norman Conquest also made an impact on English spelling. French scribes introduced 'qu' where Old English had used 'cw' e.g. queen, and 'gh' instead of 'h' e.g. night, amongst other changes. The introduction of the printing press in 1476 meant that a standard spelling system began to emerge. The system reflected the speech of the London area. The pronunciation of vowels underwent further changes during the 15th century, but because of the advent of the printing press, spelling never caught up.

Previously, scribes would have simply written down a new spelling to reflect the new pronunciation. Thus modern spelling in many ways reflects outmoded pronunciation of words dating back to the Middle Ages.

Despite many attempts to reform the English spelling system, so far no changes have been made since the 16th century - mainly because nobody can agree on what the best alternative may be!

54. Do Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland have their own languages?

At the start of the 20th century half of the population of Wales were able to speak Welsh, a language belonging to the Celtic family. Since then, the numbers of Welsh-speaking people steadily declined, until recently. Today about a fifth of the population of Wales speak the language.

Both the government and voluntary groups have taken steps to revive the use of Welsh. Welsh is taught as a first or second language to all school students between the ages of 5 and 16, and there has been an extended use of Welsh for radio and television programmes. Welsh is widely used for official purposes and is treated equally with English in the work of the Welsh Assembly.

Gaelic, also a language of Celtic origin, is still spoken by some 59,000 people in Scotland, with the greatest concentration of Gaelic speakers in the islands of the Hebrides. The word 'whisky', the famous Scottish alcoholic drink, is derived from Gaelic *uisce beatha* or 'water of life'!

People in the Lowlands of Scotland have for centuries spoken Scots, a dialect derived from the Northumbrian branch of Old English and a completely separate language from Gaelic. This has its own recognized literary tradition as in the poetry of Robert Burns and saw a revival in poetry in the 20th century.

Gaelic is also the language of the Irish people. It is still taught in both Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland. In Northern Ireland in 2002 there were over 1, 570,000 speakers of Irish Gaelic.

55. Why is English spoken with different accents?

Most British people can recognize where someone was brought up by their accent. Every region has its own way of pronouncing the words and sentences of English that identifies the speaker with that particular geographical area. Differences arose from the time when English was spoken in a variety of different forms during the Middle Ages - Northern (developed from Northumbrian Old English), West and East Midlands (diverging from Mercian Old English), South Western (West Saxon) and South Eastern (Kentish).

Today the 'home counties' accent is usually accepted as Standard English. The home counties are the counties nearest to London. Standard English is sometimes referred to as 'BBC English' since at one time all announcers on BBC radio and TV were required to speak it.

Regional accents have persisted and diversified over the centuries. Today the identification of an accent can place the speaker in a general area of Britain -such as West Country or South Wales, *or* be quite specific,-referring to individual counties or cities; e.g. Liverpool, Yorkshire or Glasgow accents.

Although Standard English was once the accepted form of English for public speaking or broadcasting, today regional accents are widely used on television and radio.

56. What is cockney rhyming slang?

True cockneys traditionally come from a very small part of London. In fact,

only those born within the sound of Bow Bells, which ring out from the church of St Mary-le-Bow, Cheapside in the City of London, could by tradition consider themselves 'cockneys'. In reality the cockney heartland lies in the East End of London.

Like many other small communities, cockneys had a large number of words and phrases which had special meanings for them, but they took this to extremes by inventing a whole new dialect - 'rhyming slang' - which has been in use since the mid-19th century. Rhyming slang uses a phrase that rhymes with a word, instead of the word itself- thus 'stairs' becomes 'apples and pears', 'phone' becomes 'dog and bone' and 'word' becomes 'dickey bird'! To add to the confusion for the uninitiated, the rhyming part of the word is often dropped: thus 'daisies' are 'boots' (from 'daisy roots').

Some people complain that rhyming slang is simply spoken to give the cockney an unfair advantage over strangers - the wily cockney spots an attentive or enquiring stranger and lapses into rhyming slang so that he or she can't be understood! However, numerous colloquial expressions derive from rhyming slang, and have even been heard in use in the House of Commons, such as 'let's get down to brass tacks' means 'let's talk facts'!

57.What are the main ethnic minority languages?

Britain's African-Caribbean population does not have its own language, although many second and even third-generation West Indians speak a dialect of Standard English described as Creole, or Jamaican Creole (patois).

Britain's Asian population speaks a variety of languages, often using different languages for writing and speaking. The national languages of India and Pakistan are Hindi and Urdu. Northern Indian languages are also widely used in Britain -Punjabi, Gujarati and Bengali. These three languages have a common derivation in Sanskrit, the classical language of ancient India, but are not necessarily mutually intelligible. There are more Asian speakers of Punjabi in Britain than any other language, followed by speakers of Urdu, Bengali and Gujarati.

Two of the main Chinese dialects spoken by the Chinese in Britain are Cantonese, the language of urban Hong Kong and Guangdong province, and Mandarin, spoken by those from mainland China.

58.Who are the most popular British writers?

The playwright William Shakespeare (1564-1616) and the novelist Charles Dickens (1812-1870) remain two of the most popular and widely known British writers the world over. In addition to writing 35 known plays, Shakespeare wrote 154 sonnets and sometimes acted in small parts in his own plays - he is known to have played the Ghost in Hamlet. His best known plays include: Romeo and Juliet, King Lear, Hamlet and A Midsummer Night's Dream.

Dickens began his writing career as a journalist, and all his novels were first

published serially in periodicals. Many of his works highlight the injustice of 19th century social institutions and the inequalities between the rich and the poor. His most famous works include *Oliver Twist*, *A Christmas Carol* and *David Copperfield*.

The novels of Jane Austen (1775-1817) are known for their subtlety of observation and irony, together with their penetrating insights into the provincial life of the middle-classes in the early part of the 19th century. Her works include *Emma*, *Pride and Prejudice* and *Sense and Sensibility* - all dramatized on film and TV to critical acclaim.

The Bronte sisters, Charlotte (1816-55), Emily (1818-48) and Anne (1820-49), were three talented 19th-century women novelists whose works are regarded as classics today. Charlotte is best known for her novel *Jane Eyre* and Emily for *Wuthering Heights* - both novels feature strong, independent heroines.

Many distinguished works of contemporary fiction have been awarded the Booker Prize, given annually to the best novel published in Britain. Novels must be written in English by a citizen of Britain, the Commonwealth or the Republic of Ireland. The winner of the Booker Prize in 2004 was Alan Hollinghurst for his fourth novel, *The Line of Beauty*.

Glasgow-born James Kelman is a leading contemporary writer from Scotland whose writing echoes the rhythms of the Glaswegian dialect, while the Welsh-Jewish writer, Bernice Rubens, who died in 2004, received much critical acclaim for her novels. Currently all the rage amongst children and adults alike is the schoolboy wizard, Harry Potter, the creation of J K Rowling,

One of the most widely known English poets is remarkable because his work has been continuously transcribed, published, read and commented on since his death. That he lived over 600 years ago is no less remarkable. He is Geoffrey Chaucer (c. 1345-1400). His best known work is *The Canterbury Tales*, a collection of tales by a group of pilgrims bound for the shrine of St. Thomas Becket at Canterbury. Chaucer is buried in Westminster Abbey.

A modern-day humorous poet is Benjamin Zephaniah whose verse dips and dives through contemporary themes. He is well known for his live performances. The Welsh poet, Dylan Thomas (1914-53) is perhaps best known for his play *Under Milk Wood*. This was first written as a radio drama and broadcast by the BBC in 1954, before being adapted for the stage.

Another popular contemporary poet is Seamus Heaney born in Northern Ireland. His early poems reflect Irish rural life and work and can be found in the collections *Death of a Naturalist* (1966) and *Wintering Out* (1972). Another Northern Irish poet, Colette Bryce, won the Poetry Society's national competition in 2003 for her poem, *The Full Indian Rope Trick*.

One of the most widely known English poets is remarkable because his work has been continuously transcribed, published, read and commented on since his death. That he lived over 600 years ago is no less remarkable. He is Geoffrey

Chaucer (c.1345-1400). His best known work is "The Canterbury Tales", a collection of tales by a group of pilgrims bound for the shrine of St. Thomas Becket at Canterbury. Chaucer is buried in Westminster Abbey.

The Welsh poet, Dylan Thomas (1914-53) is perhaps best known for his play "Under Milk Wood". This was first written as a radio drama and broadcast by the BBC in 1954, before being adapted for the stage.

One of the liveliest poets writing in Britain today is Ted Hughes. Hughes was made Poet Laureate in 1984. The Poet Laureate is a member of the Royal Household, appointed by the Royal Warrant, who composes odes in celebration of State occasions. The appointment dates from the time of King James I (1603-1625). The Romantic poet William Wordsworth (1770-1850) was Poet Laureate from 1843-1850.

Another popular contemporary poet is Seamus Heaney born in Northern Ireland. His early poems reflect Irish rural life and work and can be found in the collections "Death of a Naturalist" (1966) and "Wintering Out" (1972). His language is often weighty, making use of clusters of consonants and monosyllables.

59. At what age do children go to school in Britain?

Children in Britain must attend school from the age of 5 (4 in Northern Ireland) until they are 16. Before the start of formal schooling, many children attend nursery schools or nursery classes attached to primary schools. In addition, some parents elect to send their children to private (fee-paying) nursery schools or kindergartens. In England and Wales, many primary schools also operate an early admission policy where they admit children under 5 into what are called reception classes.

Children first attend the infants' school or department. At 7 they move to the junior school and the usual age for transfer from junior to secondary school is 11 (12 in Scotland). In some areas, however, "first" schools take pupils aged 5 to 8, 9 or 10, and pupils within the 8 to 14 age range go to "middle" schools.

Specialist schools, which only operate in England, give pupils a broad secondary education with a strong emphasis on arts, business and enterprise, engineering, humanities, languages, mathematics and computing, music, science, sports or technology. There are over 1,950 specialist schools. They charge no fees and any secondary school can apply for specialist school status.

Academies are publicly funded independent schools sponsored by private and voluntary organizations. Their aim is to offer new responses to the school failure that sometimes occurs in city areas.

City Technology Colleges (CTCs) aim to give boys and girls a broad secondary education with a strong technological and business slant. They are non-fee-paying independent schools, set up by the Government with the help of business sponsors who finance a large proportion of the initial capital costs and develop links with the schools. There are 14 such colleges in operation in England.

60. Why are 'public' schools so called?

The independent school sector is separate from the state educational system, and caters for some seven per cent of all schoolchildren in England and four per cent in Scotland. There are around 2,400 independent schools in the UK.

Parents of pupils attending independent schools pay for their education, and in some cases fees can amount to several thousand pounds a year. Some pupils gain scholarships and their expenses are covered by the schools.

About 250 of the larger independent schools are known for historical reasons as public schools. Eton, which was founded in 1440, is said to have been the first grammar school to be called a 'public school' because scholars could come to it from any part of England and not, as was generally the case, just from the immediate neighbourhood.

Originally, many public schools stressed a classical education, character training and sports, but the curriculum is now closely allied to state education.

In Northern Ireland there are a few independent fee paying schools catering for a very small proportion of the school population; they do not receive any support from public funds.

Schools in Scotland supported by public funds are also called 'public schools' but they are not fee-paying, independent schools.

61. What is the oldest university in Britain?

The University of Oxford was the first university to be established in Britain. Dating from the 12th century, it is organized as a federation of colleges which are governed by their own teaching staff known as 'Fellows'. The oldest college, University College, was founded in 1249. Other notable colleges include All Souls (founded in 1438), Christ Church (founded in 1546 by Cardinal Wolsey), the college chapel of which is also Oxford Cathedral, and Lady Margaret Hall (founded in 1878), which was the first women's college.

Today Oxford University is made up of 39 separate colleges, of which one is for women students only, and the rest take All Souls College, Oxford both men and women.

In 1209, scholars running away from riots in Oxford set up the first academic community in Cambridge. The University is also organized as a federation of colleges; the oldest, Peter house, dates from 1284. The largest college, Trinity, was founded by King Henry VIII in 1546.

Scotland also boasts a number of long-established universities. By the end of the Middle Ages Scotland had four universities at Edinburgh (founded 1583), Glasgow (founded 1451), Aberdeen (founded 1495) and St Andrew's (founded 1411).

The University of Wales was founded in 1893. It consists of six colleges, the oldest one being the University of Wales, Lampeter, founded as St David's College in 1822.

The Queen's University of Belfast was founded in 1845 as one of the three 'Queen's Colleges in Ireland'. It received its charter as a separate university in 1908.

62. Why doesn't Britain have a written constitution?

The British constitution has evolved over many centuries. Unlike the constitutions of the United States, France and many Commonwealth countries, the British constitution has not been assembled at any time into a single, consolidated document. Instead it is made up of common law, statute law and convention.

Of all the democratic countries in the world, only Israel is comparable to Britain in having no single document codifying the way its political institutions function and setting out the basic rights and duties of its citizens. Britain does, however, have certain important constitutional documents, including the Magna Charta (1215) which protects the rights of the community against the Crown; the Bill of Rights (1689) which extended the powers of Parliament, making it impracticable for the Sovereign to ignore the wishes of the Government; and the Reform Act (1832), which reformed the system of parliamentary representation.

Common Law has never been precisely defined. It is deduced from custom, or legal precedents, and interpreted in court cases by judges. Conventions are rules and practices which are not legally enforceable, but which are regarded as indispensable to the working of government. Many conventions are derived from the historical events through which the British system of government has evolved. One convention is that Ministers are responsible and can be held to account for what happens in their Departments. The constitution can be altered by Act of Parliament, or by general agreement to alter a convention.

The flexibility of the British constitution helps to explain why it has developed so fully over the years. However, since Britain joined the European Community in 1973, the rulings of the European Court of Justice have increasingly determined and codified sections of British law in those areas covered by the various treaties to which Britain is a party. In the process British constitutional and legal arrangements are beginning to resemble those of Europe.

63. What was the Magna Charta?

The Magna Charta (Latin for 'Great Charter') is Britain's best known constitutional document. In 1215 feudal barons forced the 'tyrannical' King John (1199-1216) to agree to a series of concessions embodied in a charter which became known as the Magna Charta. 61 clauses set out a clear expression of the rights of the community against the Crown. The contents deal with the 'free' Church; feudal law; towns, trade and merchants; the reform of the law and justice; the behaviour of royal officials; and royal forests.

The King was forced to fix his seal to the Magna Charta in a meadow next to the River Thames at Runnymede between Windsor and Staines. It is said that he behaved pleasantly to the nobles at the time, but as soon as he returned to his own chamber he threw himself on the floor in a mad rage.

Since that day the Magna Charta has become part of English Law and established the important principle that the King is not above the law.

Original copies of the charter exist in Salisbury Cathedral, Lincoln Castle and the

British Museum in London.

64. How does Britain elect its Parliament?

Parliament, the law-making body of the British people, consists of three elements: the Monarchy, the House of Commons and the House of Lords. They meet together only on occasions of ceremonial significance, such as the state opening of Parliament, although the agreement of all three is normally required for legislation.

The House of Commons consists of 659 elected members called *Members of Parliament* or MPs. Election to the House of Commons is an important part of Britain's democratic system. The main purpose of the House of Commons is to make laws by passing Acts of Parliament, as well as to discuss current political issues. Some of the liveliest sessions in the Commons debating chamber take place at Prime Minister's Question Time when MPs have the opportunity to quiz the Prime Minister on burning issues of the day.

The House of Lords currently consists of 688 non-elected members (hereditary peers and peeresses, life peers and peeresses and two archbishops and 24 senior bishops of the Church of England). Its main legislative function is to examine and revise bills from the Commons, but the Lords cannot normally prevent proposed legislation from becoming law if the Commons insists on it. It also acts in a legal capacity as the final court of appeal. In recent years the House of Lords has undergone a process of reform to make it more democratic and representative. As a first step, the rights of some 750 hereditary peers to sit and vote in Parliament solely on the basis that they inherited their seats were removed. The remaining 92 hereditary peers are allowed to sit temporarily in the transitional chamber until the full reform programme is in place. The next phase of the House of Lords reform would remove the remaining hereditary peers and create a partly-elected upper house.

General elections are held after Parliament has been 'dissolved', either by a royal proclamation or because the maximum term between elections - five years - has expired. The decision on when to hold a general election is made by the Prime Minister.

For electoral purposes Britain is divided into constituencies, each of which returns one MP to the House of Commons. MPs are elected by the relative majority method - sometimes called the 'first past the post' principle - which means the candidate with more votes than any other is elected.

In elections to the Scottish Parliament, the National Assembly for Wales and the European Parliament in 1999, forms of proportional representation (PR) were used for the first time in Great Britain. PR was also used in the 1998 elections for the Northern Ireland Assembly. Northern Ireland has used a version of PR in European Parliament elections since 1979.

All British citizens together with citizens of other Commonwealth countries and citizens of the Irish Republic resident in Britain may vote, provided they are

aged 18 years or over and not legally barred from voting. People not entitled to vote include those serving prison sentences, peers and peeresses who are members of the House of Lords, and those kept in hospital under mental health legislation. Voting is by secret ballot. At a general election the elector selects just one candidate on the ballot paper and marks an 'X' by the candidate's name. Voting in elections is voluntary. In the June 2001 general election 59.4 per cent of the electorate voted, compared with 72 per cent in 1997.

Any person aged 21 or over who is a British citizen or citizen of another Commonwealth country or the Irish Republic may stand for election to Parliament, provided they are not disqualified. People disqualified include those who are bankrupt, those sentenced to more than one year's imprisonment, members of the clergy, members of the House of Lords, and a range of public servants and officials. Approved candidates are usually selected by their political party organizations in the constituency which they represent, although candidates do not have to have party backing,

The leader of the political party which wins most seats (although not necessarily most votes) at a general election, or who has the support of a majority of members in the House of Commons, is by convention invited by the Sovereign to form the new government.

65. How are Britain's regions governed?

The people of Scotland and Wales now have greater control over their own affairs thanks to the establishment of a Scottish Parliament in Edinburgh and a Welsh Assembly in Cardiff.

The Scottish Parliament has 129 members - 73 directly elected on a constituency basis and 56 elected by proportional representation. The parliament runs for a four-year fixed term and is responsible for functions which were the responsibility of Scottish Office Ministers. It is able to make laws on a whole range of matters, including health and education, and to raise or lower the rate of income tax by three pence in the pound. Scotland continues to elect MPs to Westminster.

The Welsh Assembly has 60 members, directly elected every four years. It is responsible for functions previously carried out by the Welsh Office. It is able to amend laws passed at Westminster which affect devolved areas.

One of the new institutions created following the Belfast Agreement of April 1998 was an Assembly of 108 members with a similar range of legislative and executive powers to the Scottish Parliament. The Northern Ireland Executive comprises of a First Minister and Deputy First Minister, and 10 Ministers, allocated in proportion to party strengths represented in the Assembly.

There are Committees for each of the main executive functions of the Northern Ireland Executive. The membership and chair of each Committee is again allocated in proportion to party strengths. These Committees have scrutiny, policy development and consultative functions. Elections were held in June 1998, a First Minister and Deputy First Minister were elected and agreement reached on most of

the detail of institutions dealing with relationships between the Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland.

The Executive and the institutions were first set up on 1 December 1999 but were suspended when direct rule was reintroduced by the Secretary of State for Northern Ireland on 11 February 2000. The Executive and institutions were re-established following negotiations between all the parties on 29 May 2000. Devolution was suspended on two further occasions, on 10 August and 21 September 2001 for 24 hours on each occasion. The Secretary of State for Northern Ireland again suspended the Northern Ireland Assembly on 14 October 2002 and Northern Ireland has been returned to direct rule.

In 2000 the Government established a London-wide authority for the capital. This consists of a directly elected Mayor who is able to influence policy on transport, economic development, strategic planning, the environment and culture, and a separately elected Assembly of 25 members with powers to question the Mayor on his or her activities and to investigate issues on behalf of Londoners.

66. What are the origins of the names of the main political parties?

The Conservative and Unionist Party dates back to the Tory Party of the late eighteenth century. This broadly represented the interests of the country gentry, merchant classes and official and ministerial groups. After Britain's 1832 (electoral) Reform Act, members of the old Tory Party began forming 'conservative associations'. The name Conservative was first used as a description of the Party in the Quarterly Review of January 1830, because the Party aimed to conserve traditional values and practices. The Conservative Party today is the leading right-wing party. The term 'Tory' is still used today to refer to somebody with conservative political views.

The original title of the Labour Party, the Labour Representation Committee, makes the origins of the party clear - to promote the interests of the industrial working class. In 1900 the Trades Union Congress co-operated with the Independent Labour Party (founded 1893) to establish The Labour Representation Committee with Ramsay MacDonald as First Secretary. This took the name Labour Party in 1906.

The Liberal Party emerged in the mid-nineteenth century as a successor to the historic Whig party. 'Whig' was originally a Scottish Gaelic term applied to horse thieves! In the late eighteenth century the Whig Party represented those who sought electoral, parliamentary and philanthropic reforms. However, the term 'Whig' does not survive today. After 1832 the mainly aristocratic Whigs were joined by increasing numbers of middle-class members. By 1839 the term Liberal Party was being used, and the first unequivocally Liberal government was formed in 1868 by William Gladstone. In 1988 the old Liberal Party and the Social Democratic Party (SDP) merged into a single party called the Liberal Democrats.

67. Why is the Speaker so called?

Contrary to what the title would imply, the Speaker of the House of

Commons does not speak - that is, he or she does not make speeches or take part in debates. The office has been held continuously since 1377 and originally the Speaker spoke on behalf of the Commons to the Monarch, hence the name. The role is now largely ceremonial and today the Speaker's central function is to act as chairperson of the House, maintaining order in a debate. He or she may not vote other than in an official capacity - that is when the result of a vote is a tie. Even then, he or she is not allowed to express an opinion on the merits of the question under debate and must vote in such a way as to give the House another chance to decide.

The Speaker has three deputies - the Chairman of Ways and Means and two other Deputy Chairmen. Like the Speaker, they can neither speak nor vote other than in their official capacity. The Speaker is not a Minister nor a member of any political party, but he or she is still a Member of Parliament, representing a constituency.

The choice of Speaker is by election, with Members of Parliament each having one vote.

"May it please Your Majesty, I have neither eyes to see, nor tongue to speak in this place, but as the House is pleased to direct me, whose servant I am here, and I humbly beg Your Majesty's pardon that I cannot give any other answer than this to what Your Majesty is pleased to demand of me"

Speaker Lenthall's reply to King Charles I when on 4 January 1642 he entered the Commons chamber to arrest five MPs for treason. Speaker Lenthall thus established the principle that he was the servant of the Commons, not the King.

68. What is a 'whip' in Parliament?

The term 'whip' is said to owe its origin to the 'whippers-in' - people who keep the hounds in order at fox-hunting meets. Parliamentary whips are supposed to be similar disciplinarians, controlling the pack of MPs in their party!

Government whips are all Ministers of the Crown. The principal task of the Chief Whip is the management of government business in the House. He or she must try to ensure that, in spite of the activities of the opposition, Parliament has passed all the legislation and done all the tasks which it had planned during that session.

Whips in the two main parties are organized by subject and by region. They monitor opinions inside their party and report back to the leadership, maintaining valuable day-to-day contact between Ministers and their backbench supporters.

The Whip' also refers to a document sent out weekly to MPs detailing the forthcoming business of the House. Items are underlined once, twice or three times to indicate their importance to the party leadership. When a 'three-line' whip is issued, the leadership is letting MPs know that it expects them to turn up and vote on the matter under discussion!

69. When did Britain join the European Union and how many Members of the European Parliament does it have?

Britain joined the European Union in 1973, along with Denmark and the Republic of Ireland.

The European Union has four main institutions: the Council of Ministers, the European Commission, the European Court of Justice and the European Parliament. The European Parliament is a democratically elected body whose members are elected by the peoples of the 25 member nations every five years. Its main role is to scrutinize the activities of the EU institutions, pass the annual EU budget, monitor spending, and shape and decide on new legislation jointly with the Council of Ministers.

The European Parliament has 732 members (MEPs), 78 of whom represent the people of Britain. Britain is divided into 12 geographical regions with each region electing between three and 12 MEPs by proportional representation. Each MEP in a region represents each person living there.

70. What powers does the Queen have?

The Crown, which represents both the Sovereign (the person on whom the Crown is constitutionally conferred) and the Government, is the symbol of supreme executive power. The Crown is vested in the Queen, but in general its functions are exercised by Ministers responsible to Parliament and thus Britain is governed by Her Majesty's Government in the name of the Queen. However, the Queen's involvement is still required in many important acts of government.

Parliament

The Queen summons, prorogues (discontinues until the next session without dissolving) and dissolves Parliament. She normally opens the new session of Parliament with a speech from the throne which is written for her by the Government and outlines her Government's programme. Before a Bill becomes law the Queen must give it her Royal Assent, which is announced to both Houses of Parliament.

Justice

The Queen can, on ministerial advice, pardon or show mercy to those convicted of crimes. Although in law the Queen as a private person can do no wrong: she ensures that all her actions strictly accord with the law. Members of the Royal Family are liable to civil or criminal proceedings, should these arise.

Privy Council

The Queen presides over meetings of the Privy Council. At these, among other things, Orders in Council made under the Royal Prerogative or under statute are approved. The Royal Prerogative mainly comprises executive government - powers controlled by constitutional conventions (rules which are not part of the law, but which are regarded as indispensable to the machinery of government). In nearly all cases, acts involving the Royal Prerogative are performed by Ministers who are responsible to Parliament and can be questioned about policies. Parliament has the power to abolish or restrict a prerogative right.

In addition to being informed and consulted about all aspects of national life, the

Queen is free to put forward her own views, in private, for the consideration of her Ministers.

Foreign policy

Foreign diplomatic representatives in London are accredited to the Queen, but the power to conclude treaties, to declare war and to make peace, to recognize foreign states and governments and to annex and cede territory rests with the Government, under the Royal Prerogative.

Honours and appointments

The Queen has the power to confer peerages, knighthoods and other honours. She normally does this on the recommendation of the Prime Minister, although a few honours are conferred by the Sovereign personally. The Queen makes appointments to many important state offices, on the advice of the Prime Minister or the relevant Cabinet Minister.

71. Why does the Queen have two birthdays?

The Queen was actually born on 21 April, but it has long been customary to celebrate the Sovereign's birthday on a day during the summer. Since 1805 the Sovereign's "official" birthday has been marked by the Trooping the Colour ceremony, normally held on the second Saturday in June.

This is a ceremony which originated when it was essential for soldiers to recognize the flag or "Colour" of their regiment so that they could follow it into battle. Each year one of the five regiments of the foot guards (Grenadiers, Cold stream Guards, Scots, Irish and Welsh Guards) take turns to display their Colour in the ceremony.

The ceremony begins with the Queen leaving Buckingham Palace escorted by the Household Cavalry. She rides down The Mall to Horse Guards Parade and inspects the 500 guardsmen.

The Colour is trooped by being carried along the ranks of guardsmen, and the Colour party then leads the guards on a march past the Queen, accompanied by the massed bands of the foot guards.

No particular annual ceremony is held on the Queen's true birthday, although the Union Flag is flown on public buildings and the national anthem is sung.

72. Who is next in line to the throne after Prince Charles?

Line of Succession:

1. The Prince of Wales (b. 1948)
2. Prince William of Wales (b. 1982)
3. Prince Henry of Wales (b. 1984)
4. The Duke of York (b. 1960)
5. Princess Beatrice of York (b. 1988)
6. Princess Eugenie of York (b. 1990)
7. Prince Edward (b. 1964)
8. The Princess Royal (b. 1950)
9. Peter Phillips, son of the Princess Royal (b. 1977)
10. Zara Phillips, daughter of the Princess Royal (b. 1981)

73. Why is the heir to the throne called the Prince of Wales?

The Heir Apparent has, since the institution of the title by King Edward I in 1301, usually been "created" Prince of Wales. Edward I led the conquest of independent Wales between 1277 and 1283. He subsequently proclaimed his son, Edward, born at Caernarvon in Wales in 1284, the Prince of Wales. There is no succession to the title, which is only renewed at the Sovereign's pleasure. The present Prince of Wales is the 21st in line - counting several who were never formally invested!

Prince Charles was created Prince of Wales at Caernarvon Castle on July 1st 1969.

74. What does "Royal" mean in the context of Royal Borough of... Royal Society of ...?

The use of the word "Royal" in connection with a society, borough or organisation indicates that they were founded or established by, or are under the patronage of, a Sovereign or royal person.

There are three English boroughs that have the title "Royal": Kensington and Chelsea, Kingston upon Thames and Windsor and Maidenhead, indicating that historically a Sovereign has conferred that title upon them.

There are many other "Royal" societies or organizations that have received Royal patronage, among them the Royal Automobile Club, granted the patronage of Edward VII in 1907, and the Royal Society - a society incorporated by Charles II in 1662 for the pursuit and advancement of the physical sciences.

75. What are Royal Warrants?

Since the Middle Ages, tradespeople who have acted as suppliers of goods and services to the Sovereign have received the honour of formal recognition. In the beginning this patronage took the form of royal charters given collectively to various trade guilds; later the relationship between the Crown and individual tradespeople was formalized by the issue of royal warrants.

To become eligible for the status of royal tradesperson, the head of a company must be able to show that they have supplied a substantial amount of goods and services to the Royal Household for a period of not less than three consecutive years. Application is then made to the Lord Chamberlain's Office, which supervises the granting of warrants system work?

British honours are awarded on merit, for exceptional achievement or service. In 1993 the then Prime Minister, John Major, ended the automatic practice of conferring awards on the holders of certain posts, opening the honours system to more people - particularly those in the voluntary sector - who qualify on merit.

Most honours are announced in one of the two annual sets of honours lists - one at New Year and the other in June, on the Queen's official birthday. The Queen chooses the recipients of honours on the advice of the Prime Minister and other relevant ministers, to whom recommendations are made by their departments or

members of the public.

The various honours include:

Life Peers: These titles are not hereditary and are the only form of peerage regularly created by the Queen nowadays.

Baronetcies: A baronetcy is a heritable honour - a title that is passed on to male heirs.

Knighthoods: Knights may be either Knights Bachelor, or members of one of the Orders of Chivalry. The honour of knighthood derives from the usages of medieval chivalry, as does the method normally used to confer the knighthood: the accolade or touch of a sword by the Sovereign.

The Most Excellent Order of the British Empire: this award is given mainly to civilians and service personnel for public service and other distinctions. The OBE and MBE are the two orders most commonly awarded to men and women for services to their country.

76. What are the words of the National Anthem?

The British national anthem originated in a patriotic song first performed in 1745. There is no authorized version - the words used are a matter of tradition. On official occasions it is usual to sing the first verse only, the words of which are as follows: God save our gracious Queen! Long live our noble Queen! God save the Queen! Send her victorious, Happy and glorious, Long to reign over us, God save the Queen!

77. What does the Royal Crest represent?

The Royal crest - a lion bearing the Royal crown - is used as a device to denote articles of personal property belonging to the Queen, or to denote goods bearing the Royal Warrant. The crest is taken from the Royal Coat of Arms, where it is placed above the shield and helmet.

78. What does 'Royal' mean in the context of Royal Borough of... Royal Society of...?

The use of the word 'Royal' in connection with a society, borough or organization indicates that they were founded or established by, or are under the patronage of, a Sovereign or royal person.

There are three English boroughs that have the title 'Royal': Kensington and Chelsea, Kingston upon Thames and Windsor and Maidenhead, indicating that historically a Sovereign has conferred that title upon them.

There are many other 'Royal' societies or organizations that have received Royal patronage, among them the Royal Automobile Club, granted the patronage of Edward VII in 1907, and the Royal Society - a society incorporated by Charles II in 1662 for the pursuit and advancement of the physical sciences.

79. How does the honours system work?

British honours are awarded on merit, for exceptional achievement or

service. In 1993 the then Prime Minister, John Major, ended the automatic practice of conferring awards on the holders of certain posts, opening the honours system to more people - particularly those in the voluntary sector - who qualify on merit.

Most honours are announced in one of the two annual sets of honours lists - one at New Year and the other in June, on the Queen's official birthday. The Queen chooses the recipients of honours on the advice of the Prime Minister and other relevant ministers, to whom recommendations are made by their departments or members of the public.

The various honours include:

Life Peers

These titles are not hereditary and are the only form of peerage regularly created by the Queen nowadays. -.

Baronetcies A baronetcy is a heritable honour - a title that is passed on to male heirs.

Knighthoods Knights may be either Knights Bachelor, or members of one of the Orders of Chivalry. The honour of knighthood derives from the usage of medieval chivalry, as does the method normally used to confer the knighthood: the accolade, or touch of a sword by the Sovereign.

The Most Excellent Order of the British Empire This award is given mainly to civilians and service personnel for public service and other distinctions. The OBE and MBE are the two orders most commonly awarded to men and women for services to their country.

80. What does "Right Honourable" mean?

Right Honourable (Rt Hon) is the form of address used for people holding the following titles or offices: an earl or countess, a viscount, a baron, a Lord Mayor (the title given to the Mayor of London and other large cities) and a Privy Councilor. All Cabinet ministers are members of the Privy Council, the private council of the Sovereign.

The full title appears in the form "The Right Honourable the Earl of Derby", for example.

81. How should I address someone with a title?

Information on the protocol of addressing holders of honours and titles can be found in Whitaker's Almanac (publ-shed annually) and Debrett's Correct Form (Webb and Bower, Exeter).

Some examples are:

82. What is the order of precedence for royalty, peers etc?

The order of precedence in England and Wales is as follows: The Sovereign; The Duke of Edinburgh; The Prince of Wales; The Sovereign's younger sons; The Sovereign's grandsons; The Sovereign's cousins; The Archbishop of Canterbury; Lord High Chancellor; Archbishop of York; The Prime Minister; Lord High Treasurer; Lord President of the Council; Speaker of the House of Commons; Lord

Privy Seal; Ambassadors and High Commissioners.

Peers rank among themselves as follows: 1. of England, 2. of Scotland, 3. of Great Britain, 4. of Ireland, 5. of UK and Ireland.

Precedence among those with honours and titles: Dukes; Marquesses; Earls; Viscounts; Barons; Knights of the Garter; Baronets; Knights of the Thistle and other orders; Knights Bachelor; Companions.

The Archbishop of Canterbury takes precedence in England and Wales after Royal Princes, while Bishops rank above barons but below viscounts.

In Scotland precedence alters as follows: The Sovereign; The Duke of Edinburgh; The Lord High Commissioner to the General Assembly (while that Assembly is sitting); The Duke of Roth say (eldest son of the Sovereign); The Sovereign's younger sons; The Sovereign's cousins; Lord Lieutenant of Counties; Lords Provost of Counties of Cities; Sheriffs Principal; Lord Chancellor of Great Britain; Moderator of the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland; The Prime Minister.

Full details can be found in "Whitaker's Almanac" or "DE Brett's Peerage and Baronetage".

83. What are Britain's Overseas Territories?

The Overseas Territories retain their connection with Britain because it is the wish of their peoples that they do so. They have a substantial measure of responsibility for the conduct of their own affairs. Local self-government is generally provided by an Executive Council and elected legislature. Governors or Commissioners are appointed by the Crown on the advice of the Foreign Secretary and retain responsibility for external affairs, defence and, usually, internal security and public service.

Britain's Overseas Territories comprise:

Anguilla

Bermuda

British Virgin Islands

Cayman Islands

Falkland Islands

Gibraltar

Montserrat

Pitcairn Islands

St Helena and its dependencies, Ascension and

Tristan da Cunha Turks and Caicos Islands

There are also territories with no indigenous population:

British Antarctic Territory

British Indian Ocean Territory

South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands

84. What is the Commonwealth?

The Commonwealth is a voluntary association of independent states which

originated in the progressive dismantling of the British Empire after 1945. It works to promote such principles as democracy, economic development and international understanding, mainly through intergovernmental consultations and the Commonwealth organizations. There are no legal or constitutional obligations involved in membership.

The Queen is recognized as head of the Commonwealth; she is also head of State in 16 member countries. These are: United Kingdom, Antigua and Barbuda, Australia, The Bahamas, Barbados, Belize, Canada, Grenada, Jamaica, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea, St. Kitts and Nevis, St. Lucia, St. Vincent and the Grenadines, Solomon Islands, and Tuvalu.

The following members of the Commonwealth are republics, with a president as head of State: Bangladesh, Botswana, Cameroon, Cyprus, Dominica, Fiji, The Gambia, Ghana, Guyana, India, Kenya, Kiribati, Malawi, Maldives, Malta, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Nauru, Nigeria, Pakistan, Seychelles, Sierra Leone, Singapore, South Africa, Sri Lanka, Tanzania, Trinidad and Tobago, Uganda, Vanuatu, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

85.How are the police organized?

There are 52 police forces in Britain, mainly organized on a local basis. The Metropolitan Police Force and the City of London force are responsible for policing London.

Each force in England and Wales is responsible to a police authority consisting of local councilors, magistrates and independent members. Since April 1996 the police authority in Scotland has comprised four joint police boards made up of local councilors. The Metropolitan Police Authority is responsible for London's Metropolitan Police Force. For the City of London Police the authority is a committee of the Corporation of London.

A Policing Board for Northern Ireland, responsible for maintaining an efficient and effective police service, came into being in November 2001. The Royal Ulster Constabulary was renamed the Police Service of Northern Ireland. Provincial forces are headed by a chief constable, deputy chief constable and assistant chief constable. The top Metropolitan Police ranks are the commissioner, deputy commissioner, assistant commissioner, deputy assistant commissioner and commander. Thereafter all ranks are the same in the forces -chief superintendent, superintendent, chief inspector, inspector, sergeant and constable.

Police/community liaison consultative groups operate in every police authority; they consist of representatives from the police, local councilors and community groups. Most forces use customer surveys to provide information on public attitudes. These are used to shape the standards of service being provided.

The heart of policing is the work done by police constables, who are in constant contact with the public. They patrol the streets on foot, or in cars, give advice and deal with disturbances. Local crime prevention panels - each one assisted by the police - identify crime problems and try to tackle them through

publicity. The police are closely involved in setting up 'neighbourhood watch' schemes, advising residents on home security and encouraging residents to keep an eye on properties in their area and pass on information to the police about suspicious people or vehicles.

There are about 157,000 full-time police officers in Britain, of whom around 19 per cent are women.

86. When can the police carry guns?

Authority is given when an officer is likely to face an armed criminal or when an officer is deployed to protect a person who may be at risk of attack. Officers may fire weapons only as a last resort if they believe that their or other lives are in danger.

Usually uniformed police officers carry a truncheon or baton to protect themselves against violence. In England, Scotland and Wales firearms may be issued only to specially trained police officers, known as Authorized Firearms Officers, and then only on the authority of a senior officer.

Each Authorized Firearms Officer is personally responsible for the decision to fire, and may be required to justify this action before the courts.

Most forces in England and Wales operate a system of armed response vehicles - patrol cars which carry weapons in a locked box - to provide a speedy initial response to a firearms incident.

In Northern Ireland, police officers carry firearms for personal protection.

87. What is the difference between a judge, a barrister and a solicitor?

A judge is a crucial figure in the trial system. He or she supervises the conduct of the trial and passes sentence on those who have been convicted. Judges are normally appointed from practicing barristers (advocates in Scotland) or solicitors and must have at least 10 years professional standing.

The kind of judge chosen to preside over a case in court depends on its seriousness and complexity. Very serious offences are tried on indictment only by the Crown Court. The Crown Court sits in about 90 centres in England and Wales, many of them consisting of several courtrooms.

Appeals from the Crown Court are made to the Court of Appeal. A further appeal from the Court of Appeal to the House of Lords can be brought if a point of law of general public importance is considered to be involved.

Most minor civil cases are dealt with by the county courts, of which there are about 220. Cases are heard by circuit judges or district judges. Magistrates' courts are the lowest tier of the criminal justice system. Justice is delivered not by professional judges or lawyers, but by appointed representatives of the community, called Magistrates. Their main job is to deliver 'summary justice' to people charged with less serious crimes. They refer grave offences to the Crown Court.

The legal profession in Britain is divided into two branches: barristers (advocates in Scotland) and solicitors.

Solicitors undertake legal business for individual and corporate clients, while

barristers advise on legal problems submitted through solicitors and present cases in the higher courts. Certain functions are common to both - for example, the presentation of cases in the lower courts.

Barristers must pass professional examinations before being called to the Bar (Barristers are known collectively as the Bar), and they must then serve an apprenticeship or 'pupillage' with a qualified barrister for one year.

What are Britain's Overseas

88. Why are wigs worn by lawyers?

Although English legal dress has a long history, it has for the most part evolved in the same way as common law, without written regulation. Before the 17th century lawyers did not wear wigs, but professional discipline required that their hair and beards should be moderately short.

Nevertheless, the introduction of wigs into polite society in the reign of Charles II (1660-85) was an innovation which could not be resisted! After a period of disapproval, wigs were generally assumed by lawyers in the 1680s.

Early wigs are difficult to identify in portraits of the period because they were of a natural colour and were sometimes combined with a lock of growing hair at the forehead. However, wigs soon became larger and increasingly stylised. By the middle of the 17th century wigs of powdered white or grey hair were the universal custom, but during George III's reign (1760-1820) wigs went rapidly out of general use.

Although bishops were given royal permission to abandon their wigs in the 1830s, this was not necessarily true of other officials. There is a story that Lord Eldon, the Lord Chancellor of the day, was refused permission to leave off his wig at court!

In the 1860s the counsel were permitted to remove their wigs during a heat wave - this attracted some comment in the press and it was suggested that wigs were abandoned altogether by the legal profession. However, the proposal met with little support, though it has been a common occurrence ever since for judges to allow wigs to be left off in very hot weather, and sometimes turbans are allowed to be worn instead of wigs on religious grounds.

89. What is the Old Bailey?

The Old Bailey is the most famous Crown Court in Britain. Its official title is the Central Criminal Court, and the figure on the dome of the building holding the scales of justice remains one of the most enduring symbols of justice in a free society.

The Old Bailey normally has 19 courts sitting at one time. Built on the site of the notorious Newgate Prison, it has brought to trial some infamous murderers - among them Ruth Ellis, the last woman to be hanged for murder in England; the 'Brides in the Bath Murderer', George Joseph Smith; John Christie who murdered his wife and at least five other women; and the 'Yorkshire Ripper', Peter Sutcliffe. The old courthouse, built in 1773, was replaced in 1907 by the present building

designed by E.W. Mountford. The name 'Old Bailey' is taken from the street where the court is situated, which is itself named after an 'old bailey' or former outer castle wall which once stood there.

90. What are Britain's quarantine regulations?

Pet dogs, cats and other rabies susceptible mammals entering Britain must be put into quarantine for six months as soon as they arrive in the country unless they are covered by the Pet Travel Scheme (PETS).

Under PETS, dogs, cats and ferrets from the EU can enter Britain without going into quarantine as long as they have been resident in any of the qualifying countries for at least six months and are:

- micro chipped
 - vaccinated against rabies
 - blood-tested at an approved laboratory six calendar months before travel
 - issued with an official PETS passport confirming that these requirements have been met
- treated against certain parasites between 48-24 hours before travel. PETS also applies to dogs and cats from certain long-haul' countries which may require additional conditions and documentary requirements.

91. Where can I find out about postage rates?

Any Post Office in Britain can advise on postage rates within Britain or overseas. There are two postage rates in Britain - first class and second class. First class postage should be used for letters requiring delivery on the next working day. Second class should be used for items that are not urgent - most second class letters are delivered within three working days.

The United States of America

92. In which famous location do people in New York City celebrate New Year's Eve?

—Times Square

93. What are the ingredients of a traditional American

Thanksgiving dinner?

—Turkey, cranberry sauce, pumpkin pie

94. What do the terms "melting pot" and "salad bowl" mean to U.S. society and culture?

—That the U.S. is a country of immigrants who work together as Americans while retaining their ethnic identities

95. Which art museum in New York City is a spiral shaped bundling and what is the name of the architect who built it?

—The Guggenheim Museum: Frank Lloyd Wright

96. Which American artist painted portraits of outstanding historical leaders and scenes of important historical events, including "The Declaration of Independence" and three famous portraits of George Washington?

— John Trumbull

97. Who is the American composer who wrote West Side Story?

—Leonard Bernstein

98. Who is the famous American dancer, singer and actor who played in many films together with his partner Ginger Rogers?

—Fred Astaire

99. Which American artist chose painting mother and child as the main theme of her creative work, spent the better part of her life in Paris, and was very close to the impressionists?

— Mary Cassatt

100. Under which two names did the most famous American boxer of the 1960—1970's fight in the ring?

—Muhammad Ali and Cassius Clay

101. Which sport is considered to be the national pastime of America?

—Baseball

102. Give the name of the most famous American chess player of our time.

—Bobby Fischer

103. Which African-American track and field star won the last four gold medals in the Olympic long jump competition?

—Carl Lewis

104. Which American rock-and-roll star lived in Memphis, Tennessee?

—Elvis Presley

105. Which American silent film star is called "The Little Tramp"?

—Charlie Chaplin

106. What monument in Washington, D.C., dedicated to an American president is nicknamed "The Pencil"?

—Washington Monument

107. What do Americans call the championship game of American football?

—Super Bowl

108. In which U.S. city were the 1996 Summer Olympics held?

—Atlanta (GA)

109. What is the name of the awards given to the best movie actors and actresses each year in the U.S.?

—Oscars or Academy Awards

110. Which U.S. city is the birthplace of "grunge" music?

-Seattle (WA)

111. Which Russian-born American choreographer created the "modern style of classical American ballet"?

—George Balanchine (George Balanchivadze)

112. Who was Henry Hudson and which geographical feature in New York state is named after him?

—English explorer: Hudson River

113. The continental U.S. is divided into how many time zones?

—Four

114. Which American state was the last to acquire "state" status?

—Hawaii

115. In which state do the highest trees in the world grow and what are they called?

—California; "redwood" or "sequoia"

116. What is the name of the first U.S. national park and in which state is it located?

—Yellowstone; Wyoming

117. Which major city in the state of Florida has the same name as a Russian city?

—St. Petersburg

118. At which island did most European immigrants to the U.S. arrive?

-Ellis Island (NY)

119. In which mountain are the faces of four American Presidents chiseled?

—Mt. Rushmore (SD)

120. In which city and state is Disney World located?

—Orlando, Florida

121. What is the name of the famous collection of museums in Washington, D.C.?

—Smithsonian Institution

122. What is one of the pet names for the Mississippi River?

-"The Old Man"; "The Big Muddy"

123. Name the six New England states and explain why they are known as "New England".

—Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut; named by Capt. John Smith for its resemblance to the coast of England

124. Name the five Great Lakes — which one is entirely within the U.S.?

—Lakes Huron, Erie, Ontario, Michigan, Superior: Michigan

125. Who wrote about American continent in the XI century?

—Abu Rayhan Beruni

126. Which American state (excluding Hawaii and Alaska) borders only one other state?

—Maine

127. Name the lowest spot in the continental U.S.

-Death Valley (CA)

128. Which Caribbean Sea island has a commonwealth status with the U.S.?

—Puerto Rico

129. Name the smallest U.S. state.

—Rhode Island

130. In which western U. S. state, originally on part of the Nez Perce Indian Reservation, is the city of Moscow located?

—Idaho

131. Where is the "Rust Belt" in the U.S.?

—The industrial North-Central and North-East states

132. Explain the symbolism of the stripes and the stars on the U.S. flag.

—50 stars = 50 states; 13 stripes = 13 original colonies

133. What is impeachment and name one president it threatened?

—A formal accusation against a public official Andrew Johnson or Richard Nixon

134. Which U.S. legal holiday — held every four years — falls on the first Tuesday after the first Monday in November?

—Election Day

135. When did American women receive the right to vote?

—1920 (the 19th Amendment of the Constitution)

136. Who was the youngest elected President in the history of the U.S.?

—John F. Kennedy

137. From which two states was the original District of Columbia carved?

—Maryland and Virginia

138. Why does the highest mountain in the U. S. have two names and what are they?

—One is in English, while the other is in the Eskimo language; Mt. McKinley and Mt. Denali (20,320 feet=6.198 m)

139. Where is the Mason-Dixon Line and what was its historical importance?

—Roughly, the border between Pennsylvania, Maryland, and West Virginia — designated the invisible boundary between "slave" and "free" states and between the "South" and the "North".

140. After the Vice-President, which political figure is next in line to succeed the President?

—Speaker of the House of Representatives

141. Name the two political parties in the U.S. and say which animals symbolize each party?

—Democrats: donkey; Republicans: elephant

142. What is the justification for the U. S. President being able to serve only two terms in office?

—To prevent one person from accumulating too much "power and creating" a "royal presidency"

143. What was the "Homestead Act"?

—Transfer of land from the U.S. government to a "homesteader" after five years of residence at a nominal price

144. Who was the famous Chicago criminal, nicknamed "Scarface", of the Prohibition era who was arrested on tax evasion charges?

— Al Capone

145. Who was the first president to serve only one term?

—John Adams

146. Who was the first president elected as a member of the Republican Party?

—Abraham Lincoln

147. Which U.S. government agency is charged with the collection of taxes?

—Internal Revenue Service (IRS)

148. Name the longest serving U.S. president.

—Franklin D. Roosevelt

149. What was the first "talking" film in the US?

—"The Jazz Singer" (1927): Al Jolson created the "star system" in Hollywood

150. When and where was "the shot fired that was heard around the world"?

—Concord/Lexington, Massachusetts on April 18/19, 1775 — the start of the first battles of the American Revolution

151. In which city did the First Continental Congress meet in 1774?

—Philadelphia (PA)

152. What is the name of the Dutch settlement which became New York City?

—Colony was the New Netherlands; Capital city was New Amsterdam

153. In which city and state is the Liberty Bell located?

—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

154. Give the names of the three ships on which Christopher Columbus made his first voyage to America.

—Nina, Pinta, Santa Maria

155. With which "supernatural" event is the old whaling town of Salem, Massachusetts associated?

—Witchcraft

156. Who were the "Blues" and who were the "Greys" during the American War between the States?

—Blues were the North (Union); Greys were the South (Confederacy)

157. What was the colonists' motto during the "Boston Tea Party"?

—No Taxation without Representation

158. Which American President was the first to live in the White House?

—John Adams

159. Which country presented the United States with the Statue of Liberty? What was the occasion?

—France; the 100-year anniversary of the Franco-American alliance during the American Revolutionary War

160. Which American astronaut first stepped on the surface of the Moon and what was the year? What was the name of his spaceship?

—Neil Armstrong; 1969; Apollo II

161. Which American general, who later became the 34th President, commanded all U.S. forces during World War Two?

—Dwight David Eisenhower

162. Which American architect is called the "Father of the Skyscraper"?

—Louis Henry Sullivan

163. Who were the two brothers who invented the airplane and where did the first flight take place?

—Orville and Wilbur Wright; Kitty Hawk, North Carolina; 1903

164. What is the name of the American naval base that the Japanese attacked on December 7, 1941? In which state is it located?

—Pearl Harbor, Hawaii

165. Which American president attended the Potsdam Conference?

—Harry Truman

166. Who was the American president during the Cuban missile crisis?

—John F. Kennedy

167. In which U.S. city was the Federal Building bombed on April 19, 1957.

—Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

168. Which U.S. astronaut spent almost four months during 1995 aboard the Russian space station "Mir"?

—Norman E. Thagard

169. In which U.S. city was the United Nations' charter approved in 1945?

—San Francisco (CA)

170. Who was the first U.S. president to visit the People's Republic of China?

—Richard Nixon

171. Who is the Texas billionaire who ran for U.S. president in 1992 and 1996?

—Ross Perot

172. What major American historical event did Rip van Winkle miss in his sleep?

—The American Revolution

173. Which 19th century American writer is said to be the founder of detective genre?

—Edgar A. Poe

174. What pen name did an American writer use to sign the humorous stories which he wrote in prison?

—O. Henry

175. Which famous event happened in California in 1849 was glorified in films and books?

—The Gold Rush

176. Name the American science fiction writer born in Russia who wrote "I, Robot".

—Isaac Asimov

177. Volkov's book, "The Wizard of the Emerald Town», is an adaptation of a book written by an American writer. What is the title of the book and who is the American author?

—"The (Wonderful) Wizard of Oz"; L. Frank Baum

178. Name the American senator who was the prototype of the main character in Robert Penn Warren's novel, "All The King's Men".

—Huey Long

179. Which American family compiled the first dictionary of the American variant of the English language?

—Webster

180. Which two novels by Mark Twain are often called "the first modern American novels"?

— (1) Huck Finn, (2) Tom Sawyer

181. Which famous novel of Herman Melville is concerned with an aquatic mammal?

—Moby Dick

182. During which periods in American history was the novel "Gone with the Wind" set?

—The Civil War and Reconstruction

183. Name the 1954 Nobel Laureate in Literature who wrote, "The Sun Also Rises".

—Ernest Hemingway

184. Who was the only American to serve as US Poet Laureate and win the Pulitzer Prize for both fiction and poetry?

— Robert Penn Warren (poetry: "Brother to Dragons ('53)", "Promises ('57)",
fiction: "All the King's Men
(('46)", PL ('86)

185. Name the Russian-born poet who was expelled from the USSR, emigrated to the USA, and recently passed away in New York City.

—Joseph Brodsky

186. Which famous poem of Longfellow was translated into Russian by Ivan Bunin?

—"Song of Hiawatha"

187. Which famous Edgar A. Poe poem is named for a bird?

- "The Raven"

188. Which American author wrote "The Last of the Mohicans"?

—James Fennimore Cooper

189. Which famous American document begins with the words, "We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union..."

—The Constitution of the United States

190. Name the largest library in the U.S.

—Library of Congress

191. Name the Afro-American author of "Song of Solomon", "The Bluest Eye", and "Beloved" who was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1993.

—Toni Morrison

Important Dates in the history of the UK

The Celts	900 B.C.-55 B.C.	
The Romans	55 B.C.-450 A.D.	
The Anglo-Saxons	450-661	Up to (8 th century)
The Viking Invaders	8 th -11 th centuries	

The Normans	1066-1154	William the Conqueror (1066-1087)
The Plantagenet	1154-1399	Henry II (1154-1189) Edward I (1212-1307)
The Houses of York and Lancaster	1399-1485	
The Tudors	1485-1603	Henry VII (1484-1509) Henry VIII (1509-1547) Mary I ('Bloody Mary') (1553-1558) Elizabeth I (1558-1603)
The Stuarts (The Civil War)	1603-1649 1628-1649	James I (1603-1625) Charles I (1625-1649)
The Republic	1649-1660	Oliver Cromwell (1649-1660)
The Stuarts	1660-1714	William and Mary (1688-1702)
The Hanoverians	1714-1901	George I, II, III, IV (1714-1830) ('Georgian period') Victoria (1837-1901) ('Victorian' period)
The House of Saxe-Cobourg	1901-1910	Edward VII (1901-1910) ('Edwardian' period)
The House of Windsor	1910-	Elizabeth II (1952-)

SOME MAJOR DATES OF AMERICAN HISTORY

1000 Leif Ericson sails to the east coast of North America.

1492 October 12. Christopher Columbus lands in the Bahamas.

1607 Colonists establish first permanent English settlement at Jamestown, Virginia.

1620 Mayflower Compact establishes government by majority will in Massachusetts settlement of Plymouth.

1636 October 28. America's first college, Harvard, is founded at Cambridge, Massachusetts.

1774 September 5. First Continental Congress opens in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

1775 April 19. First shots of the American War of Independence are fired at Lexington, Massachusetts.

1776 July 4. The 13 colonies sign Declaration of Independence.

1777 October 17. British force under General John Burgoyne surrenders at Saratoga, New York.

1778 February 6. France enters into a military alliance with the United States.

1781 October 17. General Charles Cornwallis surrenders British army at Yorktown, Virginia, to combined Franco-American forces under command of American general, George Washington.

1787 May 25. Constitutional Convention meets in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, to revise Articles of Confederation. New Constitution is adopted by delegates on September 17.

1791 First 10 Amendments, the Bill of Rights, are added to the U.S. Constitution.

1794 Congress passes first postal service law.

1796 John Adams is elected second president.

1812 War of 1812 against Britain begins. The United States wins series of naval victories, but fails in attempts to invade Canada. British burn Capitol and White House in August 1814.

1818 United States and Great Britain agree on un-fortified border between Canada and the United States.

1828 Andrew Jackson is elected seventh president. First US passenger railroad is begun. Noah Webster publishes American Dictionary of the English Language"

1836 Texas wins independence from Mexico, it is admitted as a state to the Union in 1845.

1833 Hussey reaper, followed by McCormick reaper in 1834, revolutionizes harvesting of grain crops.

1840 Edgar Allan Poe publishes the short story collection. Tides of the Grotesque and Arabesque.

1844 Samuel F.B. Morse sends first telegraph message from Washington, D.C. to Baltimore, Maryland.

1854 Republican Party is formed in Wisconsin.

1855 Walt Whitman publishes "Leaves of Grass". 1857 March 7. Dred Scott decision by the Supreme

Court holds that Congress cannot bar slavery from territories, nor can slaves be citizens.

1860 Abraham Lincoln is elected 16th president.

December 20. South Carolina, followed by six other southern states, secedes from Union in reaction to election of Lincoln, who opposes extension of slavery into western territories. These states organize the Confederate States of America.

1861 April 12. First guns are fired in Civil War at Fort Sumter, South Carolina, over question of southern states' right to secede from the Union.

1863 January 1. President Lincoln issues Emancipation Proclamation granting freedom to slaves in southern states.

July 1—3. Union forces win major battle at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.

July 4. Confederate garrison at Vicksburg, Mississippi, surrenders giving Union forces complete control of Mississippi River.

November 19. President Lincoln delivers historic Gettysburg Address.

1864 Union forces under General William Sherman march through Georgia taking Atlanta, September 1.

1867 Territory of Alaska is purchased from Russia.

1868 Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution for-bids states to deny equal rights to any citizen.

1869 May 10. Golden spike unites Central Pacific and Union Pacific railroads at Promontory, Utah, forming first transcontinental railroad.

1870 Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution for-bids denial of right to vote on basis of race or color.

1872 Congress creates first national park — Yellow-stone in Wyoming.

1878 First telephone exchange opens.

1879 Thomas A. Edison invents incandescent electric lamp.

1881 President James Garfield is shot by assassin; Vice President Chester A. Arthur succeeds him.

1890 Ellis Island in New York Harbor opens as immigration center. It closes in 1954.

1896 US Supreme Court approves racial segregation under "separate but equal" doctrine in Plessey v. Ferguson.

1898 War with Spain is declared in April and ends in July. By peace treaty, signed with Spain in December, Puerto Rico, Guam and the Philippines Cede to the United States.

1901 September 14. Eight days after being shot, President William McKinley dies; Vice President Theodore Roosevelt becomes president.

1902 Electric Theater, America's first movie house, opens in Los Angeles, California.

1903 December 17. Orville and Wilbur Wright make first successful flights in airplane near Kitty Hawk, North Carolina.

1908 October 1. Henry Ford introduces efficient, low-cost car, beginning the era of mass production.

1914 August 5. Panama Canal, built across Central America, opens, permitting ships to travel from the Atlantic to the Pacific without rounding the tip of South America.

1915 D.W.Griffith's The Birth of a Nation, first full-length feature film, is released.

1928 Warner Brothers' the jazz Singer, first feature sound film, revolutionizes film industry.

1929 October 29. Stock market crash marks beginning of America's worst depression

1933 Under president Roosevelt, federal government launches "New Deal" program to provide work for the unemployed, raise farm prices and stabilize banks in wake of the Great Depression.

1935 Congress passes Social Security Act, providing old-age and unemployment insurance and aid to needy elderly persons, the blind and dependent children.

1936 Franklin D. Roosevelt is elected to the second term as president and, in 1940, to the unprecedented third term.

1939 As Europe plunges into war, President Roosevelt declares American neutrality.

1941 Congress passes and President Roosevelt signs the Lend-Lease Act to aid foes of Nazi Germany.

1944 June 4. Allied forces liberate Rome.

June 6. Allies land on coast of Normandy, France.

1945 April 12. Roosevelt dies of cerebral hemorrhage;

he is succeeded as president by Vice President Harry S.Truman.

1946 July 4.Philippnes gain independence from the United States.

1948 November 2.Harry S. Truman is elected president.

1953 July 27. Armistice to end fighting in Korea is signed following year-long talks.

1959 April 25. Alaska becomes 49th state, Hawaii be-comes 50th state.

1960 February 1. Black students in Greensboro, North Carolina, begin "sit in" movement to desegregate department store lunch counters.

1961 May 5. Astronaut Alan B. Shepard Jr. makes first manned U.S. space flight.

1962 February 20. Astronaut John H. Glean Jr. is the first American to orbit Earth.

1963 August 28. More than 200,000 march in Washington, D.C. , in support of proposed civil rights legislation. Martin Luther King Jr. delivers "I Have a Dream" speech.

November 22. President Kennedy is assassinated; Vice President Lyndon B. Johnson takes oath as 36th president.

1964 July 2. President Johnson signs Civil Rights Act barring discrimination in public places based upon race or color.

August 7. Congress Passes Tonkin Gulf resolution authorizing military action in Vietnam.

1968 April 4. Martin Luther King Jr., civil rights leader and winner of Nobel Peace Prize, is fatally shot in Memphis, Tennessee.

May 10. Vietnam peace talks begin in Paris.

June 5. Senator Robert F. Kennedy, brother of the late president, is fatally wounded at Los Angeles celebration of his victories in two state presidential primary elections. November. Richard Nixon is elected 37 president.

1971 Twenty-sixth Amendment to Constitution lowers minimum age to 18 for voting in all elections.

1972 February. President Nixon travels to Beijing for meetings with" leaders of People's Republic of China; in May, to Moscow to meet leaders of the Soviet Union. He is the first U.S. president to visit both countries while in office.

May 22. U.S. and Soviet leaders sign first Strategic Arms Limitation Treaty (SALT 1) in Moscow.

1973 January 27. Four-party agreement on ending war and restating peace in Vietnam is formally signed in Paris.

1974 May 9. Impeachment hearings against President Nixon begin in House of Representatives on charges of covering up the Watergate break-in.

August 9. President Nixon resigns from office, the first president to do so, and is succeeded by Vice President Gerald R. Ford.

November 23—24. President Ford and Soviet leader Leonid Brezhnev hold summit talks in Vladivostok (USSR) and reach tentative agreement to limit numbers of strategic offensive nuclear weapons and delivery vehicles through 1985.

1975 July 17—19. U.S. Apollo and USSR Soyuz spacecraft link together in space.

1976 July 4. United States celebrates its Bicentennial.

1979 June 18. President Carter and General Secretary Brezhnev sign Salt II Treaty in Vienna, Austria.

1980 November 4. Ronald Reagan is elected 40th president. Republicans win control of the Senate for the first time since 1952.

1981 April 12. The United States launches the world's first reusable spacecraft, space shuttle Columbia, which successfully orbits the Earth for two days.

1985 November 19. President Reagan meets with Soviet General Secretary Mikhail Gorbachev in Geneva.

1988 September 29. Flight of the space shuttle Discovery revives U.S. manned space program.

1991 The Persian Gulf War with Iraq.

1992 500-Anniversary of Discovery of America. 1992 Bill Clinton was inaugurated January 20 as the 42nd president of the US.

1997 Bill Clinton was elected president for the second time.

2000 *USS Cole bombing*: The USS *Cole* (DDG-76) was bombed in Yemeni waters, killing seventeen United States Navy sailors.

2001 *September 11 terrorist attacks*: Nineteen terrorists hijacked four planes and crashed them into the World Trade Center, The Pentagon, and a field in Shanks Ville, Pennsylvania killing nearly three thousand people and injuring over six thousand.

2002 The Department of Homeland Security was created.

2003 Republicans retook narrow control of the Senate.

2004 The social networking website Facebook was launched.

2005 *Hurricane Katrina*: A hurricane devastated the Louisiana, Mississippi, and Alabama coastlines killing at least 1,836 people and causing \$81 billion in damage.

2008 *Hurricane Ike*: A hurricane killed 100 people along the Texas coast, producing \$31 billion in damage and contributing to rising oil prices.

2009 *Tea Party protests*: The first of a series of protests, focusing on smaller government, fiscal responsibility, individual freedoms and conservative views of the Constitution, were conducted across the country.

2010 22 December . The Don't Ask, Don't Tell Repeal Act of 2010 was signed into law, ending the Don't ask, don't tell policy regarding homosexuals in the United States Armed Forces.

2011 31 May. *United States debt-ceiling crisis*: The House voted down a bill to raise the legal limit on federal government debt.

Mountains of the USA

1. **Cheaha Mountain**, highest summit of the state of Alabama
2. **Mount McKinley** (Denali) PB, the highest summit of the Alaska Range, the State of Alaska, the United States of America, and North America, and the third most prominent summit on Earth
3. **Humphreys Peak**, highest summit of the State of Arizona
4. **Mount Magazine**, highest summit of the State of Arkansas
5. **Mount Whitney**, highest summit of the Sierra Nevada, the State of California, and the Contiguous United States
6. **Mount Elbert**, highest summit of the Swatch Range, the Rocky Mountains, and the state of Colorado
7. The southern flank of **Mount Frizzle** is the highest point of the State of Connecticut.
8. **Enright Azimuth**, highest summit of the State of Delaware
9. **Britton Hill** highest summit of the State of Florida
10. **Brass town Bald**, highest summit of the U.S. state of Georgia
11. **Mauna Kea**, shield volcano that is the summit of the Island of Hawaii, the highest summit of the State of Hawaii, and the tallest mountain on Earth as measured from base to summit
12. **Borah Peak**, highest summit of the Lost River Range and the State of Idaho
13. **Charles Mound**, highest summit of the State of Illinois
14. **Hoosier Hill**, highest summit of the State of Indiana
15. **Hawkeye Point**, highest summit of the State of Iowa
16. **Mount Sunflower**, highest summit of the State of Kansas
17. **Black Mountain**, highest summit of the Commonwealth of Kentucky
18. **Driskill Mountain**, highest summit of the State of Louisiana
19. **Mount Katahdin**, highest summit of the State of Maine
20. **Hoye-Crest**, highest summit of the State of Maryland
21. **Mount Greylock**, highest summit of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts
22. **Mount Arvon**, highest summit of the State of Michigan
23. **Eagle Mountain**, highest summit of the State of Minnesota
24. **Woodall Mountain**, highest summit of the State of Mississippi
25. **Taum Sauk Mountain**, highest summit of the State of Missouri
26. **Granite Peak**, highest summit of the State of Montana
27. **Boundary Peak**, highest summit of the State of Nevada
28. **Mount Washington**, highest summit of the White Mountains, the State of New Hampshire, and the northeastern United States

29. **High Point**, highest summit of the Kittatinny Mountains and the State of New Jersey
30. **Wheeler Peak**, highest summit of the Taos Mountains and the State of New Mexico, and the southernmost 4000 meter peak of the Rocky Mountains
31. **Mount Marcy**, highest summit of the Adirondack Mountains and the State of New York
32. **Mount Mitchell**, highest summit of the Appalachian Mountains, the State of North Carolina, and eastern North America
33. **White Butte**, highest summit of the State of North Dakota
34. **Campbell Hill**, highest summit of the State of Ohio
35. **Black Mesa**, highest summit of the State of Oklahoma
36. **Mount Hood**, active strata -volcano that is the highest summit of the State of Oregon
37. **Mount Davis**, highest summit of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania
38. **Jerimiah Hill**, highest summit of the State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations
39. **Sassafras Mountain**, highest summit of the State of South Carolina
40. **Harney Peak**, highest summit of the Black Hills and the State of South Dakota and the easternmost 2200 meter peak of the United States
41. **Clingmans Dome**, highest summit of the Great Smoky Mountains and the State of Tennessee
42. **Guadalupe Peak**, highest summit of the Guadalupe Mountains and in Texas
43. **Kings Peak**, highest summit of the Uinta Mountains, the Western Rocky Mountains, and the State of Utah
44. **Mount Mansfield**, highest summit of the Green Mountains and the State of Vermont
45. **Mount Rogers**, highest summit of the Commonwealth of Virginia
46. **Mount Rainier**, active stratovolcano that is the highest summit of the Cascade Mountains and the State of Washington
47. **Spruce Knob**, highest summit of the Allegheny Mountains and the State of West Virginia
48. **Timms Hill**, highest summit of the State of Wisconsin
49. **Gannett Peak**, highest summit of the Wind River Range, the Central Rocky Mountains, and the State of Wyoming

The Presidents of the USA

President	Party	Term as President	Vice-President
1. George Washington (1732-	None, Federalist	1789-1797	John Adams

1799)			
2. John Adams (1735-1826)	Federalist	1797-1801	Thomas Jefferson
3. Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826)	Democratic-Republican	1801-1809	Aaron Burr, George Clinton
4. James Madison (1751-1836)	Democratic-Republican	1809-1817	George Clinton, Elbridge Gerry
5. James Monroe (1758-1831)	Democratic-Republican	1817-1825	Daniel Tompkins
6. John Quincy Adams (1767-1848)	Democratic-Republican	1825-1829	John Calhoun
7. Andrew Jackson (1767-1845)	Democratic	1829-1837	John Calhoun, Martin van Buren
8. Martin van Buren (1782-1862)	Democratic	1837-1841	Richard Johnson
9. William H. Harrison (1773-1841)	Whig	1841	John Tyler
10. John Tyler (1790-1862)	Whig	1841-1845	.
11. James K. Polk (1795-1849)	Democratic	1845-1849	George Dallas
12. Zachary Taylor (1784-1850)	Whig	1849-1850	Millard Fillmore
13. Millard Fillmore (1800-1874)	Whig	1850-1853	.
14. Franklin Pierce (1804-1869)	Democratic	1853-1857	William King
15. James Buchanan (1791-1868)	Democratic	1857-1861	John Breckinridge
16. Abraham Lincoln (1809-1865)	Republican	1861-1865	Hannibal Hamlin, Andrew Johnson
17. Andrew Johnson (1808-1875)	National Union	1865-1869	.
18. Ulysses S. Grant (1822-1885)	Republican	1869-1877	Schuyler Colfax
19. Rutherford Hayes	Republican	1877-1881	William Wheeler

(1822-1893)			
20. James Garfield (1831-1881)	Republican	1881	Chester Arthur
21. Chester Arthur (1829-1886)	Republican	1881-1885	.
22. Grover Cleveland (1837-1908)	Democratic	1885-1889	Thomas Hendriks
23. Benjamin Harrison (1833-1901)	Republican	1889-1893	Levi Morton
24. Grover Cleveland (1837-1908)	Democratic	1893-1897	Adlai Stevenson
25. William McKinley (1843-1901)	Republican	1897-1901	Garret Hobart, Theodore Roosevelt
26. Theodore Roosevelt (1858- 1919)	Republican	1901-1909	Charles Fairbanks
27. William Taft (1857-1930)	Republican	1909-1913	James Sherman
28. Woodrow Wilson (1856-1924)	Democratic	1913-1921	Thomas Marshall
29. Warren Harding (1865-1923)	Republican	1921-1923	Calvin Coolidge
30. Calvin Coolidge (1872-1933)	Republican	1923-1929	Charles Dawes
31. Herbert C. Hoover (1874-1964)	Republican	1929-1933	Charles Curtis
32. Franklin Delano Roosevelt (1882- 1945)	Democratic	1933-1945	John Garner, Henry Wallace, Harry S. Truman
33. Harry S Truman (1884-1972)	Democratic	1945-1953	Alben Barkley
34. Dwight David Eisenhower (1890- 1969)	Republican	1953-1961	Richard Milhous Nixon
35. John Fitzgerald	Democratic	1961-1963	Lyndon Johnson

Kennedy (1917-1963)			
36. Lyndon Baines Johnson (1908-1973)	Democratic	1963-1969	Hubert Humphrey
37. Richard Milhous Nixon (1913-1994)	Republican	1969-1974	Spiro Agnew, Gerald R. Ford
38. Gerald R. Ford (1913- 2006)	Republican	1974-1977	Nelson Rockefeller
39. James (Jimmy) Earl Carter, Jr. (1924-)	Democratic	1977-1981	Walter Mondale
40. Ronald Wilson Reagan (1911- 2004)	Republican	1981-1989	George H. W. Bush
41. George H. W. Bush (1924-)	Republican	1989-1993	James Danforth (Dan) Quayle
42. William (Bill) Jefferson Clinton (1946-)	Democratic	1993-2001	Al Gore
43. George W. Bush (1946-)	Republican	2001-2009	Richard Cheney
44. Barack Obama (1961-)	Democratic	2009-2012 2012-2016	Joseph Biden

